LATIN SERIES · VOLUME 59

The Alexander Romance

Julius Valerius · Seneca

Res Gestae Alexandri Macedonis
Historia Apollonii Regis Tyri
Apocolocyntosis

The Alexander Romance

With Apollonius of Tyre and the Pumpkinification of Claudius

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

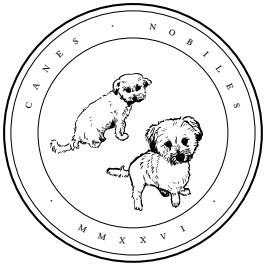


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

Part of the source text is used under a Creative Commons
Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License;
the remainder is in the public domain
creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0



Volume 59 of the Canes Nobiles Latin interlinear texts

The Latin text follows Bernhard Kübler's text of Julius Valerius,
Leipzig, 1888, Alexander Riese's of the Historia Apollonii, Leipzig, 1871,
and W. H. D. Rouse's of the Apocolocyntosis, London, 1913

The Apocolocyntosis set from the Perseus Digital
Library's canonical Latin corpus, with corrections

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

CONTENTS

RES GESTAE ALEXANDRI MACEDONIS

BOOK I

I · Nectanebo and Olympias 9
II · The Birth and Boyhood of Alexander 25
III · Olympia, Philip's Wedding, and Philip's Death 42
IV · To Ammon and the Founding of Alexandria 57
V · Sarapis, Memphis, and Tyre 73
VI · The First Victory over Darius 89
VII · Thebes and Corinth 105

BOOK II

VIII · The Athenians Debate 119
IX · Athens Yields, Sparta Falls 133
X · The Cydnus, the Euphrates, and the Disguised Envoy 147

RES GESTAE ALEXANDRI MACEDONIS

(continued)

BOOK II

(continued)

XI · Alexander at Darius's Table 162
XII · The Death of Darius 180

BOOK III

XIII · Porus 197
XIV · The Brahmans and the Marvels of India 211
XV · The Trees of the Sun and Moon 225
XVI · Candace 241
XVII · Sesonchosis, the Amazons, and the Rains 255
XVIII · Last Letters, Omens, and Death 269

HISTORIA APOLLONII REGIS TYRI

I · The Riddle of Antiochus 293
II · Archistratis 308
III · The Coffin at Sea 322
IV · Tharsia Among the Pirates 337
V · The Riddles and the Recognition 351
VI · Reunions and Rewards 365

APOCOLOCYNTOSIS

I · The Death of Claudius 379
II · The Council of the Gods and the Descent 391

JULIUS VALERIUS

Res Gestae Alexandri Macedonis

The Deeds of Alexander of Macedon

BOOK I

I · NECTANEBO AND OLYMPIAS

Nectanebo, Egypt's king and magician, wins his wars by sinking wax ships in a basin. When the East unites against him, he shaves his head and flees to Macedonia as an astrologer. Queen Olympias consults him while Philip is at war; he loves her, reads her stars, and promises a son by the god Ammon. Disguised as the god, he lies with her. A hawk sends Philip a dream of a womb sealed with a lion; Nectanebo, as a serpent, visits a feast, and Philip accepts the child as a god's.

Aegyptii sapientes sati genere divino primi feruntur 1
the-Egyptian sages sprung from-a-race divine first are-said
permensique sunt terram ingenii pervicacia et ambitum
and-measured have the-earth of-their-wit by-the-persistence and the-circuit
coeli stellarum numero assecuti. Quorum omnium
of-the-sky of-the-stars by-number attained of-whom all
Nectanabus prudentissimus fuisse comprobatur, quippe
Nectanabus most-skilled to-have-been is-proved for
qui quod alii armis, ille ore potuisse convincitur.
who what others by-arms he by-mouth to-have-been-able is-shown
Denique mundialia elementa ei parebant, adeo ut, si metus
finally of-the-world the-elements to-him obeyed so that if a-fear
bellicus illi immineret, non exercitum, non machinamenta
of-war over-him hung not an-army not engines
martia moveret: quin potius ingressus aulae penita
martial would-he-move but rather having-entered of-the-palace the-inner-parts
regiaeque secreta ibi se solitarium abdebat
and-of-the-royal-house the-secret-places there himself alone he-bid
invecta secum pelvi. Quam dum ex fonte liquidissimo
with-brought-in with-himself a-basin which while from a-spring most-clear
impleret, ex cera imitabatur navigii similitudinem effigiesque
he-filled out-of wax he-copied of-a-ship the-likeness and-images

hominum illic collocabat. Quae omnia cum supernare
of-men there he-set which all when to-float-above
coepissent, mox moveri ac vivere visebantur. Adhibebat etiam
they-had-begun soon to-be-moved and to-live were-seen he-applied also
et virgulam ex ligno ebeni et praecantamina loquebatur,
also a-little-rod of wood of-ebony and incantations he-spoke
quibus vocaret deos superos inferosque, sicque laborabat
by-which he-called the-gods above and-below and-so he-worked
pelvi naviculam submergi. Ex quo fiebat, ut simul cum
in-the-basin the-little-ship to-be-sunk from which it-came-about that together with
submersione illius cerae et cereis insessoribus etiam omnes
the-sinking of-that wax and the-waxen passengers also all
hostes, si qui adesse praenuntiabantur, pelago mergerentur.
the-enemies if any to-be-at-hand were-announced in-the-sea were-sunk
Itaque multo tempore regno ac securitate potitus est.
and-so for-a-long time the-kingdom and security possessed has
Quodam igitur tempore nuntiatum est ei multas adversus
on-a-certain then time announced it-was to-him many against
eum gentes una conspiratione atque eadem voluntate
him nations in-one conspiracy and with-the-same will
consurrexisse, scilicet Indos, Arabes Phoenicesque, Parthos
to-have-risen-up namely Indians Arabs and-Phoenicians Parthians
et Assyrios, nec non et Scythas, Alanos, Oxydracontas,
and Assyrians and also and Scythians Alans Oxydracae
Seres atque Caucones, Hiberos, Agriophagos, Eunomitas et
Seres and Caucones Iberians Agriophagi Eunomitae and
quaecunque sunt orientis barbarae gentes. Quibus ille auditis
whatever are of-the-east barbarian nations with-which he heard
plausum dans manibus magno risu dissolutus est.
applause giving with-his-hands in-great laughter dissolved was

Igitur ad consuetam artis confugit peritiam et more solito 2
therefore to the-accustomed of-his-art he-fled skill and in-manner usual
adhibuit sibi pelvem atque omnia alia instrumenta. Quibus
applied to-himself the-basin and all other instruments by-which
intellexit se vincendum atque ab hostibus capiendum,
he-understood himself to-be-conquered and by the-enemies to-be-captured
nisi fugae consuleret. Mox autem raso capite et barba
unless for-flight he-should-provide soon but with-shaved head and beard
collectisque omnibus quae sibi erant pretiosarum opum,
and-with-gathered all which to-him were of-precious riches
adpulit Macedoniae. Ibique amictus veste linea, astrologum
he-landed in-Macedonia and-there clothed in-a-garment linen an-astrologer
se professus, vim peritiae suae cum magna admiratione
himself professing the-power of-skill his with great admiration
commendabat. Ergo iam longe celebratior apud Macedones
he-commended therefore now far more-celebrated among the-Macedonians
Nectanabus erat, ut fama eius ne Olympiadam quidem
Nectanabus was so-that the-fame his not from-Olympias even
reginam lateret. Coepitque consulere peritiam viri absente
the-queen was-hidden and-she-began to-consult the-skill of-the-man with-absent
tunc coniuge. Nam Philippus bello forte tunc aberat. Igitur
then her-husband for Philip in-war by-chance then was-away therefore
ingredi iussus vel ad primam Olympiadis visionem miratione
to-come-in bidden even at the-first of-Olympias sight by-wonder
formae eius Nectanabus ita motus est, ut amori mulieris
at-the-beauty her Nectanabus so moved was that to-love of-the-woman
dederetur, quod eum ferme ex corporis intemperie facile erat
he-was-given-up because him nearly from of-body the-intemperance easy it-was
his voluptatibus vinci. Ingressus tamen protenta manu
by-these pleasures to-be-conquered having-entered yet with-outstretched hand
reginam havere iubet, non dominae eam appellatione dignatus,
the-queen to-be-well he-bids not of-mistress her with-the-title deigning

qui se olim dominum fuisse meminisset. Resalutato
who himself once a-master to-have-been remembered with-greeted-in-turn
igitur ac sedere iusso 'Tune,' inquit, 'ille es Nectanabus
then and to-sit bidden you she-says that are Nectanabus
matheseos sciens? Nam quisque te consuluerit, veridicentiae
of-astrology knowing for everyone-who you has-consulted to-truthfulness
tuae non refragatur. Dic ergo, quanam usus peritia adeo veri
your not objects say then what using skill so of-the-truth
amicus cluis.' Ad id respondit: 'Multifida quidem est, o
a-friend are-you-called to that he-answered many-cleft indeed is o
regina, ista haec nostra vaticinandi scientia, neque est in
queen this this our of-prophesying knowledge nor is-it-possible at
tempore omnium meminisse. Nam et interpretes somniorum et
the-moment all-things to-remember for both interpreters of-dreams and
astrici, quibus omnis divinandi ratio reseratur, et multa sunt
astrologers by-whom every of-divining method is-unlocked and many are
praeter haec nomina, quibus uti ad praescientiam solemus.'
besides these names which to-use for foreknowledge we-are-accustomed
3 His dictis cum acrius in vultum reginae intueretur,
with-these said when more-keenly into the-face of-the-queen he-gazed
Olympias refert: 'Quid ita defigeris, o propheta, ubi iam
Olympias replies why so are-you-transfixed o prophet when now
me intueris?' At ille: 'Recordor enim nunc demum oraculi
me you-gaze-at but he I-remember for now at-last the-oracle
eius, quod apud Aegyptum a diis acceperam, oportere me
that which in Egypt from the-gods I-had-received that-it-behooves me
reginae vera praedicere percunctanti. Quare consule super
to-a-queen true-things to-foretell inquiring therefore consult about
cupitis.' Et cum verbis tabulas promit, quas peritiae huiusce
things-desired and with words tablets he-brings-out which of-skill of-this
docti pinacam nominaverunt, opus adeo fabre absolutum, ut
the-learned a-pinax have-named a-work so skillfully finished that

artifex manus certasse putaretur cum bino eloquentiae
skilled hand to-have-competed would-be-thought with double of-eloquence
testimonio. Auro enim et ebore variatum pretium sui cum
testimony with-gold for and ivory varied the-value of-itself with
operis admiratione contenderat. Tum promit etiam septem
of-the-work admiration had-contended then he-brings-out also seven
quas rogaret stellas et horoscopum pariter, quibus singulis
which he-might-ask stars and the-horoscope likewise of-which to-each
sui metalli species erat. Iovem enim viseres aereo
of-its-own metal the-appearance was Jupiter for you-would-see by-an-airy
lapide nuncupatum, Solem crystallo, Lunam adamante, Martem
stone named the-Sun by-crystal the-Moon by-adamant Mars
dici sub lapide ematite; sed Mercurius ex smaragdo fuit,
to-be-called under the-stone hematite but Mercury from emerald was
Venus vero sapphiria, Saturnus in ophite, tum horoscopus
Venus indeed sapphire Saturn in ophite then the-horoscope
lygdinus. Exinde mirans Olympias pinacis illius opulentiam
of-Lygdian-marble then wondering Olympias of-tablet that the-richness
stellarumque mirabilem varietatem propter sessitans iubet omne
and-of-the-stars the-wonderful variety nearby sitting orders all
facessere famulitium, qui aderant sibi ex ministerio regali, ut
to-withdraw the-household who were-present to-her from the-service royal that
arcanum sermonem tuto committeret, et ait: ‘O tu, quaeso,
a-secret conversation safely she-might-entrust and she-says o you I-beg
intuere meam et Philippi congruentiam; nam multa fama
look-at my and of-Philip agreement for much rumor
est, quod, si adfuerit ex hostico, abiecta me velit
there-is that if he-comes-back from the-enemy's-land with-cast-off me he-wishes
in alteram transiugari.’ Ad haec ille: ‘Quin ergo deprome
into another to-be-yoked to this he why then bring-out
vel tuam vel Philippi genituram.’ Quod cum illa fecisset,
either your or of-Philip the-nativity which when she had-done

Nectanabus statim suam quoque adhibet constellationem
Nectanabus at-once his-own also applies constellation
exploraturus, an illa cum Olympiadis genitura conveniret
going-to-explore whether it with of-Olympias the-nativity would-agree
voluntatisque potiretur. Quod cum fore deprehendisset,
and-of-his-desire he-would-possess which when going-to-be he-had-detected
hinc orsus est: 'Non vana,' inquit, 'ista ad te fama pervenit,
thence begun he-has not empty he-says this to you rumor has-come
sed enim vera est. Ego tamen ac si prophetes ex Aegypto
but indeed true it-is I yet as if a-prophet from Egypt
opitulabor, ut queam, ne quid de divortio formidaveris.
will-help as I-can lest anything about divorce you-should-dread
Quod etsi foret, vindex facto non deesset.' 'Quanam,'
which even-if it-should-be an-avenger to-the-deed not would-be-lacking by-what
inquit Olympias, 'id facultate?' 'Quod enim,' Nectanabus
says Olympias this means what for Nectanabus
refert, 'fatale tibi est secundum hanc, quam video, genituram
replies fated for-you it-is according-to this which I-see nativity
misceri deo eque isto gravidam filium nutricaturam
to-be-mingled with-a-god and-from him pregnant a-son going-to-rear
ultorem omnium, si quae in te Philippus audebit.' Tum
an-avenger of-all if which against you Philip shall-dare then
illa: 'Et cuinam,' inquit, 'deo ad torum debeor?' Respondit:
she and to-what she-says god for the-bed am-I-due he-answered
'Ammoni Libyco. Is autem est fluvius.' De aetate, qua
to-Ammon Libyan he but is a-river about the-age in-which
visitur, quaerit. Iuvenem esse renuntiat. De facie sciscitatur
he-is-seen she-asks young to-be he-reports about his-face she-inquires
et cultu. Canum caesarie dicit et ore praelepidum,
and dress white in-hair he-says and in-face most-handsome
temporibus tamen atque fronte arietis cornibus asperatum.
in-the-temples yet and brow with-a-ram's horns roughened

‘Quare,’ inquit, ‘paraveris te, velut feminis mos est et
therefore he-says you-will-prepare yourself as for-women the-custom is and
reginae decorum est, ad huiuscemodi nuptias. Videbis enim
for-a-queen befitting is for of-this-kind a-wedding you-will-see for
et somnium et in somnio nuptias tibi futuras esse cum
both a-dream and in the-dream a-wedding for-you going-to be with
deo.’ Ad haec illa: ‘Ego,’ inquit, ‘somnium si somniabo, non
the-god to this she I she-says the-dream if I-dream not
iam te ut mago utar, enimvero dei honore venerabor.’
now you as a-magus I-will-use but-indeed with-a-god's honor I-will-revere
Progressus inde Nectanabus neque oppertus in tempus 4
having-gone-out thence Nectanabus nor having-waited for time
longum herbas ex scientia quaerit ad somniorum imperia
long herbs from his-knowledge seeks for of-dreams the-commands
necessarias. Quibus carptis atque in sucum pressis effigiat
needed with-which plucked and into juice pressed he-shapes
ex cera corpusculum feminae eique nomen reginae cum
out-of wax a-little-body of-a-woman and-to-it the-name of-the-queen when
adscripsisset, lectulum eidem fabricatur, cui illa effigies
he-had-written a-little-bed for-it he-constructs on-which that image
supraponitur iuxtaque lucernis incensis sucum herbarum
is-placed and-beside-it with-lamps lit the-juice of-herbs
potentium superfundit carmenque dicit efficax et secretum,
potent he-pours-over and-a-spell says effective and secret
quo effectum est, ut quidquid ille simulamini cereo
by-which brought-about it-was that whatever he to-the-image waxen
loquebatur, id omne fieri sibi regina sit opinata per
spoke that all to-be-done to-herself the-queen has imagined through
somnium. Videt enim se in complexibus dei, quos
a-dream she-sees for herself in the-embraces of-the-god which
fore cum Ammone dixerat, postque complexus deum
going-to-be with Ammon he-had-said and-after the-embrace the-god

sibi loquentem audierat, factam se et utero gravem
to-her speaking she-had-heard made herself both in-womb heavy
et edituram vindicem filium. Surgit ergo de lectulo et
and going-to-bear an-avenging son she-rises then from the-little-bed and
admirata somnii maiestatem hominem ad sese vocat et
having-wondered-at of-the-dream the-majesty the-man to herself she-calls and
'Ecce,' inquit, 'promissum somnium vidi. Nam et deus
behold she-says the-promised dream I-have-seen for both the-god
erat et agebat mecum nuptiae secretum. Igitur curam
was-there and he-performed with-me of-a-wedding the-secret therefore the-care
quaeso suscipias, quando id effectum compleatur quandoque
I-beg you-undertake when this accomplished may-be-completed and-when
me deus iste dignetur, ut ego quoque iugalibus me et
me god that may-deign that I also for-the-nuptials myself and
sponso iam praeparem.' Ad haec Nectanabus: 'Hoc
for-the-bridegroom now may-prepare to this Nectanabus this
quidem,' inquit, 'o domina, quod vidisti, verum est somnium.
indeed he-says o mistress which you-saw true is the-dream
Aderit tamen ipse etiam ad te deus. Sed censeo mihi
will-be-present yet himself even to you the-god but I-propose for-me
secessum istic iuxta tuum cubiculum dari, ut iuste
a-retreat there beside your bedroom to-be-given that rightly
procurem, ne quis tibi metus sit sub adventu huius numinis.'
I-may-manage lest any to-you fear be at the-coming of-this divinity
Probat id promissi regina et vicinum cubiculo suo
approves this of-the-promise the-queen and next to-the-bedroom her-own
secessum mago tribuit et 'Si,' inquit, 'harumce nuptiarum
a-retreat to-the-magus assigns and if she-says of-these nuptials
cepero experimentum conceptuque sim potita, honor
I-shall-have-taken proof and-of-conception I-have possessed-myself the-honor
regalis tibi a regina non deerit, inque te patris
royal to-you from the-queen not will-be-lacking and-in you of-a-father

adfectum fore mihi iam spes promittit.' Tum addidit ille:
the-affection going-to-be to-me now hope promises then added he
'Praecursor tibi,' inquit, 'dei mox aderit. Nam sedenti
a-forerunner to-you he-says of-the-god soon will-be-present for to-you-sitting
superveniet draco clementius reptabundus. Enim tu eo
will-come-upon a-serpent rather-gently crawling indeed you with-him
viso omnis, qui adsint, abire iubeto de medio, nec tamen
seen all who are-present to-go-away order from the-middle nor yet
quaecunque aderunt exstinxeris lumina, sed cum te
whatever will-be-present quench the-lights but when yourself
lectulo conlocaris, opertum quidem vultum ad verecundiam
on-the-little-bed you-have-placed covered indeed the-face for modesty
texeris velamine, tamen limis explora vultus illos,
you-cover with-a-veil yet with-a-sidelong-look examine the-features those
quos iam somno praevidisti, ut si is erit.' Insequenti igitur
which already in-sleep you-foresaw as if he will-be on-the-following then
die et locus mago destinatur et ille quaevis ex arte
day both a-place for-the-magus is-appointed and he all-things from his-art
opportuna providit, vellus scilicet arietis quam mollissimum
fitting provided a-fleece namely of-a-ram very soft
una cum cornibus sceptrumque et amictum admodum
together with the-horns and-a-scepter and a-cloak very
candidum. Quo superiecto efficit scientia draconem
white with-which thrown-over brings-about his-knowledge a-serpent
sibi veluti mansuetum et innoxie gradientem vesperaque
to-him as-if tame and harmlessly walking and-at-evening
adventantem eum facit ut praecursorem. Et is intrat
approaching it he-makes as a-forerunner and it enters
ad feminam. Quo viso illa mox horridula prae metu
to the-woman with-which seen she soon shuddering for fear
disicit quosque praesentes, ipsa vero secundum monitum
scatters all present she-herself but according-to the-warning

dat sese lectulo et obnupta vultu solo oculo ad
gives herself to-the-little-bed and veiled in-face with-one eye to
superventum opinati dei curiose intendebat viditque illum,
the-arrival of-the-supposed god curiously was-attending and-she-saw him
quem somno ante praeceperat. At ille sceptro deposito
whom in-sleep before she-had-foreseen but he with-the-scepter laid-down
conscensoque lectulo nuptias agit eximque utero eius
and-mounted the-little-bed the-nuptials performs and-thereupon on-the-womb her
superiecta manu, 'Habes,' inquit, 'o mulier ex nobis haec
with-placed-upon hand you-have he-says o woman from us this
invicta et insubiugabilia foedera. Quippe gaudeto te
unconquered and unsubduable covenant indeed rejoice yourself
gravidam ex filio, quo vindice et universi orbis domino
pregnant with a-son by-whom avenger and of-the-whole world master
laetare.' His ita dictis sceptroque recepto conclave
be-glad with-these so said and-with-the-scepter recovered the-chamber
exit. Sed mane iam luciscente mulier alacrior laetitia
he-leaves but in-the-morning now growing-light the-woman more-eager with-joy
ut potita dei cubiculum Nectanabi inrumpit. Is e
as having-possessed the-god the-bedroom of-Nectanabus bursts-into he from
somno excitatus ut nescius rei causam quaerit adventus.
sleep roused as ignorant of-the-thing the-cause asks of-her-coming
Tum illa 'Facta,' inquit, 'sunt omnia, quae promiseras.' Et
then she done she-says are all-things which you-had-promised and
ille sese gaudere professus est. Rursus mulier 'Ergone,'
he himself to-rejoice professed he-has again the-woman then
inquit, 'ultra adesse dignabitur? Nam est mihi etiam
she-says further to-be-present will-he-deign for there-is in-me also
amor ad nuptias tales. Id enim mihi sensus coniux coniugi
a-love for nuptials such this for to-me feeling a-spouse to-a-spouse
dedit. Nunc tamen metuo, ut ista cessaverint.' Tum magus
has-given now yet I-fear lest these may-have-ceased then the-magus

gaudens, quod amorem sui mulier testaretur in hoc verbo,
rejoicing that love of-him the-woman was-showing in this word
ait ad reginam: 'Huiusce dei minister ego sum, et cum
says to the-queen of-this god the-minister I am and when
voles talis mariti conventum, secretum quoque praesta
you-wish of-such a-husband the-meeting secret also keep
sollemne mihique dicito, ut purgatione sacricula procurem,
solemn and-to-me say that with-purification little-rites I-may-arrange
quo ad te rursus adveniat.' Tum ergo illa deversorium
by-which to you again he-may-come then therefore she the-lodging
solitum Nectanabo promittit et claves cubiculi mago
accustomed to-Nectanabus promises and the-keys of-the-bedroom to-the-magus
dari iubet; ex quo promptior illis erat in id, quod
to-be-given orders from which readier for-them was for that which
cupiverant, commeatus, sub opinione tamen Ammonis dei.
they-had-desired the-passage under the-supposition yet of-Ammon the-god
Sed iam alvo et lateribus excrescentibus 'Quidnam,' inquit,
but now with-belly and sides swelling what she-says
'o propheta, mihi fiet, quidve nunc opus facto est,
o prophet to-me will-become or-what now need of-doing is
si adveniens Philippus cum isto me onere deprehendat?'
if arriving Philip with this me burden discovers
'Ne metueris,' ille respondit, 'opitulabitur enim Ammon
do-not fear he answered will-help for Ammon
ei vitio, quod suasit, eumque per somnium super facto
to-that fault which he-urged and-him through a-dream about the-deed
docebit, ne quid tibi iste succenseat, quod sciat deos
will-instruct lest at-all with-you he be-angry because he-knows the-gods
omnium potentes esse.' In hunc igitur modum Olympias
of-all powerful to-be in this then way Olympias
magicis artibus ducebatur. Sed Nectanabus sibi sacrum
by-magic arts was-led but Nectanabus for-himself a-sacred

accipitrem parat eumque secretius monet ire ad Philippum
hawk prepares and-it more-secretly warns to-go to Philip
et loqui, quae ipse mandaverat. Pergitque ire ales, ut
and to-speak what he-himself had-commanded and-proceeds to-go the-bird as
iussum est, per terras et mare Philippumque per noctem
bidden it-was through lands and sea and-Philip by night
adsistens mandatis opinionibus complet. Quippe territus
standing-by with-the-commanded notions fills indeed terrified
somnio evocatoque rex somniorum interprete sic ait:
by-the-dream and-with-summoned the-king of-dreams an-interpreter thus says
'Vidi,' inquit, 'per quietem deum quendam, facie formosum
I-saw he-says in sleep a-god certain in-face handsome
et canitie caesariatum capitis et genae, arietis tamen
and with-white-hair crowned of-the-head and cheek with-a-ram's yet
cornibus insignitum, supervenisse Olympiadi coniugi meae
horns marked to-have-come-upon Olympias wife my
seque illi nuptiis miscuisse.' Quibus patratis haec
and-himself with-her in-nuptials to-have-mingled with-which accomplished these
etiam verba addiderat: 'Excepisti,' inquit, 'o mulier, marem
also words he-had-added you-have-received he-says o woman a-male
filium, qui adserat te et patris ultor esse laudetur.'
son who may-free you and of-his-father the-avenger to-be be-praised
Tum mulieris virginal biblo contegere consignareque
then of-the-woman the-womb with-papyrus to-cover and-to-seal
annulo aureo visebatur, cui inscalptio erat solis effigies
with-a-ring golden he-was-seen on-which the-engraving was of-the-sun the-image
et leonis caput hastili subiecto. Quae cum vidissem,
and of-a-lion the-head with-a-spear placed-beneath which when I-had-seen
accipiter superveniens excitare me pulsu videbatur alarum.
a-hawk coming-upon to-rouse me with-a-beat seemed of-its-wings
Quid igitur istud est, quod portenditur?' Tum interpres:
what then this is which is-portended then the-interpreter

‘O Philippe, verum istud est nec in aliud interpretandum,
o Philip true this is nor into other to-be-interpreted
ut adsolet, opinabile. Quod enim signari vidisti virginal
as is-wont a-matter-of-opinion that for sealed you-saw the-womb
feminae, fidem rei visae testatur. Consignatio enim
of-the-woman the-certainty of-the-thing seen attests the-sealing for
fides est atque veritas, ex quo praenosti, quod illa
a-pledge is and truth from which you-have-foreknown that she
conceperit; nemo enim vas vacuum consignaverit. Et
has-conceived no-one for a-vessel empty would-seal and
haec biblo, quippe cum biblus ista vel carta nullibi
this with-papyrus for since the-papyrus this or paper nowhere
gentium nisi in nostra tellure gignatur. Aegyptium igitur
among-nations except in our land is-produced Egyptian therefore
semen est, qui conceptus est, non tamen humile, sed
the-seed is which conceived has-been not yet lowly but
clarum plane vel regium propter aurei annuli visionem.
famous plainly or royal because-of of-the-golden ring the-sight
Hoc enim metallo nihil scimus esse pretiosius, in quo
than-this for metal nothing we-know to-be more-precious in which
etiam deorum effigies veneramur. Sed quoniam signaculum
also of-the-gods the-images we-revere but since the-seal
solis forma visebatur subterque leonis caput hastile
of-the-sun in-the-form was-seen and-beneath of-a-lion the-head the-spear
quoque adiacens erat, is ipse, quisque nascetur, in orientis
also lying-beside was he himself whoever shall-be-born into of-the-east
usque veniet praepotentia possessionem, omnia audens, quae
even will-come the-supreme-power the-possession all-things daring which
natura est leonis, idque vi et hasta faciet, quae una
the-nature is of-the-lion and-this by-force and spear he-will-do which together
vidisti. Enimvero quoniam deum capite arietino testaris
you-saw and-indeed since a-god with-head ram's you-attest

eundemque canum, est deus Libyae Ammonis nomine.'
and-the-same white-haired he-is the-god of-Libya by-Ammon's name
Hanc interpretationem interpretis tunc non aequo satis
this interpretation of-the-interpreter then not with-even enough
animo Philippus accepit, quod homine concepisse mulierem
mind Philip received because by-a-man to-have-conceived the-woman
credidisset. Festinata igitur re bellica Macedoniam
he-believed with-hastened then the-business of-war to-Macedonia
ad sua repedat. Quo reditu mulier audito trepidatior
to his-own he-returns with-which return the-woman heard more-anxious
erat, solatiis tamen eius Nectanabus adsidebat. Tandem
was by-the-comforts yet her Nectanabus sat-beside at-last
igitur adveniens Philippus ut ingressus est, reginam, cum
then arriving Philip when entered he-has the-queen when
diffidentius sibi occursare coniugem intueretur, astu
rather-distrustfully himself to-meet the-wife he-saw with-craft
dissimulans indignationem in haec verba solatus est: 'Me
hiding his-indignation in these words comforted he-has me
quidem clam res gesta non est libensque te venia
indeed secretly the-thing done not has-been and-gladly you with-pardon
impertio, quippe culpa tibi non adhaerente, sicuti
I-favor since with-the-blame to-you not clinging as
praescivi de sompnio defensante, quod factum est, ab
I-foreknew from the-dream defending what done has-been from
omni culpa, qua adlini posses. Regibus quoque sicuti
all blame with-which to-be-smeared you-could to-kings also as
in alios vis est, ad deos tamen potentia frixerit.
over others power is against the-gods yet the-power grows-cold
Neque enim te scio popularis alicuius amori servisse,
not for you I-know of-a-commoner any to-the-love to-have-been-slave
enimvero dei deorum pulcherrimi.' His dictis animum
but-indeed of-a-god of-gods the-most-beautiful with-these said the-spirit

mulieris instauraverat. Agit ergo gratias uxor veniae
of-the-woman he-had-restored gives therefore thanks the-wife for-the-pardon
eique, qui sibi spem eius pollicitus videbatur, prophetae
and-to-him who to-her the-hope of-it promised seemed to-the-prophet
Nectanabo. Igitur agebat interim Philippus cum muliere
Nectanabus therefore lived meanwhile Philip with the-woman
coniugaliter. Nectanabus vero praesens quidem, sed invisitatus
as-husband Nectanabus but present indeed but unseen
una agebat; neque enim videri se ex arte magica
together lived nor for to-be-seen himself by art magic
concesserat. Denique et interfuit aliquando effervescenti iam
he-had-allowed finally also he-was-present once boiling-over now
Philippo et coniugem increpanti, quod ille conceptus non
Philip and his-wife chiding because that conception not
ex deo mulieri foret. Quod cum auribus Nectanabus
from a-god to-the-woman should-be which when with-his-ears Nectanabus
usurpasset conviviumque celebre et regium pararetur ob
had-caught and-a-banquet crowded and royal was-being-prepared for
reversionem scilicet Philippi votum ac redditum, omnium
the-return namely of-Philip the-prayer and the-return of-all
erat visere dapsilem satis diffusamque lasciviam, nec
it-was to-see lavish enough and-widespread revelry nor
tamen Philippum frontem in laetitiam explicasse, quod
yet Philip his-brow into gladness to-have-unfolded because
praegnantem Olympiadam admodum suspectaret. Ergo ut
pregnant Olympias exceedingly he-suspected therefore when
iam tempus convivandi erat, statim se reficit Nectanabus
now the-time of-feasting was at-once himself remakes Nectanabus
et reformat in illum draconis quidem, sed auctiorem
and reshapes into that of-the-serpent indeed but larger
aliquantulum tractum eoque reptabundus triclinium penetrat,
somewhat form and-in-it crawling the-dining-room penetrates

tum spectabilis specie, tum maiestate corporis totius,
both striking in-appearance and in-the-majesty of-body whole
tum etiam acumine sibilorum adeo terribili et divino, ut
and also in-the-shrillness of-hissings so terrible and divine that
fundamenta etiam parietesque conclavis quati ac motari
the-foundations even and-the-walls of-the-chamber to-be-shaken and to-be-moved
viderentur. Ceteris igitur prosultantibus ac delabentibus
seemed with-the-others then leaping-up and slipping-away
metu, una Olympias, quo fidem faceret divino
for-fear alone Olympias that belief she-might-create for-the-divine
commercio, manum protendit ad bestiam. At vero draco,
intercourse her-hand stretches-out to the-beast but indeed the-serpent
ut lubentiam sui proderet, et caput in sinum mulieris
that the-willingness its it-might-show both its-head into the-lap of-the-woman
extendit et omne agmen in spiram mansuetius colligit
stretches and all its-length into a-coil rather-gently gathers
et genibus sinuque mulieris insidens promptum os
and on-the-knees and-lap of-the-woman sitting a-ready mouth
porrigit et cum bisulco linguae vibratu osculum uxoris
offers and with forked of-the-tongue flickering the-kiss of-the-wife
adfectat, ne quid omnino coniugali fidei deesset apud eum
it-seeks lest anything at-all to-conjugal faith be-lacking with that
maritum, cui talis visio proderetur. Hic Philippus una
husband to-whom such a-vision was-shown here Philip at-once
metu unaque admiratione discedit. Sed ultra Nectanabus
with-fear and-at-once with-wonder departs but further Nectanabus
inspiciens draconem vertit in aquilam et volatu facessit e
looking-on the-serpent turns into an-eagle and in-flight goes-off from
medio. Tunc ex admiratione sobrius Philippus: ‘O coniux,’
the-middle then from wonder sobered Philip o wife
ait, ‘patuit vero argumento divini circa te numinis
he-says has-been-shown by-true proof of-the-divine around you divinity

cultus. Vidimus enim deum auxiliantem tibi periclitanti,
the-worship we-saw for a-god helping you in-danger
quamvis quis is sit nesciam, quippe vel Iovem credas
although who he is I-know-not since either Jupiter you-would-believe
ex aquila vel Ammonem ex dracone.' Ad haec mulier:
from the-eagle or Ammon from the-serpent to this the-woman
'Ammonem se quidem professus est, dum primum mecum
Ammon himself indeed professed has when first with-me
convenire dignatus est, scilicet Libyae dominum universae.'
to-meet deigned he-has namely of-Libya the-lord whole

II · THE BIRTH AND BOYHOOD OF ALEXANDER

A hen lays an egg in Philip's lap; a serpent hatches and dies before it can creep back in, and Antiphon reads it: a son will circle the world and die swiftly on his way home. Alexander is born to thunder and earthquake, and is taught by Aristotle. Watching the stars, he pushes Nectanebo into a ditch; the dying man reveals he is his father, and is carried home and buried. Delphi promises the world to whoever rides Bucephalas, and Alexander tames the man-eater.

Enimvero pavens cum in quadam regiae parte Philippus 5
indeed fearing when in a-certain of-the-palace part Philip
sessitaret, in qua aves plurimae circumerrarent, isque
was-sitting in which birds very-many wandered-about and-he
intentus rebus agendis animum occupavisset, repente gallina
intent on-things to-be-done his-mind had-occupied suddenly a-hen
supersiliens eius in sinum considensque enixa est ovum. Sed
leaping-up his into lap and-settling laid has an-egg but
ovum illud evolutum sinu eius humi concrepat, cuiusque
egg that rolled-out from-lap his on-the-ground cracks and-of-it
testula dissultante dracunculus, ut pote tantilli conclavis
with-the-little-shell bursting-apart a-little-serpent as being of-so-small a-chamber

pertenuis, egredi visitur, isque saepe circumcursans et
very-slender to-come-out is-seen and-it often running-round and
ambiens ovi testulam velle se rursus eo, unde emerserat,
going-around of-the-egg the-little-shell to-wish itself again there whence it-had-emerged
condere; sed priusquam cupitum ageret, morte praeventus est.
to-hide but before the-desired it-did by-death forestalled was
Ea visio non parvum scrupulum Philippo in animum iniecerat.
that sight not small a-scruple in-Philip into the-mind had-cast
Rex denique Antiphontem, qui coniector id temporis
the-king finally Antiphon who a-diviner at-that of-time
egregius habebatur, arcessiri iubet eique aperit rem
excellent was-held to-be-summoned orders and-to-him reveals the-thing
visitatam: gallinam, ovum, dracunculum, circuitum, mortem
seen the-hen the-egg the-little-serpent the-circuit the-death
dracunculi. Sed enim Antipho ad incrementum peritiae suae
of-the-little-serpent but indeed Antiphon for increase of-skill his
dei adminiculo inspiratus infit regem docere: filium mox
of-the-god by-the-aid inspired begins the-king to-teach a-son soon
ei fore, qui omnem mundum obiret omnemque
to-him going-to-be who the-whole world should-go-round and-all
suae dicioni subiugaret; hunc post ambitum mundani laboris,
to-his sway subject this-one after the-circuit of-worldly labor
domum iam se vertentem, occasu celeri periturum.
home already himself turning by-a-death swift going-to-perish
'Draco quippe,' ait, 'est regale animal. Ovum vero forma
the-serpent for he-says is a-royal animal the-egg but the-shape
mundialis est.' Ex quo cum draco erupisse videatur,
of-the-world is from which when the-serpent to-have-burst-out seems
post omnem rotunditatis illius ambitum circuisse atque
after all of-roundness that the-circuit to-have-gone-round and
ingredi eo, unde ortum habuerat, cupivisse, prius quidem
to-enter there whence origin it-had to-have-desired before indeed

mortuum, quam id fieri proveniret, cuncta haec, quae
dead than that to-be-done should-come-about all these-things which
praedicta sunt, portendisse. Et his quidem in hunc
foretold have-been to-have-portended and with-these indeed in this
modum interpretamenti sui fidem fecerat apud Philippum.
manner of-interpretation his credit he-had-made with Philip
Adpetente autem iam partitudinis tempore consederat 6
with-approaching but now of-childbirth the-time had-sat-down
Olympias oneri partus levando. Sed adsistens Nectanabus
Olympias for-the-burden of-birth to-be-lightened but standing-by Nectanabus
inspectansque coelites cursus, notans etiam mundana secreta,
and-watching the-heavenly courses marking also of-the-world the-secrets
peritia auctore 'Mane,' inquit, 'quaeso, mi mulier, et vim
with-skill as-guide wait he-says I-beg my woman and the-force
partitudinis vince reprimens geniturae necessitatem imminentis;
of-childbirth overcome restraining of-the-birth the-necessity of-the-impending
quippe si nunc fiat editus partus, servile quiddam
since if now be brought-forth the-offspring servile something
captivumque potentum natum iri astra minitantur.'
and-captive of-the-powerful born to-be-going the-stars threaten
Atque cum obdurasset mulier obfirmatius secundisque aculeis
and when had-held-out the-woman more-firmly and-by-second pangs
pulsaretur, rursus admonetur: 'Nunc etiam, quaeso, duraveris
was-struck again she-is-warned now also I-beg hold-out
paululum, quippe si editu victa sis, gallus et semivir
a-little since if by-the-delivery overcome you-are a-eunuch and half-man
erit, qui nascetur.' Talia et blandius loquebatur et
will-be he-who will-be-born such-things both more-coaxingly he-spoke and
adtrectare secretius mulierem non differebat, tactu etiam
to-touch more-secretly the-woman not he-delayed with-touch also
opitulaturus att de *** pueri. Ac tum demum acrius
going-to-help (obscure) about (lacuna) of-the-boy and then at-last more-keenly

intuens cursus astrorum motusque elementorum cognoscit
gazing-at the-courses of-the-stars and-the-motions of-the-elements he-learns
iam omnem mundum vim suam in summo culmine conversionis
now the-whole world force its at the-highest summit of-the-turning
lene librasse solemque ipsum mediam caeli plagam et
gently to-have-poised and-the-sun itself the-middle of-the-sky region and
convexi celsiora percurrere. Tunc ergo ad mulierem sic
of-the-vault the-higher-parts to-run-through then therefore to the-woman thus
ait: 'En tempus est,' inquit, 'voce nunc fortiore opus est et
he-says lo the-time is he-says of-voice now stronger need is and
obfirmatiore conatu, quippe quod nunc erit editum, mundi
of-more-resolute effort since what now will-be brought-forth of-the-world
totius dominio celebrabitur.' His femina incitata mugitu
whole by-lordship will-be-celebrated by-these the-woman roused than-bellowing
omni vehementius ingemiscens exegit puerum, qui ubi ad
any more-vehemently groaning brought-forth a-boy who when to
humum lapsus est, motus protinus terrae insequitur et
the-ground fallen has a-movement at-once of-the-earth follows and
tonitruum crepor ventorumque conflictus, tum etiam fulgurum
of-thunders a-crash and-of-winds a-clash then also of-lightnings
coruscatio, prorsus ut viseres omni mundo curam cum illa
a-flashing so that you-would-see by-all the-world care with that
partitudine elaboratam. Ergo ait et Philippus post solatia
childbirth taken therefore says also Philip after consolations
gratulatoria: 'Equidem mihi fuisse, o mulier, consilium
congratulatory indeed to-me to-have-been o woman a-plan
profitebor non nutriendi, quod natum est, propterea quod
I-will-confess not of-rearing what born is on-that-account because
id de meo semine non provenerit; sed enim cum videam
it from my seed not came but indeed since I-see
subolem esse divinam editionemque ipsam elementis et
the-offspring to-be divine and-the-birth itself to-the-elements and

diis pariter cordi fuisse, votis educationis accedo;
to-the-gods equally dear to-have-been to-the-prayers of-rearing I-assent
inque memoriam eius filii, qui mihi natus occubuit de
and-in memory of-that son who to-me born died from
prioribus nuptiis, Alexandri eidem nomen dabo.'
earlier marriage of-Alexander to-the-same the-name I-will-give
Post vero regalius et competentius alebatur. Nam 7
afterward indeed more-royally and more-fittingly he-was-reared for
et coronalia obsequia eidem undique confluebant tum
both crown homage to-him from-everywhere flowed both
Macedonia tum Pella tum Thracia multigenisque aliis gentibus
Macedonia and Pella and Thrace and-many-kinds-of other nations
in id certantibus. Atque in his exegit spatia lactandi.
in that competing and in these he-passed the-periods of-suckling
Vultu formaque omni alienus a Philippo, ne matri
in-face and-form wholly unlike from Philip not to-his-mother
quidem ad similitudinem congruus, ei quoque, cuius e
even in likeness agreeing to-him also of-whose from
semine credebatur, facie diversus, sed suo modo et filo
the-seed he-was-believed in-face different but in-his-own manner and build
pulcherrimus, subcrispa paululum et flavente caesarie, ut
most-handsome curly a-little and with-golden hair as
comae sunt leoninae, oculis egregii decoris, altero admodum
manes are leonine with-eyes of-outstanding beauty the-one wholly
nigra quasi pupilla est, laevo vero glauca atque coeli
black as-it-were the-pupil is the-left but blue-gray and of-the-sky
similis, profususque omni spiritu et impetu, quo leones,
like and-poured-forth with-all spirit and dash with-which lions
ut palam viseres, quid de illo puero natura promitteret.
so-that openly you-would-see what about that boy nature promised
Crescebat ergo ut corporis gratia ita studiorum quoque et
he-grew therefore as of-body in-grace so of-studies also and

prudentiae maiestate et cum his una regiae disciplinae.
of-prudence in-majesty and with these together of-royal discipline
Eius nutrix Alacrinis erat, paedagogus atque nutritor nomine
his nurse Alacrinis was the-attendant and foster-father by-name
Leonides, litteraturae Polynicus magister, musices Alcippus
Leonides of-letters Polynicus the-teacher of-music Alcippus
Lemnius, geometriae Menecles Peloponnesius, oratoriae
the-Lemnian of-geometry Menecles the-Peloponnesian of-oratory
Anaximenes Aristocli Lampsacenus, philosophiae autem
Anaximenes son-of-Aristocles the-Lampsacene of-philosophy but
Aristoteles ille Milesius. Enim de Mileto loqui hic longa
Aristotle that the-Milesian for about Miletus to-speak here long
res est et propositum interturbat deque ea, si quid
a-matter is and the-plan disturbs and-about it if anything
inquirere curiosius voles, sat tibi, lector, habeto Graecum
to-inquire more-curiously you-wish enough for-you reader take the-Greek
Favorini librum, qui Omnigenae historiae superscribitur.
of-Favorinus book which Miscellaneous History is-entitled
Illic etiam generis Alexandri inveneris seriem, cui
there also of-the-lineage of-Alexander you-will-find the-series to-which
generi principium praestitisse ferunt Oceanum vel Thetidem,
lineage the-beginning to-have-given they-say Oceanus or Thetis
exinque fluxisse per Acrisium Danaumque atque Persea
and-thence to-have-flowed through Acrisius and-Danaus and Perseus
multosque alios in Perdiccae genera vel Philipporum. Nam
and-many others into of-Perdiccas the-stocks or of-the-Philips for
ne Olympiadi quidem secus propago generosa est, cui
not for-Olympias even otherwise the-descent noble is for-whom
diligentia pari a mundi principio per Saturnum atque
with-diligence equal from of-the-world the-beginning through Saturn and
Neptunum, tum etiam Telamona seriem generis attexuit,
Neptune then also Telamon the-series of-the-lineage he-has-woven

ad tertiumque Neoptolemum docet prosapiam defluxisse,
to and-the-third Neoptolemus he-shows the-stock to-have-flowed-down
cuius uxor Anasafia mater Olympiadis cluit. Igitur ad
whose wife Anasafia the-mother of-Olympias is-called therefore to
Alexandrum mens recurrat. Erat quidem ille ad omnes
Alexander let-the-mind run-back he-was indeed he in all
litteras iam peritus, et sibi quisque ludus in puero imperiale
letters now skilled and to-him every game in the-boy imperial
aliquid fuerat meditamentum. Nam sicubi tempus cum labore
something had-been a-rehearsal for if-ever the-time with the-toil
lectionis absolverat, et iudicare solitus inter aequaevos et
of-reading he-had-finished both to-judge he-was-wont among his-peers and
industriari, quatenus inter hos argumenta iurgii nascerentur;
to-busy-himself as-far-as among them grounds of-quarrel arose
ac tunc alteri iurgantium favens, ubi partem illius ingenio
and then the-one of-the-quarrelers favoring when the-side his by-wit
sublevasset, solitus in contrariam resultare rursusque contra
he-had-lifted he-was-wont to the-opposite to-spring-back and-again against
eam, cui paullo ante patrocinatus fuerat, dicere. Itaque
that-one whom a-little before defended he-had to-speak and-so
cum saepe utrique parti utilis favisor ac strenuus victor
when often to-both sides a-useful supporter and a-vigorous winner
foret, opinionem non frustra sibi spectabilis ingenii
he-was the-opinion not in-vain for-himself of-remarkable wit
confirmarat. Interea viri, qui Philippi armenta vel equitia
he-had-confirmed meanwhile the-men who of-Philip the-herds or the-studs
curabant, equum spectabilis formae pulchritudine absolutum
tended a-horse of-remarkable form in-beauty perfect
regi deducunt aiuntque illum armenti quidem regalis
to-the-king lead and-say it of-the-herd indeed royal
genus, formatum pedibus ad Pegasi fabulam opinabilem,
in-breed formed in-its-feet to of-Pegasus the-fable credible

et si equi fuisse Laomedonti eiusmodi praedicantur. Nec
and if horses to-have-been Laomedon's of-such-kind are-proclaimed nor
secus senserat Philipus. Nam et actu corporis et
otherwise had-thought Philip for both by-the-movement of-the-body and
linea pulchritudinis movebatur. Sed addit equisius: 'Haec
by-the-line of-its-beauty he-was-moved but adds the-groom these
quidem, o rex, sunt in hoc equo talia; sed est ei
indeed o king are in this horse such but there-is in-it
vitium beluile, namque homines edit et in huiuscemodi
a-vice beastly for men it-eats and on this-kind-of
pabulum saevit.' Et 'Heu,' rex ait, 'numnam illud in isto
fodder it-rages and alas the-king says surely that in this
proverbium est, quod semper propter rebus bonis deteriora
the-proverb is that always nearby to-things good worse-things
conlimitant? Enimvero quoniam deductus semel, claudi
border but-indeed since brought once to-be-shut-up
eum atque ali curabitis, sub claustris scilicet praeferratis.
it and fed you-will-see-to under bars namely iron-plated
Quisque enim subcubuerit legibus tristioribus, huiuscemodi
whoever for shall-have-succumbed to-laws harsher of-this-kind
melius obiectabitur lanienae.' Et haec quidem rex, et
better will-be-thrown to-the-butchery and these-things indeed the-king and
cum dicto iussa complentur. Sed interea Alexander iam
with the-word the-orders are-fulfilled but meanwhile Alexander now
annum duodecimum adpellens et comes patri fiebat et
the-year twelfth reaching both companion to-his-father became and
usu armorum indui meditabatur, simulque cum
in-the-use of-arms to-be-trained he-was-practicing and-at-the-same-time with
exercitibus visi gaudebat et equis insiliens et reliqua omnia
the-armies seen rejoiced and on-horses leaping and the-other all-things
miles ut poterat, adeo ut Philippus haec demirans
as-a-soldier as he-could so that Philip these-things wondering-at

sic ad illum: ‘O puer, aveo quidem et vultu fruens et
thus to him o boy I-long indeed both of-your-face enjoying and
moribus tuis, eorumque aliud duco ad similitudinem nostri,
of-manners your and-of-them one I-reckon to the-likeness of-ours
aliud vero auctius, quam ut sit ex nostra natura. Sed
the-other but greater than that it-be from our nature but
nunc mihi ad proximam usque iter est civitatem.’
now for-me to the-next even journey is city
Quod dictum cum Olympias etiam usurpasset profectusque 8
which saying when Olympias also had-caught and-gone
Philippus foret non simili adfectu quo solitus, Nectanabum
Philip was not with-like feeling with-which accustomed Nectanabus
protinus repetit eumque consulit super clandestino mariti
at-once she-seeks-again and-him consults about the-secret of-her-husband
consilio. Qui cum adsidente sibi Alexandro ex arte illa
plan who when with-sitting-by him Alexander from art that
astrica loqueretur, interpellat puer et ‘Heus tu,’ inquit,
of-the-stars was-speaking interrupts the-boy and hey you he-says
‘istaene, quas stellas appellas, agitant nunc in coelo ibique
those which stars you-call move now in the-sky and-there
visuntur?’ Et Nectanabus ita esse respondit. Pergit igitur
are-seen and Nectanabus so to-be answered goes-on then
Alexander: ‘Possumne istas videre atque oculis usurpare?’
Alexander can-I these see and with-my-eyes take-in
Adnuit posse. Tempus exigit. Vesperam pollicetur. Quae ubi
he-nodded it-could the-time requires the-evening he-promises which when
advenerit, ‘Comitare,’ inquit, ‘una mecum ad campestrem
it-comes accompany he-says together with-me to an-open-country
locum, easque tibi in coeli choro lucentes ostendam.’
place and-them to-you in of-the-sky the-choir shining I-will-show
Recipit ita sese facturum velut cupidus puer. Ergo ubi
he-undertakes so himself to-do-it as eager a-boy therefore when

tempus est, progressus oppido dabat Alexandro videre,
the-time was having-gone-out from-the-town he-gave to-Alexander to-see
quae cupiverat. Enim non una sedulitas discenti puero cum
what he-had-desired for not one zeal to-the-learning boy with
magistro. Namque paulatim Alexander ad praescitum fossae
the-master for little-by-little Alexander to a-foreseen ditch
praeceps hominem adpellens impulsu improviso praecipitat;
headlong the-man driving with-a-push unforeseen throws-him-down
ibique letali ictu cervicis Nectanabus adflictus haec est
and-there with-a-deadly blow of-the-neck Nectanabus stricken this has
conquestus: 'Mi,' inquit, 'fili, Alexander, quodnam huius facti
complained my he-says son Alexander what of-this deed
tibi consilium fuit?' At ille respondit: 'Conquerendum igitur
your purpose was but he answered to-be-complained therefore
tibi est de arte ista, quam noveras. Quippe nescius,
for-you it-is about the-art that which you-knew since not-knowing
quae te impenderent humi, rimare ea, quae caeli
what you threatened on-the-ground you-search-out the-things which of-the-sky
sunt.' Ad haec magus: 'Equidem,' inquit, 'Alexander, laesum
are to this the-magus indeed he-says Alexander harmed
me letaliter sentio, sed profecto nulli mortalium contra
me mortally I-feel but surely to-none of-mortals against
fatum permissa est fuga.' Tum ille: 'Cur istaec inquis?'
fate allowed is flight then he why that you-say
Respondit magus: 'Olim quippe per hanc scientiam videram
answered the-magus once indeed through this knowledge I-had-seen
fatale mihi fore a filio interfectu iri. Ea igitur
fated for-me going-to-be by a-son killed to-be-going those-things then
praescita non effugi.' Et Alexander: 'Anne ego sum filius
foreknown not I-escaped and Alexander is-it-that I am son
tuus?' Ita esse confitetur et fabulae reliquam subserit seriem,
your so to-be he-confesses and of-the-story the-rest subjoins the-series

tum Aegypti fugam tum ingressum ad Olympiadam, et
both of-Egypt the-flight and the-entry to Olympias and
tractatum et amorem, et quanam arte potitus uxore sit
the-handling and the-love and by-what art he-possessed the-wife he-has
ad similitudinem dei. Et in his dictis animam exaestuat.
in the-likeness of-a-god and in these words his-soul he-breathes-out
Hinc Alexander comperto eo, quod pater sibi, quem
hence Alexander with-learned that that his-father to-him whom
interfecerat, fuit, metuit eum in illo defosso insepultum
he-had-killed had-been feared him in that ditch unburied
et praedam bestiis derelinqui. Nam et nox erat et secreta,
and as-prey to-beasts to-be-left for both night it-was and secret
quo venerant. Naturali ergo monitus adfectu superponit
where they-had-come by-natural then prompted affection he-places
hominem humeris quam valentissime et revectat in
the-man on-his-shoulders as most-strongly and carries-him-back into
regiam. Ut autem reversus ad matrem est, cuncta narrat,
the-palace when but returned to his-mother has all-things he-tells
quae sibi supremo conloquio pater dixerat. Hoc demirata
which to-him in-the-last conversation his-father had-said this wondered-at
est mulier et secus de se quam voluerat iudicavit,
has the-woman and otherwise about herself than she-had-wished judged
quod tot annis vanis scilicet artibus lusa probram rem
because for-so-many years by-vain namely arts deceived a-shameful thing
fecerat. Nihilominus et sepelit cum decore Nectanabum,
she-had-done nonetheless both she-buries with honor Nectanabus
et ut patri filius, sepulchrum erigit operosissimum.
and as for-a-father the-son a-tomb erects most-elaborate
Fuitque inde praenosse, quid huic genito ad vitae clausulam
and-it-was thence to-foreknow what to-this offspring at of-life the-close
debueretur: cum Nectanabus Aegypto oriundus in Macedonia
was-due since Nectanabus from-Egypt sprung in Macedonia

sit sepultus, tantumdemque spatii e diverso Alexander,
had been-buried and-as-much of-space from the-opposite-side Alexander
rex Macedoniae, morte sua foret Aegypto traditurus.
king of-Macedonia by-death his was to-Egypt going-to-hand-over
9 Enim Philippus Delphos misit super regni suique sollicitus
for Philip to-Delphi sent about his-kingdom and-his anxious
successore responsumque accepit in hunc modum: 'O
successor and-a-reply received in this manner o
Philippe, is demum tuis omnique orbe potietur et
Philip he at-last of-your-things and-of-the-whole world will-possess and
hasta omnia subiugabit, quicunque Bucephalam equum
with-the-spear all-things will-subdue whoever Bucephalas the-horse
insiliens medium Pellae transierit.' Vocabatur enim
leaping-on through-the-middle of-Pella shall-have-crossed was-called for
equus, quem supra diximus, illo nomine, non eo modo
the-horse whom above we-spoke-of by-that name not for-this only
quod corniculata fronte terribilis foret, sed quod inustio etiam
that with-horned brow terrible it-was but because a-brand also
fortuita quaedam eius coxae veluti taurini capitis imitamen
chance a-certain his on-the-hip like of-a-bull's head an-imitation
insederat. Sed hac sorte recepta rex opinionem fovebat
had-settled but with-this oracle received the-king the-notion cherished
praedici sibi Herculem iuniorem ex famula sibi natum.
to-be-foretold to-him a-Hercules younger from a-handmaid to-him born
At vero Alexander cum Aristotele iam tantum Milesio
but indeed Alexander with Aristotle now only the-Milesian
uteretur, forte praeceptoris istius ad puerorum ingenia
he-was-associating by-chance of-the-teacher that for of-the-boys the-wits
colligenda tale periculum exstiterat. Quippe cum plerique
to-be-gathered such a-trial had-arisen for since very-many
essent filii regum et optimatum nobiles, singillatim ab
were the-sons of-kings and of-aristocrats nobles one-by-one from

his sententias rimabatur, ecquid sibi quisque polliceretur,
them their-opinions he-probed whether to-him each would-promise
si modo ad regnum patri succederet. Aliisque opes,
if only to the-kingdom to-his-father he-should-succeed and-with-some wealth
aliis gratiam dignitatesque amplissimas verbis laxioribus
others favor and-dignities most-ample in-words looser
pollicentibus, ubi ad Alexandri sententiam ventum est, ut
promising when to of-Alexander the-opinion come it-was that
ipse, si foret quoque Philippi successor, super futuro
he-himself if he-were also of-Philip the-successor about the-future
profiteretur: 'Haud equidem mihi,' ait, 'ut a sapiente ista
should-profess not indeed to-me he-says as by a-wise-man this
haec sententia sederit. De futuris enim instabilibus et
this opinion should-sit about future-things for unstable and
incertis fixam dicere sponsionem, errantis est benignitatis et
uncertain a-fixed to-speak pledge of-erring is generosity and
flabilis, cum crastini ratum pignus nullus facile possederit.
of-windy since of-tomorrow a-ratified pledge no-one easily could-possess
Dabo tibi tunc, quod et facultas et tempus hortabitur.'
I-will-give you then what both means and time shall-urge
Probat Aristoteles benivolentiam circumspectam et 'Have,'
approves Aristotle the-kindness circumspect and hail
inquit, 'sane tu rex profecto mundane cum isto prudentiae
he-says truly you king indeed of-the-world with this of-prudence
tuae pignore!' Atque haec ei fuerat sententia de magistro.
your pledge and this to-him had-been the-opinion about his-master
At vero vulgo ut qui percitus et vi mentis
but indeed by-the-crowd as one-who excitable and in-force of-mind
calentior habebatur, quamvis eum Philippus iam sincerius
hotter was-held although him Philip now more-sincerely
amplecteretur. Videbat enim plenam indolem martiis desideriis
embraced he-saw for a-full nature for-martial desires

regalibusque; eo admordebatur solo, quod nihil de se
and-royal by-this he-was-stung only that nothing from himself
vultu et similitudine mutuaretur. Cum igitur pleraque ex
in-face and likeness he-borrowed when then very-many of
his, quae in studentem pater largius conferebat, ipse
these which on the-student his-father more-generously conferred he-himself
quoque liberalitate transscriberet, Zeuxidos cuiusdam, non
also with-liberality handed-on of-Zeuxis a-certain not
celebris illius ad pingendum, sed enim adseculae regalis, tales
the-famous that for painting but indeed an-attendant royal such
litterae deferuntur: 'Zeuxis Philippo et Olympiadi salutem
a-letter is-brought Zeuxis to-Philip and Olympias greeting
plurimam dicit. E re est scire vos ea, quae
very-much says from the-thing it-is to-know for-you those-things which
Alexandro destinatis, non illi ad frugi custodiam retineri,
for-Alexander you-assign not by-him for thrifty keeping to-be-retained
enim labi omnia cum facilitate donandi. Quare quod
for to-slip-away all-things with readiness of-giving therefore what
sat sit, aestimatote mihique mittite dispensandum.' Ad
enough be judge and-to-me send to-be-managed to
haec reges Aristoteli scribunt ita: 'Nuntiat Zeuxis is, qui
this the-sovereigns to-Aristotle write thus reports Zeuxis he who
sumptibus Alexandri est praefectus, ea quae ad eius usus
over-the-expenses of-Alexander is in-charge the-things which for his uses
largiamur, ab eodem facile dilabi, quia sit inconsideratior
we-bestow by the-same easily to-slip-away because he-is a-rather-thoughtless
dilargitor. Ergo tu missa susceperis atque ex sententia
lavisher therefore you the-things-sent may-take and from your-judgment
dispensabis.' Ad haec Aristoteles: 'Ratum quidem habeo,
you-will-manage to this Aristotle ratified indeed I-hold-it
mi rex, nostris litteris Alexandrum institutum nihil sese
my king by-our letters Alexander instructed nothing himself

nobisque indignius factitare, idque mox coram indole
and-to-us unworthily to-do and-this soon in-person with-nature
eius inspecta vestra quoque sententia confirmaverit; illi
his inspected your also opinion will-confirm for-him
scilicet in agendis rebus non aetatis sententia, sed doctrinae,
namely in doing things not of-age the-judgment but of-teaching
si vobis cordi est experiri, subficit consilium.' Ad haec
if to-you dear it-is to-try suffices counsel to this
reges scribunt rursus ad Zeuxim: 'Litteras tuas Aristoteli,
the-sovereigns write again to Zeuxis the-letter your to-Aristotle
quas super Alexandro feceras, intimavimus, quidve ad
which about Alexander you-had-made we-have-imparted and-what to
haec ille responderit, praesto est tibi. Igitur ex utraque
these-things he may-have-answered at-hand is for-you therefore from both
collige, quid facto opus arbitrere.' Id tamen scriptum cum
gather what of-doing need you-think this yet writing when
suspectasset Aristoteles, alitius in hunc modum Alexandro
he-had-suspected Aristotle more-deeply in this manner to-Alexander
refert: 'Scripsere mihi Philippus et Olympias, parentes tui,
reports have-written to-me Philip and Olympias parents your
ea quae tibi sumptui mitterent, inconsultius deperire.
the-things which to-you for-expense they-send rashly to-be-wasted
Neque accedo sententiae, quicquam te indignum nobis
nor do-I-assent to-the-opinion anything you unworthy of-us
ac parentibus sapere.' Ad haec puer: 'Scire te par est,
and of-your-parents to-know to this the-boy to-know you right it-is
mi magister, ea quidem, quae ad nos a parentibus
my master the-things indeed which to us from my-parents
destinantur, indigna esse illorum opibus et nomine, sed secus
are-assigned unworthy to-be of-their wealth and name but otherwise
tamen de institutione regali reges pariter ac parentes, quam
yet about upbringing royal kings equally and parents than

decorum fuerat, commoveri, si fortunam censeant frugalitate
fitting had-been to-be-moved if fortune they-assess by-thrift
populari.' Sunt etiam litterae utriusque parentis ad filium
plebeian there-are also letters of-both parents to their-son
ad hunc modum: 'Sumptus, tibi qui fortuna nostra digni
in this manner the-expenses to-you which of-fortune our worthy
mittuntur, ne prodegeris, fili, nec litterarum Aristotelis de
are-sent do-not squander son nor of-the-letter of-Aristotle about
te praeverteris testimonium. Enim frugi te esse parcimonia
you forestall the-testimony for thrifty you to-be by-frugality
comprobato.' His respondit Alexander: 'Equidem missorum
prove to-these answered Alexander indeed of-the-things-sent
a vobis, mi parentes, modum nomine vestro dignum non
by you my parents the-measure of-name your worthy not
confitebor. Expensam tamen eorum fieri pro necessitate
I-will-confess the-expense yet of-them to-be-made for the-necessity
regii nominis fateor. Neque vero de me magistri litterae
of-the-royal name I-admit nor indeed about me of-my-master the-letters
claudicabunt; eius praeceptis non dignum a me nihilum
will-limp his of-precepts not worthy by me nothing
fieri noscetis. Enim vos mallem neque adversus istaec
to-be-done you-will-know for you I-would-prefer neither against these-things
aures malis sermonibus reseravisse veritatemque hanc
your-ears to-malicious talk to-have-unlocked and-the-truth this
decentius convertisse in eos, qui id facere audent, et nostri
more-fittingly to-have-turned upon those who that to-do dare and of-us
curam regiam agere pro illa populari malitis.' Id
the-care royal to-conduct rather-than that plebeian you-should-prefer that
iam temporis decimum quartum annum Alexander adpellebat.
now of-time the-tenth fourth year Alexander was-reaching
Qui cum quadam die locum, quo clausus equus Bucephala
who when on-a-certain day the-place where shut-up the-horse Bucephalas

fuerat, praeteriret, conversus ad amicos hoc ait: 'O viri,
had-been he-was-passing turned to his-friends this says o men
hinnitusne aures meas an vero rugitus aliquis leoninus
a-neighing ears my or indeed a-roaring some lion's
offendit?' Ad haec Ptolomaeus, qui Soter postea appellatus
strikes to this Ptolemy who Soter afterward called
est: 'Immo vero hic ille est equus Bucephala, quem ob
was nay indeed this that is the-horse Bucephalas which for
vehementiam pariter et saevitudinem dentium hactenus rex
violence equally and savagery of-teeth hitherto the-king
claudi pater iussit.' Et inter haec rursus alius equi
to-be-shut-up your-father ordered and amid these-things again another of-the-horse
eiusdem hinnitus auditur, acutus quidem ille, sed nihil
same neigh is-heard sharp indeed that but nothing
increpans ad formidinem pristinam, enim mite aliquid et
threatening for terror former for gentle something and
mansuetum, prorsus ut diceres adloquia illa ad dominum
tame so that you-would-say speech that to its-master
esse morigera, non equi fremitum saevientis. Nam et pedes
to-be compliant not of-a-horse the-roar raging for both its-feet
priores extenderat et gesticulam mansuetudinis luserat et
front it-had-stretched and a-little-gesture of-gentleness it-had-played and
supplici quodam motu blanditus est. Quod ubi intuitus
with-a-suppliant certain movement fawned it-has which when seen
est Alexander, fuisse in illo antehac tam truculentum
has Alexander to-have-been in it formerly so savage
officium edendi homines demiratur. Denique custodibus
a-habit of-eating men he-wonders finally with-the-guards
evitatis claustrisque dimotis animal educit, iubamque eius
avoided and-with-the-bars moved-aside the-animal he-leads-out and-the-mane its
cum laeva adprehendisset, audacius nescias an
when with-the-left-hand he-had-seized more-boldly you-would-not-know whether

facilius, tergum quadrupedis insultat effrenemque eum, sed
more-easily the-back of-the-beast he-leaps-on and-unbridled it but
morigerum tamen imperiosis moribus aurigabundus hac
compliant yet to-his-commanding ways driving this-way
atque aliter Alexander circumducit. Quod cum admirationi
and another-way Alexander leads-around which when for-wonder
visentibus foret, ex cursu quidam rem periculi huius
to-the-onlookers it-was from the-race a-certain-man the-thing of-danger this
nuntiat Philippo. Sed ad memoriam ille revocans monitus
reports to-Philip but to memory he recalling the-warning
oraculi occurrit ad puerum et salutat inde ut orbis
of-the-oracle runs to the-boy and greets-him thereupon as of-the-world
integri dominum. Quare laetior quidem spe filii pater
whole the-lord therefore gladder indeed with-hope of-his-son the-father
iam Philippus tunc agebat.
now Philip then was-living

III · OLYMPIA, PHILIP'S WEDDING, AND PHILIP'S DEATH

Alexander wins the chariot race at Olympia over the insolent Nicolaus. He returns to find Philip marrying Cleopatra, wounds the jester Lysias with a cup, quarrels with his father, and reconciles his parents. He sends Darius's tribute-collectors away. Pausanias, in love with Olympias, wounds Philip at the theater and tries to carry her off; Alexander puts his sword in the dying Philip's hand to kill Pausanias. As king, he calls the Macedonians and Greeks to war on Persia.

10 Sed Alexander quintum et decimum ingressus annum
but Alexander the-fifth and tenth having-entered year
explorato temporis opportuno, cum veniam a paternis auribus
with-explored of-time the-opportunity when leave from his-father's ears
praepignerato osculo impetrasset, precario petit, ut sibi
with-pledged kiss he-had-obtained by-entreaty he-asks that to-him

Pisas apud Olympia certaturo iter largiretur. Et 'Quid,'
to-Pisa at Olympia going-to-compete a-journey he-should-grant and what
inquit, 'laboris aut artis genus est, quod tibi ad certamina
he-says of-labor or of-art kind is-it which for-you for the-contests
praeparatur? Neque enim reor non regii te nominis
is-being-prepared nor for do-I-think not of-royal you name
memorem hanc gloriam cupivisse.' Tum ille quidem, quae
mindful this glory to-have-desired then he indeed what-things
sint parum liberalia munera, refutat ac negat, pugillatus
are too-little gentlemanly the-tasks rejects and denies that-boxing
scilicet atque luctatus quaeve de cestibus sive cursu plebeculam
namely and wrestling or-what with gauntlets or running the-common-folk
iuvent. 'Enimvero,' inquit, 'quadrigis ut certem.' Sedet
delight but-indeed he-says with-the-four-horse-team that I-compete sits-well
patri professio adolescentis et 'Equos,' ait, 'ad hosce
with-his-father the-declaration of-the-youth and horses he-says for these
tibi usus iubebo protinus deductu iri, de quibus tibi ad
your uses I-will-order at-once brought to-be-going of which for-you to
votum proclivitas fiat; neque enim improbo huiusce desiderii
your-wish the-choice may-be nor for do-I-disapprove of-this desire
gloriam.' Tunc filius: 'Gratiam equidem tibi, pater, huiusce
the-glory then the-son thanks indeed to-you father for-this
muneris facio; habeo quippe equos, quos ex aetatula iam
gift I-render I-have for horses which from a-little-age already
recenti ad haec mihi studiosius praeparavi.' Haec quoque
fresh for this for-myself more-zealously I-prepared this also
professio Philippum iuvat laudatumque studii filium facile
declaration Philip pleases and-praised for-his-zeal his-son easily
dimittit, cum primum sibi deduci ad navigia currus et
he-dismisses when first for-him to-be-brought to the-ships the-chariots and

arma iussisset. Igitur escensa navi comitatusque Hephaestione
arms he-had-ordered therefore with-boarded ship and-accompanied by-Hephaestion
amico secunda admodum tempestate Elim adpellitur.
his-friend in-favorable very weather at-Elis he-lands
11 Quo in loco cum equorum curam famulis mandavisset atque
which in place when of-the-horses the-care to-his-servants he-had-entrusted and
ipse visum loca deambulatumque procederet, obviat forte
he-himself to-see the-places and-to-walk-about went-forth meets by-chance
Nicolao cuidam, adolescenti regulo ex Acernania. Celsius
Nicolaus a-certain youth a-princeling from Acarnania loftier
quidem illo et sublimius se ferente, quippe qui
indeed with-that-one and more-haughtily himself bearing since who
duplici eoque perflabili deorum adminiculo levaretur, opulentia
by-double and-that windy of-the-gods with-the-aid was-buoyed by-wealth
scilicet vel fortuna, habebat tamen Nicolaus ipse, quod sibi
namely and fortune he-had yet Nicolaus himself what to-himself
de suis viribus polliceretur. Nihilominus salutando Alexandro
from his strength he-could-promise nonetheless in-greeting Alexander
praestitit se priorem, nesciens etiam tunc itus
he-showed himself first not-knowing even then of-the-journey
illius causas et certaminis studium. Fuit tamen non sine
that the-causes and of-the-contest the-zeal was yet not without
contumelia salutatio; nam et 'Have,' inquit, 'o puer', nec
insult the-greeting for both hail he-says o boy nor
ille non sedulo resalutat. Tunc secundo Nicolaus 'Et quem,'
he not carefully greets-back then a-second-time Nicolaus and whom
inquit, 'arbitrare te tam incuriosius salutasse? Quippe ego
he-says do-you-think you so carelessly to-have-greeted for I
Nicolaus ille sum rex Acarnanum.' Alexander refert: 'Istam
Nicolaus that am king of-the-Acarnanians Alexander replies this
adrogantiam non probo. Quid enim te iuvabit imperii vana
arrogance not I-approve what for you will-it-help of-command vain

iactatio de secundis crastinis fluctuantem? Non enim
boasting about favorable tomorrow's-things wavering not for
vides, ut stare fortuna hominum nesciat, utque in his
do-you-see how to-stand the-fortune of-men knows-not and-how in these
fragilior habeatur, quicumque illa dea victitant nixabundi?'
more-fragile is-held whoever by-that goddess live leaning
Ad haec Nicolaus: 'Haec quidem,' inquit, 'non invenuste;
to this Nicolaus this indeed he-says not without-grace
enimvero velim scire, cur adsis; nam te Philippi filium
but-indeed I-should-wish to-know why you-are-here for you of-Philip the-son
fama praelocuta est.' Fatetur Alexander et sese ad certamina
rumor foretold has confesses Alexander and himself for the-contests
quadrigarum studio coronae venisse. Tum Nicolaus felle
of-four-horse-teams in-zeal for-the-crown to-have-come then Nicolaus with-gall
de nimia indignatione subfusus despectansque eius aetatulam
from excessive indignation suffused and-despising his little-age
neque vim animi considerans consputum adolescentulum
nor the-force of-his-spirit considering spat-on the-youth
et maledictis increpitum dereliquit. At vero Alexander, qui
and with-abuse reviled left but indeed Alexander who
omnium disciplinarum continentiam mage ostentare didicisset,
of-all disciplines the-restraint rather to-display had-learned
abstersit clementer sputamenta, iniuriam quin etiam adridens
wiped-off gently the-spittle the-insult nay even smiling
ait: 'Iuro equidem tibi, Nicolae,' inquit, 'patris mei pariter
says I-swear indeed to-you Nicolaus he-says of-father my equally
ac matris maiestatem, ut te et in hoc praesenti certamine
and of-mother by-the-majesty that you both in this present contest
et Acernaniae telo superabo.' Hinc soluta est fabulatio.
and of-Acarnania with-the-spear I-will-overcome thence broken-off was the-talk

12 Non multo autem post cum dies certaminis advenisset
not much but later when the-day of-the-contest had-come
aurigandique professio studio excitaretur, novem quidem
and-of-charioteering the-profession with-zeal was-roused nine indeed
omnes, sed regii iuvenes competebant quattuor, quorum sortito
all but royal youths were-competing four of-whom by-lot
primus Nicolaus adstitit carcere, secundus Xanthias, tertius
first Nicolaus stood at-the-barrier second Xanthias third
Cimon, quartus Clitomachus, Balcheus quintus, Aristippus
Cimon fourth Clitomachus Balcheus fifth Aristippus
vero sexto in loco, Pierus septimo, Alcan octavo, Alexander
but sixth in place Pierus seventh Alcan eighth Alexander
post summo nono. Hi cum ex more artis atque certaminis
after at-the-end ninth these when by custom of-art and of-contest
institissent curribus, lituoque signum sollemniter
they-had-taken-their-stand on-the-chariots and-with-the-trumpet the-signal solemnly
increpasset, cuncti una prosiliunt. Enimvero Alexander erat
had-blared all at-once leap-forth but-indeed Alexander was
quartus a primo, Nicolao propius insequente et spe
fourth from the-first with-Nicolaus closely following both in-hope
transitus et infesto consilio, ut si praetervehi queat, non
of-passing and with-hostile plan that if to-pass-by he-could not
absque periculo Alexandri victoriae consulturus. Id quidem
without danger of-Alexander to-the-victory going-to-provide this indeed
illum non satis fugerat. Nam et causa odii commonebat,
him not enough had-escaped for both the-cause of-hatred reminded-him
quod bello Nicolai patrem Philippus oppressisset. Igitur astu
that in-war of-Nicolaus the-father Philip had-crushed therefore with-craft
se dabat Alexander a Nicolao praeteriri. Quippe iam
himself let Alexander by Nicolaus be-passed for already
ceteri, qui cursu praevenerant, alius alio casu prolapsi,
the-others who in-the-race had-led one by-another by-mishap fallen

primam spem potiundae palmae Nicolao dabant. Qui cum
the-first hope of-gaining the-palm to-Nicolaus gave who when
finem certaminis iam sperasset, infert sese Alexander voto
the-end of-the-contest already he-had-hoped thrusts himself Alexander in-the-wish
praeterlabendi. Ad hunc conatum equis Nicolai convertentibus
of-slipping-past at this attempt with-horses of-Nicolaus turning
titubans dexter e mediis cernuantique persimilis
stumbling the-right-hand-horse from the-midst and-to-one-falling-headlong very-like
implicatos reliquos secum moratur. Enim tunc Alexander
the-entangled rest with-itself detains for then Alexander
subiens praeteracto prolapsoque Nicolao supervectus rem belli
moving-up with-passed and-fallen Nicolaus riding-over the-matter of-war
sub stadio transegit. Exin victor corona redimitus escenso
under the-stadium settled then victor with-a-crown wreathed with-climbed
templo cum Iovem Olympium salutaret, aestimatione rei
the-temple when Jupiter Olympian he-saluted by-reckoning of-the-thing
gestae aut instinctu dei sacerdotem ferunt sic fortunam
done or by-prompting of-the-god the-priest they-say thus the-fortune
victoriae interpretatum, ut quod primo certamine Nicolaum
of-the-victory interpreted that because in-the-first contest Nicolaus
vicisset, esset sibi coniecturae, perfacile multos eum
he-had-conquered it-would-be for-him of-conjecture very-easy many him
populos vinciturum universitatisque dominio potiturum.
peoples going-to-conquer and-of-the-universe the-lordship going-to-possess
Hisce ergo omine atque laetitia ovans repatriat Macedoniam. 13
by-this then omen and joy exulting he-returns-home to-Macedonia
Sed offendit forte ex licentia regia spreto consortio
but he-comes-upon by-chance from royal license with-spurned the-partnership
Olympiadis Philippum tunc in Cleopatrae nuptias demutantem,
of-Olympias Philip then into of-Cleopatra a-marriage changing
Attali cuiusdam non ignobilis filiae. Die igitur nuptiarum
of-Attalus a-certain not ignoble the-daughter on-the-day then of-the-wedding

inruens regis triclinium coronatus 'Sume,' inquit, 'hunc
rushing-into of-the-king the-dining-room crowned take he-says this
primum, o pater, laboris mei fructum,' et una coronam
first o father of-labor my the-fruit and at-once the-crown
in caput patris transtulit. Tum adiecit: 'Gaudeo quidem,
onto the-head of-his-father he-transferred then he-added I-rejoice indeed
quod in praesenti laetamini; et ego cum matrem aliis
that at the-present you-are-glad and I when my-mother to-other
regalibus nuptiis coniugabo, vos quoque participabo convivio'
royal nuptials I-shall-join you also I-will-share-in the-banquet
et una cum dictis adversum Philippum discumbit. Sed
and together with words opposite Philip he-reclines but
rex asperatus ad dictum intus in animo saeviebat. Aderat
the-king exasperated at the-word within in his-mind raged was-present
tunc inter multas regalesque delicias Lysias quidam risui
then among many and-royal delights Lysias a-certain for-laughter
excitando quam facetissimus, qui cum in gratia regis
to-be-raised most witty who when for the-favor of-the-king
admordere adolescentulum vellet, 'Potiare,' inquit, 'o rex,
to-nip the-youth he-wished may-you-possess he-says o king
Cleopatrae, potiare, e qua tibi spero privatos filios atque
Cleopatra may-you-possess from whom to-you I-hope private sons and
incommunicatos alteri proventuros eosque, qui vultibus
unshared with-another going-to-come-forth and-them who to-features
tuis et felici respondeant semini.' Haec ubi dicta sunt,
your and to-happy may-answer seed these-things when said were
inritatior iuvenis protinus poculum, quod sibi prae manu erat,
more-provoked the-youth at-once the-cup which to-him at hand was
in Lysiam iaculatur eumque vulnerat. Sed rex effervescente
at Lysias hurls and-him wounds but the-king with-boiling-over
iam irae professione prosiliens in Alexandrum labitur
now of-anger the-display leaping-up against Alexander slips

crureque laeso et vulnerato procumbit. Tum parum temperans
and-with-shin hurt and wounded falls-forward then too-little restraining
voci iuvenis: 'En,' inquit, 'ille qui Asiam Europamque subiecit,
his-voice the-youth lo he-says he who Asia and-Europe subdued
unius lectuli spatium sine periculo non emensus est!' Et
of-one little-couch the-space without danger not measured has and
cum dicto rapit gladium omnesque, qui forte sese veluti
with the-word he-snatches a-sword and-all who by-chance themselves as-if
ad comprehendendum inruerant, disicit, prorsus ut nihilum
for seizing-him had-rushed-in scatters so that nothing
de Centaurorum Lapitharumque convivio demutaret, aut
from of-the-Centaurs and-of-the-Lapiths the-banquet differed or
quod illi rei sit proximum, procos diceres cum ultore
what to-that thing be nearest the-suitors you-would-say with the-avenging
Ulixe decernere. Egressus igitur concedit ad matrem.
Ulysses to-be-fighting having-gone-out then he-withdraws to his-mother
Enim qui aderant Philippum non absque discrimine 14
for those-who were-present Philip not without risk
vulneratum cubiculo invehunt lectoque deponunt. Sed is cum
wounded to-the-bedroom carry and-on-the-bed lay-down but he when
post complusculos dies iam bonam spem curationi promitteret,
after a-good-many days now good hope for-cure promised
ingreditur amica sollicitudine tunc Alexander adsidensque
enters with-friendly concern then Alexander and-sitting-by
lectulo 'Quaeso,' inquit, 'o Philippe, — adhuc enim te hoc
the-little-bed I-beg he-says o Philip still for you by-this
et communi nomine adloquar, ut amicus, donicum patris
also common name I-will-address as a-friend until of-a-father
in te animum recognovero — quid tandem hoc rei
toward you the-mind I-recognize what at-last this of-the-matter
est, quod te avertit a coniuge? Aveo enim scire, iudex
is that you has-turned-away from your-wife I-long for to-know as-judge

et ultor futurus in matrem, si culpa meruit, quod evenerat.
and avenger going-to-be against my-mother if her-guilt deserved what had-happened
Huc adde, si placet, probesne illam Lysiae in Alexandrum
to-this add if it-pleases do-you-approve that of-Lysias against Alexander
petulantiam, probesne etiam patris in filium truculentiam.
petulance do-you-approve also of-a-father against his-son the-savagery
Quid enim uterque commeruimus a patre et marito?
what for each-of-us deserved from a-father and husband
Abiecta Olympias coniux et Alexander filius incusatus. Quin
cast-off Olympias the-wife and Alexander the-son accused nay
ergo surge, et confirmato corpusculo animum etiam labentem
then rise and with-strengthened little-body your-mind also slipping
una curaveris, adeo saucium fatalibus forsitan temptamentis.
at-once you-will-cure so wounded by-fateful perhaps trials
At ego tibi Olympiadam tuam una in gratiam atque in
but I to-you Olympias your-own at-once into favor and into
cubiculum iam deducam. Geret enim morem profecto
your-bedroom now will-lead she-will-humor for the-wish surely
Alexandro filio, cuius tu pater, ut video, esse fastidis.'
to-Alexander her-son of-whom you the-father as I-see to-be disdain
15 His dictis transit ad matrem Philippo iam inter pudorem
with-these said he-passes to his-mother with-Philip now between shame
poenitentiamque distento et ad eam 'Ne,' inquit, 'quaeso,
and-repentance torn and to her not he-says I-beg
ne moveare, mi mater, super hisce, quae in te egerit
do-not be-moved my mother about these-things which against you has-done
rex maritus. Etenim ipsa quamvis clam habeas, quid
the-king your-husband for you-yourself although secretly you-hold what
commerueris, age tamen morem conscientiae tuae, cuius
you-have-deserved act yet to-the-humor of-conscience your of-which
memet testem habes, qui hanc tibi concordiam suadeo.
me-myself witness you-have who this to-you concord urge

Quaeso remees ad coniugem, et redde te marito
I-beg you-return to your-husband and render yourself to-your-husband
morigeram.' Cedit auctoritati suadentis filii Olympias et
compliant she-yields to-the-authority of-her-persuading son Olympias and
duce tali revenit ad maritum. Tum Alexander: 'En tibi,
with-guide such returns to her-husband then Alexander lo to-you
pater, Olympias tua; iam enim te paterno nomine usurpabo,
father Olympias your now for you by-a-father's name I-will-call
cuius adeo libens fueris auditor. Igitur et precator ad
of-whom so willing you-were a-listener therefore also an-intercessor to
eam fui, et remittit tibi meritum tuum abolitione omnis
her I-was and she-remits to-you desert your with-abolition of-all
iniuriae. Agite igitur, quaeso, post iram integrationem
injury act then I-beg after anger a-restoration
coniugalis adfectus. Nec sit pudendum, si filius sim
of-conjugal affection nor let-it-be shameful if a-son I-be
parentibus copulator.' His dictis impetrat, quod laborat,
for-my-parents a-joiner with-these said he-obtains what he-labors-for
idque ei largiter apud omnes patriae proceres bono
and-this to-him abundantly among all of-the-country the-leaders to-good
admodum testimonio fuit. Placet denique Lysiae nomen
very testimony was it-is-resolved finally of-Lysias the-name
coniugalibus ritibus in perpetuum aboleri, quod appellatio
from-conjugal rites for ever to-be-abolished because name
illa solutioni coepti cum Cleopatra coniugii conivisset.
that to-the-dissolution of-the-begun with Cleopatra marriage had-winked
At his ferme diebus, quibus haec acta videbantur, 16
but in-these about days in-which these-things done were-seen
descivisse obsequio Mothona civitas nuntiabatur. Ad
to-have-defected from-allegiance Mothone the-city was-reported against
quam animo Philippus incitatus, cum adhuc viribus corporis
which in-mind Philip roused when still in-strength of-body

deficeretur, optimum ratus ultionem non distulisse, numerum
he-was-failing best thinking vengeance not to-have-put-off the-number
qui forte adesset militum ducere Alexandrum iubet, idque
which by-chance was-present of-soldiers to-lead Alexander orders and-this
adolescens properanter exsequitur diligenterque; subactam enim
the-youth hastily carries-out and-carefully subdued for
populatamque ad vindictae ostentationem raptim Mothonam
and-ravaged for of-vengeance display swiftly Mothone
reversus adnuntiat. Sed enim cum illo reditu de
having-returned he-announces but indeed when with-that return from
Mothona ingressus ad patrem foret, videt ibi adsistentes
Mothone come to his-father he-was he-sees there standing-by
habitu barbaro viros percunctansque agnoscit Persae Darii
in-dress barbarian men and-inquiring recognizes the-Persian of-Darius
satrapas; causam tamen adventus esse, quod ex more
satraps the-cause yet of-their-coming to-be that by custom
regi petitum pecunias a Philippo venissent, pretium
for-the-king to-seek moneys from Philip they-had-come the-price
scilicet aquae atque terrae; his enim nominibus subiectos
namely of-water and of-earth by-these for names their-subjects
obsequi sibi Persae deposcunt. Miratus igitur Alexander
to-obey them the-Persians demand wondering then Alexander
et petendi morem et titulum: 'Haeccine,' inquit, 'elementa
both of-seeking the-custom and the-title these he-says elements
Persae mortalibus venditant, quae cunctis deus in commune
the-Persians to-mortals sell which to-all god in common
largitus est?' Dolebat ergo altiusque adolescentuli vim
bestowed has he-grieved therefore and-more-deeply of-the-youth the-spirit
carpebat, quod viri Graeci nominis ac dignitatis vectigales
it-gnawed that men of-Greek name and dignity tributaries
barbaris fierent, quae res esset pendentibus iugiter ad
to-barbarians should-become which thing would-be to-those-paying constantly toward

magisterium servitutis. Tum igitur pauculum barbaris
the-mastery of-slavery then therefore a-little with-the-barbarians
indidem separatis ferre a se mandata ad Darium iubet:
thence separated to-carry from him commands to Darius he-orders
haec sibi Alexandrum nuntiare vel dicere: boni consuleret et
this to-him Alexander to-report or to-say good he-should-take-it and
ab hac petendi consuetudine temperaret; quippe quem ipse
from this of-seeking custom refrain since which he-himself
morem petendis pecuniis indixisset, hunc a se protinus
the-custom of-seeking moneys had-imposed this from him at-once
exactum iri, unaque cum his, quae ante dispensa sint,
exacted to-be-going and-together with these-things which before paid were
propria quoque, quae sint Persis, Alexandrum petiturum.
his-own also which are of-the-Persians Alexander going-to-seek
Cum his dictis exigit homines proficisci ne litterarum
with these words he-drives the-men to-depart not of-a-letter
quidem regem responsione dignatus. Ad hanc animi eius
even the-king with-a-reply deigning at this of-spirit his
magnificentiam Philippus erigebatur, quod adeo confidentem et
magnificence Philip was-raised-up that so confident and
intrepidum eum naturae suae bona adserere intueretur.
fearless him of-nature his the-good-qualities claim he-saw
Igitur cum vicina rursus civitas de obsequio vacillaret,
therefore when a-neighboring again city in its-allegiance wavered
datur Alexandro expeditio. Pergitque, quo iussum est.
is-given to-Alexander the-campaign and-he-proceeds where ordered he-was
Enimvero interea Pausanias quidam nomine, cum divitiis 17
but-indeed meanwhile Pausanias a-certain by-name both with-riches
adfluens tum opibus potens, ex oppido Thessalonicae nobilis,
abounding and with-resources powerful from the-town of-Thessalonica a-noble
in Olympiadis desiderium amoremque animo prolapsus est. Qui
into of-Olympias longing and-love in-mind slipped has who

cum per internuntios adtemptasset, ecquid mulier consentiret
when through go-betweens he-had-tried whether the-woman would-consent
deserto Philippo ad sese transnubere, neque id ei ex
with-deserted Philip to himself to-remarry nor this for-him to
sententia provenisset, comperiens filium Philippi, cuius adeo
his-wish had-turned-out finding the-son of-Philip whose so
formidolosum in omnes adcolas erat nomen, peregre profectum
dreadful to all neighbors was the-name abroad gone
certamenque thymelae tunc agi a Philippo praesidente,
and-a-contest of-the-stage then to-be-held by Philip presiding
repente satellitio stipatus strictis gladiis theatrum inruit
suddenly by-a-bodyguard surrounded with-drawn swords the-theater he-rushed-into
Philippumque vulnere praevenit. Qui cum altius et letaliter
and-Philip with-a-wound forestalled who when deeply and mortally
ictus esset, veluti caedis absolutione securus ad regiam
struck he-was as-if of-the-slaughter by-the-completion secure to the-palace
Pausanias properato festinat, raptu scilicet Olympiadis
Pausanias hastening hurries for-the-abduction namely of-Olympias
desiderio consulturus. Igitur cum populus adhuc in theatro
his-desire going-to-serve therefore when the-people still in the-theater
turbaretur, Pausanias vero, ut diximus, raptum moliretur,
was-in-turmoil Pausanias but as we-said the-abduction was-attempting
forte rebus ex sententia perpetratis Alexander supervenerat
by-chance with-things to his-wish accomplished Alexander had-arrived
offenditque turbas et vim et vulnera Philippi. Quibus,
and-he-came-upon the-turmoil and the-violence and the-wounds of-Philip with-which
ut res erat, cognitis auctoremque earum rerum Pausaniam
as the-thing was learned and-the-author of-those things Pausanias
haec designasse, inruens regiam in ipso raptu matris
these to-have-planned rushing-into the-palace in the-very abduction of-his-mother
Pausaniae violentiam deprehendit, eumque cum iaculo
of-Pausanias the-violence he-catches and-him when with-a-javelin

destinaret tenereturque formidine matris vulnerandae,
he-was-aiming and-he-was-held-back by-fear of-his-mother to-be-wounded
Olympias sic adhortatur: 'Iaculare,' inquit, 'fili, iaculare! ne
Olympias thus urges throw she-says son throw do-not
dubites; habeo enim praesidem Ammonem et protectorem.'
hesitate I-have for as-protector Ammon and defender
Enimvero Alexander nullo impetu vinci, sed cum spirare 18
but-indeed Alexander by-no impulse to-be-conquered but when to-breathe
etiam tunc patrem Philippum comperisset, eundem advehi
still then his-father Philip he-had-learned him to-be-brought
illorsum iubet gladiumque, quem gerebat ipse, conlatum
thither he-orders and-the-sword which he-was-carrying himself placed
in dexteram patris misit, quo manu eius oppeteret
into the-right-hand of-his-father he-put that by-the-hand his should-meet-death
Pausanias, cui poenam quamque pro facto debuerat.
Pausanias to-whom the-penalty all for the-deed he-had-owed
Ergo iam moriens Philippus, 'Nihil nunc sane est,' inquit,
therefore now dying Philip nothing now truly is he-says
'quod me vitae finis aut huiuscemodi mors contristet;
which me of-life the-end or this-kind-of death should-sadden
ultus enim auctorem iniuriae libens oppetam. Atque
having-avenged for the-author of-the-injury gladly I-shall-meet-death and
ideo illaec nunc ab Ammone dicta reminiscor, quae tunc
therefore those now by Ammon sayings I-recall which then
matri tuae Olympiadi filium fore talem praegnanti
to-mother your Olympias a-son going-to-be such to-the-pregnant-woman
dixerant parituram, qui non eius modo adsertor esset, sed
they-had-said going-to-bear who not her only the-protector would-be but
vindex quoque patris foret futurus.' Et cum his dictis
avenger also of-his-father he-would-be going-to-be and with these words

moritur. Curatur igitur Philippo regia sepultura maerori
he-dies is-provided then for-Philip a-royal burial in-grief
eiusmodi omni Macedonia et reliqua Graecia conspirante.
of-this-kind with-all Macedonia and the-rest-of Greece uniting
19 Ubi igitur iam moti animi hominum illa rerum novitate
when then now stirred the-spirits of-men by-that of-things novelty
quietiores visi esse potuerunt, scandit Alexander paternae
quieter seemed to-be able climbs Alexander of-his-father's
statuae suggestum et propter illam adsistens in haec
statue the-platform and near it standing in these
verba contionatur: 'O Pellae proles et Macedonum vel
words harangues o of-Pella offspring and of-the-Macedonians and
Atheniensium Corinthique progenies ceterarumque Graeciae
of-the-Athenians and-of-Corinth progeny and-of-the-other of-Greece
gentium nomina, en tempus est, quisquis Alexandro sese
nations names lo the-time is whoever for-Alexander himself
cupiat militare, ut scilicet nunc nomen labori fateatur.
desires to-soldier that namely now his-name to-the-labor he-confess
In eos quippe militabimus barbaros, qui nos iampridem
against them for we-shall-soldier barbarians who us long-since
re, nunc vero spoliare pergunt etiam libertate. Igitur
in-property now but to-despoil proceed even of-freedom therefore
eamus ducere in servitutem Persas. Hi, quibus turpe
let-us-go to-lead into slavery the-Persians these to-whom shameful
erat servientibus non subvenire, enim nunc iam etiam
it-was to-the-enslaved not to-help for now already even
ipsi servimus.' Et haec quidem dicta praesentibus
we-ourselves are-slaves and these indeed sayings to-those-present
edicit. Tamen it eadem illa sententia et per singula
he-proclaims yet goes the-same that opinion also through each
oppida civitatesque, ut una cum classibus ii, qui
town and-city that together with the-fleets those who

armorum desiderio tenerentur, ad sese confluerent. Igitur
of-arms by-desire were-held to him should-flock therefore
ut si incentivum aliquod divina voce intonavisset, quo
as if an-incentive some with-divine voice had-thundered by-which
facilius ad eiusmodi opus studia hominum exardescerent, ita
more-easily for of-this-kind a-work the-zeal of-men might-blaze so
votum certamenque erat Macedonibus militandi. Alexander
the-wish and-eagerness was for-the-Macedonians to-soldier Alexander
aedibus reseratis, quibus condita patris arma militaria
with-the-temples unlocked in-which stored of-his-father the-arms military
visebantur, his quos inermes viderat dilargitur.
were-seen to-those whom unarmed he-had-seen distributes

IV · TO AMMON AND THE FOUNDING OF ALEXANDRIA

Alexander enlists old soldiers beside young and crosses through Thrace, Sicily, and Italy to Africa. At Ammon's shrine he asks the god to own him as son, and a dream bids him found a city by the Protean land. Paratonium is named for a slack bowshot. He lets his architects narrow Alexandria's plan and builds the sewers first. Birds eat the flour lines; a serpent killed in the works is honored, its tomb's snakes become household gods, and five hills fulfill the oracle.

Sed enim quisque armiger Philippi aetate provectior, diu iam 20
but indeed each armor-bearer of-Philip in-age more-advanced long now
militiae laborisque pertaesus, negabat se idoneum his
of-soldiering and-of-labor weary denied himself fit for-these
conatibus fore, aetate scilicet sua praesentibus refragante.
undertakings going-to-be with-age namely his to-the-present objecting
Ad haec Alexander 'Equidem,' inquit, 'veridicentiae isti testis
to this Alexander indeed he-says to-truthfulness that as-witness
accedo nec labores vestros, quos praetenditis, non adstipulor.
I-come nor labors your which you-plead not do-I-assent

Enimvero militiae vis eiusmodi res est, uti magisterio
but-indeed of-soldiering the-force of-such-a-kind a-thing is that by-the-mastery
callentium ordinata mox fiducia virium exsequenda sit.
of-the-experienced ordered soon by-confidence of-strength to-be-carried-out it-is
Peritia quippe veteris usus rudis manus audacia dirigenda
by-skill for of-old practice of-unskilled of-the-hand the-daring to-be-guided
est: quorum alterum vos, alterum iuventus existimatur. Nam
is of-which the-one you the-other youth is-reckoned for
ut ille iuventutis fervor ad audaciam promptior, ita inconsultior
as that of-youth fervor for daring readier so more-heedless
ad cautionem, ac sic eorum boni coeptus plerumque malos
for caution and so their good beginnings often bad
eventus reperiunt. At vero ista maturitas vestra etiam
outcomes find but indeed this ripeness your even
arduis quibusque felices exitus parit et desideratos
in-difficulties whatever happy exits produces and desired
eventus, quoniam perito consilio manum duci commodat
outcomes since to-skilled counsel the-hand to-the-leader it-lends
obsecuturam. Par est igitur, inquit, vos meo commilitio
going-to-obey fitting it-is therefore he-says you in-my comradeship
numerari, non ut ipsi bellorum urguentiam subire
to-be-numbered not that yourselves of-wars the-pressure to-undergo
cogamini, sed ut iunioribus manibus consilium vos fiatis.
you-be-forced but that for-younger hands counsel you become
Alterum quippe alterius egere quis dubitet? Cum, nisi per
one for of-the-other to-need who would-doubt since unless through
prudentiam vestram illorum titubantia sit directa, perfracto
prudence your their stumbling be directed with-broken
praesidio iuventutis in seniores periculum vadat. Contra
the-defense of-youth upon the-elders the-danger goes on-the-other
autem si recti per vos voto fruantur, vos quoque
but if rightly through you in-their-wish they-succeed you also

gloriae parte potiore celebremini.' His dictis eos quoque,
of-glory in-part greater may-be-celebrated with-these said them also
quos senium iam obsederat, in sententiam suam ducit.
whom old-age already had-besieged into opinion his he-leads
Connumeratis igitur vel veteri milite vel quos ipse recens 21
with-counted-together then either the-old soldiery or those-whom he-himself recently
scripserat, congregat Macedonas quinque et decem milia
had-enrolled he-gathers Macedonians five and ten thousand
pedites, auxiliaque diversa in octo milibus, equites vero indigenas
foot and-auxiliaries various in eight thousands horsemen but native
septingentos et duo milia, levis quoque armaturae Thracas
seven-hundred and two thousand of-light also armor Thracians
numero octingentos. Unde hoc numero cum veterano milite
in-number eight-hundred whence with-this number with the-veteran soldiery
congregato sexcenti quinquaginta quattuor ad septuaginta milia
gathered six-hundred fifty four to seventy thousand
militantium erant. Tunc viae sumptum a Philippi
of-fighting-men there-were then for-the-journey the-cost from of-Philip
thesauris conlatuque studentium rebus suis auri talenta
the-treasuries and-by-the-contribution of-the-eager from-goods their of-gold talents
sexaginta cum quadringentis quatuorque et decem millibus
sixty with four-hundred and-four and ten thousand
cogit. Classi ergo elaborata in Macedonia, tam longis quam
he-gathers with-a-fleet then built in Macedonia both with-long and
onerariis navibus, transit in Thraciam, quae sibi patris Philippi
with-cargo ships he-crosses into Thrace which to-him of-father Philip
virtute quaesita hereditarium studium deberet atque deferret.
by-the-valor acquired a-hereditary zeal owed and offered
Unde illic etiam rebus ad ordinem redactis, quod sibi 22
whence there also with-affairs to order reduced because to-him
ea gens studiosius obsequeretur, lectissimos quosque et
that nation more-zealously obeyed the-choicest all and

argenti talenta quadringenta viribus suis cum adiecisset,
of-silver talents four-hundred to-forces his when he-had-added
pergit ad Lycaoniam, cui nunc aetas recens nomen
he-proceeds to Lycaonia to-which now an-age recent the-name
Lucaniae dedit. Igitur eius loci magistratibus ad amicitiam
of-Lucania has-given therefore of-that place with-the-magistrates into friendship
communi sacrificio foederatis transmittit protinus ad Siciliam
by-common sacrifice allied he-crosses at-once to Sicily
atque ibi, si qua forte ab obsequio refragarentur oppida,
and there if any by-chance from allegiance resisted the-towns
recepit; exinque Italiam transiens legatione pariter et honore
he-took-back and-thence Italy crossing an-embassy equally and honor
potitur Romanorum. Per Aemilium quippe tunc consulem
obtains of-the-Romans through Aemilius for then consul
corona ei auri pondo centum, insignita etiam margaritis,
a-crown to-him of-gold by-weight a-hundred adorned also with-pearls
honoraria datur ad argumentum amicitiae perpetuo post
honorary is-given for proof of-a-friendship perpetually afterward
futurae; idque Alexandro magnae gratiae fuit amicitiamque
to-be and-this to-Alexander of-great favor was and-the-friendship
amplectitur et verbis liberalibus Aemilium honoratum
he-embraces and with-words generous Aemilius honored
remittit. Addunt tamen Romani et militum duo milia
sends-back they-add yet the-Romans also of-soldiers two thousand
et argenti talenta quadringenta eoque amplius fore
and of-silver talents four-hundred and-that more going-to-be
daturos sese respondent, ni sibi bellum adversus
going-to-give themselves they-answer were-it-not-that for-them a-war against
Carthaginienses intentissimum agitaretur. Indidem igitur
the-Carthaginians most-intense were-being-waged from-there then
Tyrrheno transmisso cum Africam quoque adpulisset
with-the-Tyrrhenian crossed when Africa also he-had-reached

Alexander, eius gentis sibi magistratus obviantes precario
Alexander of-that nation for-him the-magistrates meeting suppliantly
quaesunt, uti a se vim Romani exercitus amoliretur.
ask that from them the-force of-the-Roman army he-would-remove
Sed haec dicta non modo ad favorem regis animum non
but these words not only to the-favor of-the-king the-mind not
convertunt, verum ignaviae eos increpitos tali responsione
turn but of-cowardice them upbraided with-such an-answer
dimittit: quod boni Carthago consuleret, si aut melior
he-dismisses that good Carthage should-take if either better
hostibus foret aut potioribus praecepta dependeret.
than-her-enemies she-were or on-the-stronger the-precepts should-depend
Hinc igitur pergens paucis admodum comitatus omnem 23
hence then proceeding with-a-few very accompanied the-whole
Libyam peragrat. Itaque ad Ammona, qui loco deserto
Libya he-traverses and-so to Ammon who in-a-place desert
Aegypti celebratur, ipse contendit; enimvero exercitus
of-Egypt is-worshiped he-himself hastens but-indeed of-the-army
multitudinem navibus superpositam Pharum destinat. Ipse
the-multitude on-ships placed to-Pharos he-directs he-himself
ergo Ammona veneratus operatusque largioribus ibidem
then Ammon having-worshiped and-having-performed with-more-generous there
sacrificiis praesidium sibi operis et coeptorum veluti
sacrifices protection for-himself of-the-work and of-the-undertakings as-if
a deo patre deposcit, quippe eius fabulae tenax, quod
from the-god his-father he-demands for of-that tale holding-fast that
huiusce dei cum matre per somnium fuerit coniugatio.
of-this god with his-mother through a-dream had-been the-union
His denique verbis deum convenit: ‘O pater Ammon,’
with-these finally words the-god he-addresses o father Ammon
inquit, ‘si quid materni seminis est verum, eaque mater
he-says if anything of-the-maternal seed is true and-that mother

conceptus nostri ex te principium est sortita, quaeso uti
of-conception our from you the-beginning has obtained I-beg that
istud adstipulere praesenti meque ut filium praestes.' Igitur
this you-affirm present and-me as your-son you-show therefore
doctus evidentibus monitis non absque cura sui esse numen
taught by-evident warnings not without care of-him to-be deity
illud, et templum deo operosius et augustius fabricatur
that also a-temple to-the-god more-elaborately and more-augustly he-builds
et ad prodendam militibus confidentiam Patri Ammoni id
and for imparting to-the-soldiers confidence to-father Ammon this
se fecisse inscriptione testatur. Tum responsum etiam
himself to-have-done by-an-inscription he-attests then an-answer also
quaesiit a deo, ecquid sibi monumentum imperii sui
he-sought from the-god whether for-him a-monument of-empire his
aliquotiens instaurare fas esset. Animo quippe conceperat
on-some-occasion to-establish lawful were in-mind for he-had-conceived
urbis quam maximae conditum. Ergo per somnium sic
of-a-city as greatest the-founding therefore through a-dream thus
eiusdem dei adloquio fruitur:
of-the-same god the-address he-enjoys

Haec tibi, rex, Phoebus lunatis cornibus edo:
this to-you king Phoebus with-crescent horns I-declare
nomen si pergis aevo celebrare perenni,
your-name if you-go-on through-the-age to-celebrate everlasting
urbs tibi condenda est, qua stat Proteia tellus,
a-city by-you to-be-founded is where stands the-Protean land
praesidet et numen cui Dite potentius ipso,
presides and a-deity to-whom than-Dis more-powerful himself
vertice quinqueiugo rerum secreta gubernans.
with-summit five-yoked of-things the-secrets governing

Ad haec doctus Alexander tali responso omni diligentia
by this taught Alexander with-such an-answer with-all diligence
rimabatur, quam Proteiam insulam deus vellet quidve illi
searched which Protean island the-god meant or-what to-it
numinis praesideret. Quae etiam tunc animo volutans peractis
of-deity presided which also then in-mind turning with-performed
rite sacrificiis indidem proficiscitur. Multo denique itineris
duly sacrifices from-there he-sets-out with-much finally of-the-journey
exanclato apud vicum Astrata fessum commilitium refecit.
toiled-through at the-village Astrata the-tired fellowship he-refreshed
Ipse autem rex cum forte in agro, ut adsolet, spatiaretur,
he-himself but the-king when by-chance in the-field as is-usual he-was-walking
cervam intuitus pastui occupatam unum ex his, qui destinandis
a-hind seeing at-grazing busy one of those who in-aiming
sagittis sollertior habebatur, iaculari bestiam iubet. Qui cum
arrows more-skilled was-held to-shoot the-beast orders who when
rem non ex opinione praeiudicata fecisset leviusque ictum
the-thing not from expectation preconceived he-had-done and-lightly struck
animal evasisset, exclamasse Alexander fertur Graeco scilicet
the-animal had-escaped to-have-exclaimed Alexander is-said in-Greek namely
verbo, quod remissior arcus intentio sagittam imbecillius
word that the-slacker of-the-bow the-tension the-arrow too-weakly
exegisset, para tonon istud factum videri. Ex eoque dictum
had-driven off tension that deed to-be-seen from and-that saying
Paratonium; etiam post frequentatae urbi nomen idem datum.
Paratonium also afterward to-the-thronged city the-name same given
Hinc porro ad locum, qui vulgo Taposiris diceretur, 24
hence further to the-place which commonly Taposiris was-called
adpulit. Inquirens tamen nominis causam accipit ab indigenis
he-came inquiring yet of-the-name the-cause he-learns from the-natives
sepulchrum Osiridos illic esse, quod a veteri compositione
the-tomb of-Osiris there to-be which from the-old compound

corruptum Taposiridus dictus esset. Operatus igitur illicce
corrupted Taposiris called was having-sacrificed then there
deo ad id loci transit, quem extensum quidem magni
to-the-god to that of-place he-crosses which extended indeed of-a-great
et uberis aequoris pulchritudine miratur, frequentem tamen
and rich plain in-beauty he-admires crowded yet
commanentium conventiculis. Sedecim quippe et instar urbium
of-inhabitants with-gatherings sixteen for and like cities
vicis decoriter admodum distinctis atque dispositis consistit,
villages handsomely very distinguished and arranged it-stands
quorum magnitudini pariter et pulchritudini honor et
to-whose size equally and beauty honor and
cura deferebatur. His sedecim sessibulis flumina quoque
care was-paid among-these sixteen seats rivers also
duodecim intererrabant, pariter omnia vergentia iuxtim in
twelve wandered equally all inclining side-by-side into
mare, sicuti nunc etiam ad memoriam veteris insulcationis
the-sea as now also to the-memory of-the-old furrowing
datur visere. Quippe quamvis congestu postea sint ad
it-is-given to-see for although by-filling afterward they-be to
aequoris uniti faciem exaequata, quisquis tamen ille ductus
of-a-level united the-surface leveled whatever yet that course
fluminis fuit, is nunc plateis apud Alexandriam tractus est;
of-a-river was it now with-streets in Alexandria drawn is
sed duo tantum ingressus fluminum reservati, ceteri nomina
but two only entrances of-the-rivers kept the-others names
partibus oppidi praestiterunt. Igitur omne spatium ab eo
to-the-parts of-the-town gave therefore all the-space from that
loco, cui Bendidium vetus nomen est, usque ad Hermopolim
place to-which Bendidium old name is up to Hermopolis
urbis eius ambitu occupatum est. Sed enim nomen hoc
of-city that by-the-circuit occupied is but indeed the-name this

longe secus, ac se veritas habet, in usu appellationis resedit;
far otherwise than itself truth holds in use of-naming has-settled
Hormu enim polis, non Hermopolis, dicta est, quod portuosius
of-mooring for city not Hermopolis called it-is because more-harbor-like
illic alveus Nili latiusque in latera descendens fidam
there the-channel of-the-Nile and-more-widely to the-sides descending a-faithful
stationem navibus per sese labentibus faceret.
anchorage for-ships through itself gliding made
Hanc igitur urbem nominis sui appellatione dignatus in 25
this then city of-name his with-the-title deigning in
omnem, quantum visi datur, magnificentiam laboravit,
all as-far-as of-seeing is-given magnificence he-labored
quamvis Cleomenes de Naucrato et Dinocrates Rhodius in eam
although Cleomenes of Naucratis and Dinocrates the-Rhodian to that
sententiam non accederent, ut tantam illam urbem, quanta
opinion not came that so-great that city as-great-as
nunc est, niti deberet, quod neque repleri aedificiorum
now it-is to-strive it-ought because neither to-be-filled of-buildings
spatia metita turbis competentibus opinarentur nec repleta
the-spaces measured with-crowds sufficient they-thought nor filled
ali facile potuissent. Ex quo fore arbitrabantur bella
to-be-fed easily they-could-have from which going-to-be they-thought wars
frequentia vel necessitate quaerendae alimoniae ab ipsis
frequent either by-necessity of-seeking food by the-inhabitants
incolentibus ineunda, seu opulentia praevalerent, seu
themselves to-be-entered-upon whether in-wealth they-prevailed or
viribus deficerentur, dum aut peterent aliquid aut peterentur.
in-strength failed while either they-sought something or were-sought
Quippe moderatum urbium statum et consiliis facilius
for a-moderate of-cities state and to-counsels more-easily
cedere et ad sustentationem sui promptius occursare
yield and to support of-itself more-readily to-run

amicum, siquidem multitudini nec facilis sui apud omnes
a-friend since to-a-multitude neither easy of-itself among all
singula dinoscentia atque etiam difficilis vel conspiratio.
each discernment and also difficult even agreement
Quamquam igitur longe auctius rex metitus locorum
although then far greater the-king had-measured of-the-places
amplitudinem foret, tamen ad sententiam persuadentium ire
the-extent he-had yet to the-opinion of-the-persuaders to-go
aliquanto contractius sivit ambitus lineam. Quare facesserat
somewhat more-narrowly allowed of-the-circuit the-line wherefore had-departed
magnificentiae animo contemplatae. Longitudinem quidem
from-the-magnificence in-mind contemplated the-length indeed
urbi procurat ab eo loco, cui Draco nomen est — est
for-the-city he-provides from that place to-which Draco the-name is it-is
autem pars supradicti Taposiris — usque ad locum, cui
but a-part of-the-aforementioned Taposiris up to the-place to-which
Agathudaemonos appellatio manet. Latitudini vero indulget
of-Agathodaemon the-name remains in-breadth but he-indulges-it
a Canopo usque ad locum, qui Eurylochi vel Melanthium
from Canopus up to the-place which of-Eurylochus or Melanthium
dicitur. Iubet igitur omnes, quique per ambitum usque ad
is-called he-orders then all who-ever through the-circuit up to
lapidem tricesimum coluissent, universos eodem commigrare
the-stone thirtieth had-dwelt all to-the-same to-migrate
locumque omnem, unde ad oppidum convenissent, suae dicioni
and-the-place all whence to the-town they-had-gathered to-his sway
servire. Et haec quidem super spatio urbis eius accipimus.
to-be-subject and these-things indeed about the-extent of-city that we-receive
26 Adhibitis tamen rex architectis, qui ex arte nobiles
with-summoned yet the-king architects who by art noble
et celebratiores habebantur, ut Cleomene de Naucrato
and more-celebrated were-held as Cleomenes of Naucratis

et Olynthio Cratero, Herone etiam Libyco, qui cum
and the-Olynthian Craterus Heron also the-Libyan who with
fratre Hyponomo erat, accepit omne magnificentiae huiusce
his-brother Hyponomus was be-learned the-whole of-magnificence this
monumentum in eo posse tuto consistere, si antea
monument on it to-be-able safely to-stand if before
quam fundamenta urbi iacerentur, subductiones aquae
than the-foundations for-the-city were-laid channels of-water
purgamentisque reliquis procuraret; quibus iugiter ablutis
and-for-filth other he-provided with-which constantly washed-away
derivatisque atque in mare perpetuo dilabentibus neque
and-drawn-off and into the-sea perpetually gliding neither
aedificiis perniciem aliquam remansuram et ab hisce, quae
to-the-buildings ruin any going-to-remain and from these which
intervenire conrumpendo aëri soleant, purgatius oppidum
to-intervene for-corrupting the-air are-wont cleaner the-town
fore. Elaboratis igitur his cloacis, quibus haud facile
would-be with-built then these sewers than-which not easily
capaciores ulla urbs habeat, omnis post id operum imposita
more-capacious any city has all after that of-works imposed
molitio. Quare cum hae urbes, quae in omni orbe terreno
construction wherefore since these cities which in the-whole world earthly
maximae celebrantur, in haec spatia numeratae sint: Syriaeque
greatest are-celebrated in these extents counted be and-of-Syria
sit civitas vel amplissima Antiochia extenta stadiis octo
be the-city even most-ample Antioch extended by-stadia eight
pedibus septuaginta duobus, Carthago vero, quae principatum
by-feet seventy two Carthage but which the-leadership
Africae tenet, stadiis decem porrecta videatur stadiique
of-Africa holds by-stadia ten stretched seems and-of-a-stadium
parte quarta, Babylon porro stadiis duodecim longa sit et
part a-fourth Babylon further by-stadia twelve long be and

pedibus ducentis atque viginti, ipsa quoque domina omnium
by-feet two-hundred and twenty she also mistress of-all
gentium Roma quattuordecim stadiis et pedibus centum atque
nations Rome by-fourteen stadia and by-feet a-hundred and
viginti longa primitus fuerit, nondum adiectis his partibus,
twenty long originally was not-yet with-added these parts
quae multum congeminasse maiestatis eius magnificentiam
which much to-have-doubled of-majesty her the-magnificence
visuntur, Alexandriam mensi sunt sedecim quidem stadiis,
are-seen Alexandria measured they-have at-sixteen indeed stadia
pedibus vero trecentis atque septuaginta quinque.
by-feet but three-hundred and seventy five

27 Occupato igitur omni solo, quod praedictis alveis atque
with-occupied then all the-soil which with-aforesaid channels and
vicis olim consitum mox urbs una contexuit, videt insulam
villages once planted soon a-city one wove-together sees an-island
eminus perbrevem rex. Cui nomen Pharus esse cum
at-a-distance very-small the-king to-which the-name Pharos to-be when
diceretur, coluisse vero Pharum istam Protea, conlapsum
it-was-said to-have-inhabited moreover Pharos this Proteus fallen
etiam ibidem cerneret Proteos sepulchrum, id quidem protinus
also there he-saw of-Proteus the-tomb it indeed at-once
et reformari ad faciem novitatis et coli religiosius
both to-be-refashioned to a-look of-newness and to-be-tended more-devoutly
mandat — exinque civitas Pharos est — eiusque mos ad
he-orders and-thence the-city Pharos is and-its custom to
nos usque prolapsus Sacrum inter nostros Heroos dicitur.
us even has-come-down holy among our Heroes it-is-called
Additur tamen ad fabulam metatae primum discretaeque
is-added yet to the-tale of-the-measured first and-divided
urbis huiusce, quod cum lineae ductae ab architectis forent,
city of-this that when the-lines drawn by the-architects had-been

quibus spatium et descriptio metatae urbis notaretur,
by-which the-extent and the-plan of-the-measured city might-be-marked
subiecta sit lineae farina pro pulvere. Sed ubi id
placed-under was to-the-line flour instead-of dust but when this
factum fuerit, mox congreges multi numeri et generis
done had-been soon in-flocks of-great number and kind
aves eodem advolavisse, raptimque omnem illam de farina
birds there to-have-flown and-swiftly all that of flour
lineam obligurisse. Id ergo portenti turbulentius Alexandrum
line to-have-licked-up this then portent more-violently Alexander
formidantem consuluisse protinus peritissimos coniectorum
fearing to-have-consulted at-once the-most-skilled of-diviners
eorumque sententia rescivisse, civitatem hanc non suis
and-by-their opinion to-have-learned the-city this not to-its-own
modo, verum peregrinis etiam populis ad alimoniam uberrimam
only but to-foreign also peoples for food most-abundant
fore. Ut enim in illo avium numero non solum indigenae,
going-to-be as for in that of-birds number not only native
verum advenae etiam atque undique versus adlapsae iacto
but strangers also and from-every direction flown-in on-the-scattered
polline avide pastae sint, ita hominibus quoque et incolentibus
flour greedily fed were so for-men also both inhabiting
et adpellentibus urbem hanc fructuosissimam fore.
and putting-in city this most-fruitful going-to-be
Aedificandi tamen Alexandriam constat principium ex 28
of-building yet Alexandria it-is-agreed the-beginning from
meditullio esse factum idque etiam nunc nomen
the-middle to-have-been made and-this even now the-name
in ea urbe retineri, quod Mesopedium vocetur. Coeptis
in that city to-be-kept that Mesopedium it-is-called with-begun
autem molitionibus surgere visitur draco quidam terribilis
moreover the-works to-rise is-seen a-serpent certain terrible

magnitudine ac maiestate, qui plerumque opifices incursabat,
in-size and majesty which often the-workmen attacked
eoque nonnihilum impediri opera videbantur non minus
and-by-it somewhat to-be-hindered the-works seemed not less
metu visentium quam religione. Quod cum in aures
by-the-fear of-the-onlookers than by-religion which when into the-ears
Alexandri perventum foret, iubet insequenti sub die, sicubi
of-Alexander come it-had he-orders on-the-following within day if-anywhere
forte sacra illa belua videretur, omnes undique confluentes
by-chance holy that beast were-seen all from-everywhere flocking
necem draconi moliri. Idque naviter factum oppressusque
death for-the-serpent to-contrive and-this busily done and-crushed
eo loci est draco, ubi nunc Stoam vocant. Et sepulchrum
in-that of-place was the-serpent where now the-Stoa they-call and a-tomb
tamen draconi consurgit opere admodum laborato et
yet for-the-serpent rises with-work very labored and
iuxtim Alexander iubet coronarias quoque opificinas adiacere,
close-by Alexander orders garland also workshops to-lie-adjacent
ut quod haec bestia famulitium quoddam templis praestare
that because this beast a-service certain to-the-temples to-render
videbatur — daemon enim melior appellatur—, ipse quoque
seemed a-spirit for better it-is-called itself also
divina quadam religione coleretur. Atque cum multa
with-divine a-certain religion might-be-worshiped and when many
sint Alexandriae et alia vel miranda, mons quoque propter
be at-Alexandria and other even wonderful a-mountain also nearby
illic visitur ex congestu, quem incuriosi vetustatis naturalem
there is-seen from heaping which the-careless of-antiquity natural
etiam opinantur. Sed ea moles egestis undique terra
even think but that mass with-carried-out from-everywhere earth
atque ruderibus, quibus fundamenta sint moenibus exhausta
and rubble by-which the-foundations were for-the-walls emptied

vacuataque, eoque conlatis ac superfusis huiusmodi erecti
and-cleared and-there with-brought and heaped of-this-kind of-a-lofty
et ardui montis magnitudinem sumpsit.
and steep mountain the-size took
Omnem tamen moenium varietatem distinxit nominibus et 29
all yet of-the-walls the-variety he-distinguished by-names and
secrevit sub appellatione Graecorum elementorum primarumque
separated under the-naming of-Greek letters and-of-the-first
quinque litterarum, non utique quod hoc regi sit
five letters not indeed because this to-the-king were
tantummodo libitum, verum uti ex hisce litteris sui nominis
only pleasing but that from these letters of-his name
perpetuitas in urbis partibus celebraretur: significante scilicet
the-perpetuity in of-the-city the-parts might-be-celebrated with-signifying namely
prima littera nomen Alexandri, secunda vero regis ex Graeco,
the-first letter the-name of-Alexander the-second but king from Greek
tertia porro generis, quarta etiam Iovis, quinta sese fecisse.
the-third further race the-fourth also of-Jupiter the-fifth himself to-have-made
Sic enim si quis hasce quinque orationis partes usurpaverit
thus for if anyone these five of-speech parts uses
Graeca lingua, inveniet his nominibus ac verbis primas has
in-Greek tongue he-will-find to-these names and words the-first these
litteras fuisse praepositas, quod Alexander Rex Genus Iovis
letters to-have-been prefixed that Alexander King Race of-Jupiter
Fecisset. Sepulchro tamen draconis illius iam perfecto, cum
Made-it with-the-tomb yet of-serpent that now completed when
trabes quaedam, quae ad ingressum eius columnas impresserat,
a-beam certain which at the-entrance its the-columns had-pressed
casu repentino conruisset dissiluissetque, angues complusculi
by-chance sudden had-collapsed and-burst-apart snakes very-many
indidem emersisse sunt visi, hique reptabundi, prout
from-there to-have-emerged were seen and-these crawling as

cuique ad lubentiam impetus fuit, constructarum domuum
to-each for pleasure the-impulse was of-the-built houses
penetralia invasere. Quod cum ipsum quoque terribile
the-inner-parts they-invaded which when itself also terrible
admodum videretur, non cunctanter arioli pronuntiavere
very it-seemed not hesitatingly the-soothsayers declared
hos quoque daemonas et praesules locorum esse domibusque
these also spirits and guardians of-the-places to-be and-to-houses
singulis colendos pro diis penatibus tradi oportere;
each to-be-worshiped as gods household to-be-handed it-behooves
eiusque mos vivit et adhuc Alexandriae religiosus est sub
and-its custom lives and still at-Alexandria religious is under
penatium deorum honore et statis diebus suetus coli
of-the-household gods the-honor and on-fixed days customary to-be-worshiped
more religionis eiusmodi: polentam ex tritico, quod sit
by-custom of-religion of-this-kind barley-meal of wheat which be
esui anguibus, iaciunt, et coronatis optimatium mos
for-eating to-the-snakes they-throw and with-garlanded of-the-nobles the-custom
est templum Heroi scandere, cui talia scilicet anguina
is the-temple of-the-Hero to-climb to-whom such namely snaky-things
obsequio famulentur. Quod autem oraculum regi somnio
in-obedience serve that moreover the-oracle to-the-king in-a-dream
datum quinqueverticem fore urbem praenuntiavisset,
given five-peaked going-to-be the-city had-foretold
advertens diligentius invenit eius universi loci esse eminentias
noticing more-carefully he-found of-that whole place to-be heights
quinque. Quibus in cetero aequore extuberascentibus decus
five which in the-rest-of the-plain swelling the-glory
urbis est maximum constructa ara quam maxima in eo
of-the-city is greatest built an-altar as greatest on that
colli, qui adversus Heroos locum visitur erigi.
hill which opposite the-Heroes' place is-seen to-be-erected

An eagle takes his sacrifice to an old altar, where obelisks of Sesonchosis name Sarapis lord of the world. In a dream Sarapis tells him in verse that his city will last forever and that he himself will rise to the stars. At Memphis he embraces Nectanebo's statue as his father. Tyre shuts its gates, crucifies his envoys, and is destroyed. Darius sends a strap, a ball, and a purse of gold to mock him as a boy; he tells his frightened army that barking dogs are the weakest.

In ea igitur ara deo summo rerum praesidi opulentioribus 30
on that then altar to-the-god highest of-things guardian with-richer
sacris et religiosius operabatur cum prece tali: 'Quisquis tu
rites and more-devoutly he-sacrificed with a-prayer such whoever you
deum rex es, qui praestare diceris huic terrae mundumque
of-gods king are who to-preside are-said over-this land and-the-world
istum interminem regis, recipias quaeso sacrum hoc litantique
this boundless rule receive I-beg offering this and-sacrificing
mihi auxilio fias rebus pacis et bellicis.' Et his
for-me a-help become in-affairs of-peace and of-war and with-these
dictis exta flammis ex more inferebat. Enimvero repente
said the-entrails to-the-flames by custom he-was-bearing but-indeed suddenly
advolans invisitatae magnitudinis aquila exta quidem
flying-at of-unseen size an-eagle the-entrails indeed
e manibus Alexandri proripit, tranans vero volatu quam
from the-hands of-Alexander snatches crossing but in-flight as
tranquillissimo aëris intersitum spatium alteri cuidam
smoothest of-the-air the-intervening space onto-another certain
arae procul exta, quae praeripuerat, superponit. Quem
altar far-off the-entrails which it-had-snatched places-upon which
depositi locum cum quidam e speculatoribus regi
of-the-deposit the-place when a-certain-one of the-scouts to-the-king
nuntiasset, properato eodem venit agnitisque extis,
had-reported hastening to-the-same he-comes and-with-recognized entrails

quae sacra ales advexerat, videt templum quoque illic
which the-holy bird had-carried he-sees a-temple also there
vetus magnitudinis religiosae, quodque aevi longinquitas
old of-size awe-inspiring and-which of-time the-length
superasset ac diruisset, simulacrumque intrinsecus sedens
had-overcome and ruined and-an-image within sitting
ex ea materia figuratum, quam dinoscere hominis virium
from that material shaped which to-discern of-man's powers
non est. Sed propter sedentarium deum adstiterat puellaris
not is but beside the-seated god had-stood a-girlish
effigies spectabili magnitudine et pulchritudine veneranda.
likeness of-remarkable size and in-beauty venerable
Cumque eius religionis numina percunctaretur, sese quidem
and-when of-that worship the-deities he-inquired themselves indeed
adcolae certius scire renuebant, accepisse tamen
the-inhabitants more-certainly to-know refused to-have-received yet
traditu veteri, Iovis ac Iunonis templum illud fuisse.
by-tradition old of-Jupiter and of-Juno temple that to-have-been
In eo obeliscos quoque duos videt proceritudinis erectissimae,
in it obelisks also two he-sees of-height most-erect
qui adhuc Alexandriae perseverant in Sarapis templi
which still at-Alexandria endure in of-Sarapis of-the-temple
circumsepto extrinsecus adsistentes, eius templi, quod aetas
the-enclosure outside standing of-that temple which an-age
iunior laboravit; sed haec saxa, quos diximus obeliscos,
younger built but these stones which we-have-called obelisks
quod ad veru ferreum saxi sublimitas quadret, insignita
because to a-spit iron of-the-stone the-loftiness tapers marked
sunt et inscripta Aegypti sacris litteris. Eorum causam et
are and inscribed of-Egypt with-sacred letters their cause and
originem cum requisisset, Sesonchosim regem eorum auctorem
origin when he-had-asked Sesonchosis the-king their author

esse dicebant, qui potitus universitatis id suo monumento
to-be they-said who having-possessed the-universe this as-his monument
esse voluisset, quod diis religiosius consecraverat. Lectae
to-be had-wished because to-the-gods more-devoutly he-had-consecrated-it read
denique per interpretem litterae continere sunt proditae
finally through an-interpreter the-letters to-contain are reported
huiusmodi gratiam: 'Rex Aegypti Sesonchosis orbis
of-this-kind favor the-king of-Egypt Sesonchosis of-the-world
potens praesuli mundi totius deo Sarapi consecrat.'
master to-the-guardian of-the-world whole to-the-god Sarapis consecrates
Adit ergo Alexander prece maxima deposcitque, uti si ista 31
approaches therefore Alexander with-prayer greatest and-demands that if this
rata esset fama, quae scripta sit, sese numen illud mundi
ratified were the-report which written is himself deity that of-the-world
totius dominum recognosceret et idem evidentius intimaret.
whole the-lord would-recognize and the-same more-evidently would-make-known
Ergo quietis proximo tempore eidem deus confessus super
therefore of-rest at-the-nearest time to-him the-god having-confessed about
regni magnitudine pariter ac maiestate sic ait: 'Nonne,'
of-the-kingdom the-greatness equally and majesty thus says not
inquit, 'memineras, Alexander, sacrificantem te cum primum
he-says did-you-remember Alexander sacrificing you when first
exta sacris inveheres, totius mundi orbisve domino
the-entrails to-the-rites you-were-bringing of-the-whole world or-globe to-the-lord
eadem te sacravisse eiusque auxilia petivisse? Quae cum
the-same you to-have-offered and-his help to-have-sought which when
dicata mihi merito quoque sint meae areae transvecta, quid
dedicated to-me rightly also are to-my altar carried-across what
dubitationi relictum erat, quin eum me crederes, quem
to-doubt left was that-not him me you-should-believe whom
auxiliatorem tibi religionibus cooptases?' Ad haec Alexandro
as-helper to-you by-rites you-had-chosen to this to-Alexander

de urbis perpetuitate quaerenti, et an nominis sui
about of-the-city the-perpetuity asking and whether of-name his
inhaesura appellatio videretur, visus est deus manu sese
to-cling the-appellation seemed seemed has the-god with-his-hand himself
adprehendisse exinque ad editum celsumque admodum montem
to-have-grasped and-thence to a-lofty and-high very mountain
una duxisse, atque ibidem consistenti 'Potesne,' ait, 'o tu
together to-have-led and there to-him-standing can-you he-says o you
fortissime, molem hanc montis in diversa transducere?'
bravest mass this of-mountain into different-places to-carry-over
Negitante Alexandro addidisse: 'Haec ergo similitudo est
with-refusing Alexander to-have-added this then the-likeness is
eius scilicet difficultatis, quam de tui nominis mutatione
of-that namely difficulty which about of-your name the-change
quaesisti. Ut enim naturae viribus spes ista deficitur, quod
you-asked as for by-nature's powers hope that fails that
mons tantus loco mutari queat, ita possibilitate res
a-mountain so-great in-place to-be-changed can so of-possibility the-thing
caret, inolitum nomen tuum urbi nunc conditae olim
is-empty the-ingrown name your to-the-city now founded ever
posse mutari.' Ibi adhuc petente Alexandro, ut sibi de
to-be-able to-be-changed there still with-asking Alexander that to-him about
fine vitae deus aliquid fateretur, in haec responsum est:
the-end of-life the-god something should-confess in these-words answered it-was

Prae cuncta vitae commoda est mortalibus
above all of-life advantages it-is for-mortals
de fine *** nescium
about the-end (lacuna) not-knowing
quibusque metis fata claudantur sui.
and-by-what goals the-fates be-closed of-his-own

Mens quippe homulli non videt variantia,
the-mind for of-a-little-man not sees the-changes
quod haec reformat perpes aevi aeternitas.
which this re-forms everlasting of-time eternity
Nam si facessat casuum scientia,
for if should-depart of-misfortunes the-knowledge
laeta est timoris omnis ignoratio.
glad is of-fear all the-ignorance
Quare id putato tute commodissimum,
wherefore this think you most-advantageous
si spes futuri nullo foedetur metu.
if the-hope of-the-future by-no be-befouled fear
Ergo hisce, quae fas, instruere, ut praescias.
therefore with-these which right-it-is to-instruct that you-may-foreknow
Tu nam levatus nostra praepotentia,
you for lifted by-our supreme-power
quaecumque gens sit obvia, sternes manu.
whatever nation be in-your-way will-lay-low with-your-hand
Tuncque haec revises animo, liber artubus.
and-then these-things you-will-revisit in-mind free from-limbs
Urbs vero, quam nunc erigis mundi decus,
the-city but which now you-raise of-the-world the-glory
nitore surgit, cunctis exoptabilis
in-splendor rises for-all desirable
saeclis, virescens temporum recursibus
for-ages flourishing of-times with-the-returns
unaque semper fulta beatitudine,
and-by-one always propped happiness
frequens deorum templis atque numine
thronged of-gods with-temples and deity
decusque vincens civium concordia:
and-glory surpassing of-citizens with-concord

optata sedes vitae ∗∗∗
a-longed-for seat of-life (lacuna)
∗∗∗ letum capit,
(lacuna) death takes
cunabulisque gratior genitalibus.
and-than-cradle dearer of-birth
Quippe ipse laetis coeptis praesul civicis
for I-myself to-the-glad undertakings guardian civic
interminatis saeculorum cursibus,
through-endless of-ages courses
fundata quod sit tellus hisce legibus,
founded because is the-land by-these laws
rides sereno vel corusco lumine.
you-laugh with-serene or with-flashing light
Quippe austri solum, sontibus iam libera,
for of-the-south-wind the-soil from-the-guilty now free
flabris fovetur blandius spirantibus,
by-blasts is-cherished more-softly breathing
ne quis potentum seu vis ulla daemonum
lest any of-the-powerful or force any of-spirits
exim noceret imperioso numine.
thence should-harm with-commanding divinity
Est namque fatum motibus nutantibus
it-is for fated with-movements tottering
telluris huius penita contremiscere
of-land this the-depths to-tremble
famemque nosse celere perfunctam metu,
and-famine to-know swiftly ended fear
tractus luales atque bella percita.
regions plague-stricken and wars roused
Enim facessent ista ceu si somnium.
for will-depart these-things as if a-dream

∗∗∗ reges multigenarum gentium
(lacuna) kings of-many-kinds nations
honore divum, summo cultu, exambient
with-honor of-the-gods highest with-worship will-court
astris receptum caelitumque congregem,
to-the-stars received and-of-the-heaven-dwellers the-company
quorum frequente cultu sis beatior;
of-whom with-thronged worship may-you-be more-blessed
tuosque praestas numine augustissimo.
and-your-people you-present with-divinity most-august
Haec quippe sedes corpori est caelum tuo.
this for the-seat for-the-body is the-sky your
Nunc ipse quis sim, mente bibula percipe,
now I-myself who I-am with-mind drinking perceive
nomenque nostrum ex hisce numeris collige.
and-the-name our from these numbers gather
Sub Graia primum bis centena littera
under the-Greek first twice hundred letter
unum repone numerum et centum dehinc
one set-down number and a-hundred thereafter
unumque post id, tunc quater viginti sint
and-one after this then four-times twenty let-there-be
decemque iuxtim, eaque sit novissima,
and-ten next-to-it and-it be the-last
quae prima fixa est: idque sit nomen mihi.
which first fixed is and-this be the-name for-me

Hoc igitur oraculo per quietem doctum Alexandrum deus 32
by-this then oracle in rest taught Alexander the-god
in somno dereliquit. At ille expergiscitur recoltisque
in sleep left but he awakes and-with-gathered

verbis ac memoriae confirmatis hunc demum esse, quem
words and in-memory confirmed him at-last to-be whom
quaerit, scilicet Sarapim mundi totius dominum rectoremque
he-seeks namely Sarapis of-the-world whole lord and-ruler
confirmat. Ara igitur vel maxima maximo opere
he-confirms with-an-altar therefore even very-great with-greatest work
laborata largioribus sacris tam animantium stratu
built with-more-generous rites both of-victims with-the-spreading
quam odorum profusione munificus convivia etiam exsequitur
and of-scents with-the-pouring munificent banquets also he-carries-out
ibidem quam laetissima. Tunc Parmenioni architecto laborandi
there as most-joyful then to-Parmenion the-architect of-making
scilicet simulacra cura mandatur, ut ne illis Homeri
namely an-image the-care is-entrusted that not from-those of-Homer
versibus demutaret, qui sic loquuntur:
verses he-should-depart which thus speak

Caerula tunc illi Saturnius adnuit arce,
with-dark-blue then to-him the-son-of-Saturn nodded brow
aurea caesaries quem signat motibus almis.
golden hair which marks with-movements kindly

Et Parmenion quidem iussa complet, ipse quoque non
and Parmenion indeed the-orders fulfills himself also not
inhonorus hoc labore. Quippe templum etiam nunc Sarapion
unhonored by-this labor for the-temple even now Sarapion
Parmenionis appellatur. Enimvero hactenus tibi super civitatis
of-Parmenion is-called but-indeed so-far to-you about of-the-city
illius conditu dictum habebis.
that the-founding said you-will-have

Alexander porro coacto omni exercitu exim ad Aegypti 33
Alexander further with-gathered all the-army thence to of-Egypt
ulteriora contendit classi iussa sese apud Tripolim
the-farther-parts hastens with-the-fleet ordered for-him at Tripolis
opperiri. Sed id iter longe laboriosissimum militi fuit,
to-wait but that journey far most-laborious for-the-soldier was
quippe ob locorum et itineris difficultatem. Omnes
for because-of of-the-places and of-the-route the-difficulty all
tamen adcolae, qua perrexisset Alexander, una cum diis
yet the-inhabitants where had-proceeded Alexander together with gods
deorumque simulacris religiosisque operationibus obviam
and-of-the-gods images and-religious rites to-meet-him
pergere festinabant, iuniorem Sesonchosim praedicantes. Quare
to-go hastened a-younger Sesonchosis proclaiming wherefore
cum Memphin venisset, inductum eum in aedem templumque
when to-Memphis he-had-come brought him into the-shrine and-temple
Vulcani Aegyptii regni veste dignitati sunt et
of-Vulcan of-the-Egyptian kingdom with-the-robe to-the-dignity they-are and
sella ac sessibulo dei. Tum ibi Alexander statuam
with-the-chair and seat of-the-god then there Alexander a-statue
quandam nigro lapide intuetur cum illa super Nectanabo
certain of-black stone sees with that about Nectanabus
inscriptione, imperatorem scilicet eum, qui fuga indidem
an-inscription the-commander namely him who by-flight thence
abfuisset, rursus Aegyptum reventurum, non seniorem, enim
had-been-absent again to-Egypt going-to-return not older but
iuniorem, eumque fore loci illius hostium subiugatorem.
younger and-him going-to-be of-place that of-the-enemies the-subduer
Statim igitur scripti istius causas diligentius quaerit
at-once then of-the-writing that the-causes more-carefully he-seeks
refertque responsum, hunc illum Nectanabum fuisse,
and-brings-back the-answer this that Nectanabus to-have-been

qui infestantibus Persis, cum deorum monitu praescivisset
who with-harassing Persians when by-the-gods' warning he-had-foreseen
fortunae suae lapsum, locum casuum declinasset. Tum
of-fortune his the-fall the-place of-the-mishaps had-avoided then
sese quaerentibus civibus oraculum datum, quod sub
themselves seeking to-the-citizens an-oracle given which under
illa statua legeretur. Igitur Alexander his auditis involat
that statue was-read therefore Alexander with-these heard flies
statim in statuae complexum ac parentem salutat, eiusque
at-once into of-the-statue the-embrace and as-parent greets-it and-its
se filium profitetur, ut congrueretur de responsione
himself son professes that he-might-be-matched about the-answer
cum spe Alexandrum demirantium.
with the-hope Alexander of-those-wondering-at

34 'Unum tamen mihi de civitate vestra miraculo est,' ait,
one-thing yet to-me about city your for-wonder is he-says
'ecquid vis barbara adversus huiusmodi muros potuerit
whether force barbarian against of-this-kind walls could
obtinere, quos coram cerno supra humanarum manuum
prevail which before-me I-see beyond of-human hands
violentiam pulchritudine pariter ac firmitate congestos,
the-violence in-beauty equally and firmness heaped
praesertim undique fluminibus convallantibus, ut murorum
especially on-all-sides with-rivers walling-round so-that of-the-walls
quoque ipsorum haec sit firma munitio; aditus porro
also themselves this be firm fortification the-approaches further
tenues angustique, quique agminibus militaribus inviabiles
narrow and-confined and-which for-columns military impassable
atque exim occursui perfaciles habeantur. Cuius quidem rei
and thence for-encounter very-easy are-held of-which indeed thing
ipse periculum certius fecerim, quamvis huc manu
I-myself trial more-certainly might-make although hither with-a-band

parva, non congregato exercitu commearem. Enimvero haec est
small not with-gathered army I-traveled but-indeed this is
illa deorum aequitas ac providentia, ut vos, qui ex ubertate
that of-the-gods fairness and providence that you who from the-fertility
terrae praecluatis atque his fluminibus obvallemini, eorum
of-the-land are-famous and by-these rivers are-walled their
violentiam sentiatis, qui ista non habeant. Quippe ad hanc
violence you-feel who these-things not have for to this
opulentiam rerum si vis quoque et militare vobis exercitium
wealth of-things if force also and military to-you training
adfuisset, nulla profecto gens foret, quae duabus hisce
had-been-added no surely nation would-be which two these
fortunae viribus obviaret. Est igitur ita natura descriptum, ut
of-fortune powers might-stand it-is therefore so by-nature described that
qui ista rerum opulentia sint donati, idem careant bellicis
those-who with-this of-things wealth are endowed the-same lack in-war
viribus, ut si quid illi, qui armis et manibus indulgent,
powers so-that if anything those who in-arms and hands indulge
de solo genitali indigebunt, ab huiuscemodi adfluentibus
from their-soil native shall-need from of-this-kind abounding-peoples
petant.' Hisce dictis exigit protinus ab Aegyptiis, ut
they-may-seek with-these said he-exacts at-once from the-Egyptians that
quidquid illud pensuros sese Dario recepissent, id
whatever it going-to-pay themselves to-Darius they-had-undertaken this
sibimet inferrent; quod quidem eo se petere testatus
to-himself they-should-bring which indeed for-this himself to-seek testified
est, non ut opibus suis indidem incrementi aliquid
he-has not that to-the-riches his thence of-increase anything
pareretur, enimvero ut exstruendae urbis foret substantia
be-procured but-indeed that for-building of-the-city might-be the-substance
largior. Haud cunctanter in haec Aegyptii obsequuntur
more-ample not hesitatingly to these-things the-Egyptians comply

datisque pecuniis et honorata deductione per Pelusium
and-with-given moneys and with-an-honored escort through Pelusium
properantem votis pariter et vero amore prosequuntur.
him-hastening with-prayers equally and true love they-escort
35 Rursus igitur recepto omni exercitu et in Syrias itinere
again then with-recovered all the-army and to the-Syrias with-the-journey
destinato urbes eas, per quas sibi transitus foret, nomini
appointed the-cities those through which for-him the-passage would-be to-name
suo addit; unde mille etiam cum cataphractis viros accipit,
his he-adds whence a-thousand also with mail-clad men he-receives
quod armaturae genus orientis inventio est; ac tum Tyrum
which of-armor kind of-the-east the-invention is and then to-Tyre
advenit. Sed enim Tyrii moenibus clausis ab ingressu
he-comes but indeed the-Tyrians with-walls closed from entering
oppidi arcere Alexandrum obfirmaverunt, non contemptu
of-the-town to-keep-off Alexander resolved not from-contempt
scilicet virium tanti nominis, sed oraculi cuiusdam
namely of-the-strength of-so-great a-name but of-an-oracle certain
memores, quo docerentur, quod si rex urbem Tyriam
mindful by-which they-were-taught that if a-king the-city Tyrian
invectus cum exercitu transivisset, fortuna tunc
having-ridden-into with an-army should-have-passed-through fortune then
lapsum oppido minaretur. Alexander tamen cum admolitus
a-fall for-the-town would-threaten Alexander yet when having-applied
violentiam oppidum cuperet subiugare, ancipiti proelio, multis
violence the-town he-desired to-subdue in-doubtful battle with-many
etiam Macedonum caesis ac vulneratis pedem refert. Praeter
also of-the-Macedonians slain and wounded his-foot draws-back beyond
illud igitur prius magnanimitatis suae studium iam etiam
that then earlier of-magnanimity his zeal now even
indignatione ferventior excidium Tyriis minabatur deque
with-indignation more-burning destruction to-the-Tyrians he-threatened and-about

ea re somniat admoneri sese, ne legationem sui
that thing he-dreams to-be-warned himself that-not the-embassy of-himself
Tyrum per sese faciat; id enim animo praedestinabat.
to-Tyre through himself he-make that for in-mind he-was-predetermining
Missis igitur internuntiis litteras dat Tyriis perferendas, 36
with-sent then go-betweens a-letter he-gives to-the-Tyrians to-be-delivered
quarum sententia haec est: 'Macedonum rex, filius Ammonis
of-which the-sense this is of-the-Macedonians the-king son of-Ammon
Philippique, rex regum maximus Asiae seu Europae vel
and-of-Philip king of-kings greatest of-Asia or of-Europe or
Libyae, Tyriis haec dicit. Equidem Graecum et imperiale
of-Libya to-the-Tyrians this says indeed Greek and imperial
videbatur cum clementia pariter ac iustitia invehi urbem
it-seemed with clemency equally and justice to-ride-into city
vestram. At enim vos primi omnium exstitistis, qui
your but indeed you first of-all have-stood-forth who
mihi insolentius obviaretis. Igitur per vos ceteris etiam
me more-insolently met therefore through you to-the-others also
magisterium procurabitur, quid virium sit in Macedonum
a-lesson will-be-provided what of-strength is in of-the-Macedonians
dexteris ac fortitudine; neque enim vos iuvabit oraculi illius
the-right-hands and fortitude nor for you will-help of-oracle that
iactatio. Transgrediar enim oppidum vestrum, sed dirutum
the-boasting I-will-cross for town your but destroyed
atque disiectum. Valete, si sapitis: non enim valebitis,
and scattered farewell if you-are-wise not for you-will-fare-well
si perseveratis.' His litteris lectis Tyrii primates legatos
if you-persist with-this letter read the-Tyrian chiefs the-envoys
protinus corripi iubent eisque multatis pergunt exigere
at-once to-be-seized order and-with-them punished proceed to-demand
tormentis, quisnam eorum ipse Alexander foret. Sed de
by-tortures which of-them himself Alexander were but about

hoc, ut res erat, negitantes crucibus adfixere. His
this as the-thing was denying to-crosses they-fixed-them by-these
igitur incentivis exstimulatus Alexander inruptionem oppidi
then incentives spurred Alexander the-breaking-in of-the-town
acrius agitabat et rursus in somnio Satyrum conspicatur
more-keenly pressed and again in a-dream a-Satyr he-sees
assem sibi tyrum porrigentem eumque projectum sese
a-coin to-him a-cheese offering and-it thrown-down himself
pedibus protrivisse. Quod interpretibus haud difficile in
with-his-feet to-have-trampled which for-the-interpreters not difficult in
enodando fuit. Tyrum enim proteri mox pedibus habere
unraveling was Tyre for to-be-trampled soon by-the-feet to-have
principis respondere. Ex quo sive admonitu sive impetu
of-the-prince they-answer from which whether by-warning or by-impulse
suo adgressus oppidum vehementius capit pariter ac vastat,
his having-attacked the-town more-vehemently he-takes equally and lays-waste
indiscrete satis sexubus et aetatibus interemptis. Tres vero
indiscriminately enough with-sexes and ages destroyed three but
vicos, quorum navo auxilio ad operam bellicam usus erat, ad
villages by-whose zealous help for the-work of-war used he-had to
magnitudinem confrequentat urbis Tripolimque appellari iubet.
the-size he-crowds of-a-city and-Tripolis to-be-called he-orders
37 Tyriis ergo satrapam praeficit atque inde Syriam pergens
over-the-Tyrians therefore a-satrap he-sets and thence to-Syria proceeding
accipit litteras Darii Persae in hanc sententiam scriptas: ‘Rex
he-receives a-letter of-Darius the-Persian in this sense written king
regum et consanguineus deorum consessorque dei Mithrae
of-kings and kinsman of-the-gods and-throne-sharer of-the-god Mithras
unaque oriens cum sole Darius ipse Alexandro famulo
and-together rising with the-sun Darius himself to-Alexander servant
meo iubeo dicoque haec. Mando tibi reverti ad parentes
my I-order and-say this I-command you to-return to parents

tuos, famulos scilicet meos, atque illic in gremio matris
your servants namely my and there in the-lap of-your-mother
cubantem doceri virile officium. Ad quam rem habenam
lying to-be-taught the-manly duty for which thing a-strap
Scythicam tibi et pilam loculosque cum aureis misi:
Scythian to-you and a-ball and-a-purse with gold-pieces I-have-sent
quorum habena admonet te disciplinae videri indigentem,
of-which the-strap warns you of-discipline to-seem needing
pila vero, quod eius congruat cum tua aetatula lusitatio, non
the-ball but because its agrees with your little-age the-play not
haec opera, quam latrocinantium ritu cum tuis similibus
these labors which of-robbers in-the-manner with your like
es adgressus. Neque enim si omne eiusmodi hominum
you-have undertaken nor for if all of-this-kind of-men
genus ad te pari desperatione conduxeris, adtemptare
the-race to you with-equal desperation you-should-hire to-try
quatereve Persarum imperium queas. Tanta quippe mihi
or-to-shake of-the-Persians the-empire could-you so-great for to-me
multitudo exercituum adest, ut quis promptius arenae
a-multitude of-armies is-present that one-would more-readily of-the-sand
quam nostri numeros adsequatur. Auri porro argentique ea
than our numbers attain of-gold further and-of-silver such
copia, ut humum ipsam, si libitum est, consternere indidem
plenty that the-ground itself if pleasing it-is to-pave from-it
possim. Quare tibi loculos auri refertissimos misi, uti si
I-could wherefore to-you a-purse of-gold most-full I-have-sent so-that if
indigebis sumptibus ad reversionem, tibi tuisque habeas,
you-need expenses for return for-you and-yours you-may-have
quod subfecerit. Quod si hisce monitis ac praeceptis ulterius
what may-suffice but if to-these warnings and precepts further

refragare, mittam protinus, qui te comprehensum huc
you-resist I-will-send at-once those-who you seized here
transferant; non enim ut Philippi filius coercebere.'
may-bring not for as of-Philip the-son will-you-be-restrained
38 His lectis ab Alexandro publicatisque metus plurimos
with-this read by Alexander and-published fear very-many
quatiebat dictorum magniloquentiam contemplantes. Quod
shook of-the-words the-boastfulness contemplating which
ubi Alexander mente intuitus est, in haec verba contionatur:
when Alexander in-mind seen had in these words he-harangues
'O Macedones nostri, quid tandem adeo dictis barbaricis
o Macedonians our why at-last so by-words barbarian
perturbamini? quae adrogantiae quidem vanitatisque habent
are-you-troubled which of-arrogance indeed and-of-vanity have
testimonium, confidentiae vero carent probatione. Nam et
the-testimony of-confidence but lack the-proof for also
canibus imbecillioribus mos est, quanto plus defuerit
for-dogs weaker the-custom is by-how-much more has-been-lacking
virium, tanto cristas acuere sublimius et latratibus
of-strength the-more their-crests to-raise loftily and in-barks
inritatioribus indulgere. Haec mihi visa est competentior ad
more-provoking to-indulge this to-me seemed is more-fitting for
Darii iactantiam comparatio; quod enim praestare viribus
of-Darius the-boasting a-comparison what for to-achieve by-strength
non potest, verbis indulget. Ego tamen aveo cuncta perinde
not he-can in-words he-indulges I yet long all-things just-as
a vobis existimari, ut verbis etiam exprimuntur. Malo enim
by you to-be-reckoned as in-words also they-are-expressed I-prefer for
nos praesuspectantes aliquid difficultatis animis fortius
us forewarned something of-difficulty with-minds more-bravely

praeparatis in rem bellicam vadere, quam fiducia
prepared into the-business of-war to-go than with-confidence
hostium molliorum inopinatas offendere difficultates.'
in-enemies softer unexpected to-meet difficulties

VI · THE FIRST VICTORY OVER DARIUS

He orders the envoys crucified, then spares them and sends a letter reading the strap, ball, and gold as Persia's submission. The satraps beg Darius for help; Darius threatens and orders Alexander to come and worship him. In the battle the chariots fail, rain breaks the Persians, and Darius flees, leaving his mother, wife, and daughters, whom he treats as royalty. Alexander plants his spear on the Taurus, sees Orpheus' statue sweat, and honors Achilles.

Et ubi haec dicta sunt, corripi internuntios iubet 39
and when these-things said were to-be-seized the-go-betweens he-orders
crucibusque subfigi. Cuius supplicii merita cum a sese
and-on-crosses to-be-fixed of-which punishment the-deserts when from themselves
barbari defensarent ac ius legationis intemeratum
the-barbarians warded-off and the-right of-embassy inviolate
sibi vellent, 'Non,' inquit Alexander, 'ex sententia vel
for-themselves wished not he-says Alexander from opinion or
moribus meis est forma praecepti; enim quoniam ut ad
manners my is the-form of-the-command for since as to
latronem a vobis ista suscepta legatio est, uti latronis
a-robber by you this undertaken embassy is that of-a-robber
etiam vehementiam iniquitatemque sentiatis.' Tum illi: nec
also the-violence and-injustice you-may-feel then they neither
Darium omnia pro merito eius potentiae cognovisse et
Darius all-things according-to the-merit of-his power to-have-known and
se pariter opinione deceptos esse; haec cum dicerent,
themselves equally by-opinion deceived to-be these-things when they-said

magnificis verbis eius exercitum praedicare viresque coepere
in-magnificent words his army to-proclaim and-strength began
confiteri tantas, quantas si rex quoque sedulo rescivisset,
to-confess so-great as-great-as if the-king also carefully had-learned
moderaturum profecto verbis fuisse. Tum Alexander neque
going-to-moderate surely in-words to-have-been then Alexander neither
sibi verum interficiendorum hominum consilium fuisse
for-himself truly of-killing men the-plan to-have-been
profitetur et maluisse potius ostendere, quid iniquitas
professes and to-have-preferred rather to-show what the-injustice
soleat tyrannorum, quam iustitia Graeca permittat. Et post
is-wont of-tyrants than justice Greek allows and after
haec curari homines liberalius iubet participatque
this to-be-cared-for the-men more-generously he-orders and-shares
convivio dapsili et adfluente. Eius convivii tempore cum
the-banquet lavish and abundant of-that banquet at-the-time when
unus e numero legatorum proditionem quoque sibi regis
one from the-number of-the-envoys a-betrayal also for-himself of-king
Darii subsereret, prohibitus ab eodem est ulterius super hac
Darius suggested forbidden by the-same was further about this
re addere, quam promiserat, praesertim cum is, qui ista
thing to-add what he-had-promised especially since he who these-things
dixisset, mox ad regem rediturus fortunae posset ansam
had-said soon to the-king going-to-return to-fortune could a-handle
improsperam dare, ne qua ab ipso quoque proditio aut
unprosperous give lest any by him also betrayal or
proditionis causa quaereretur. ‘Id enim demum ago,’ inquit,
of-betrayal cause be-sought this for indeed I-do he-says
‘non tam mei commodi cura quam vestri metuoque, ne
not so-much of-my advantage in-care as of-yours and-I-fear lest
cuipiam mali semen ac principium videar praestitisse.’ Ad haec
to-anyone of-evil the-seed and beginning I-seem to-have-provided to this

Persae verbis honoratioribus gratias confitentur; neque detenti
the-Persians in-words more-honoring thanks confess nor detained
ultra donatique omni auro, quod secum in loculis advexerant,
further and-presented with-all the-gold which with-them in purses they-had-brought
ad regem cum litteris remittuntur, quae fuere huiusmodi:
to the-king with a-letter are-sent-back which were of-this-kind
'Rex Alexander patris Philippi, matris Olympiadis, regi 40
king Alexander of-father Philip of-mother Olympias to-the-king
regum et consessori dei Mithrae simulque cum sole
of-kings and throne-sharer of-the-god Mithras and-together with the-sun
orienti, maximo Persarum domino Dario salutem dicit. Turpe
rising greatest of-the-Persians lord Darius greeting says shameful
mihi admodum videri solet tantum regem Darium et hisce
to-me very to-seem it-is-wont so-great a-king Darius and with-these
viribus confisum, deorum, ut praedicat, consessorem, sub
strengths relying of-the-gods as he-proclaims a-throne-sharer under
dicionem homullorum, ut retur, contemptibilium deventurum
the-sway of-little-men as he-thinks contemptible going-to-come
et inter eos abiecto cuidam ac latroni Alexandro serviturum.
and among them cast-off to-a-certain and a-robber Alexander going-to-serve
Quippe ista magnificentia nominum ubi semel cuipiam
for that magnificence of-names when once to-anyone
sit persuasa, corpora membratim vel spiritus eriguntur
it-be persuaded bodies limb-by-limb or spirits are-raised
imprudentius. Magno dolori tibi fore ista, quae
more-imprudently to-great grief to-you going-to-be these-things which
pronuntiantur, intelligo; ac si superna caelitum vis
are-pronounced I-understand and if the-supernal of-the-heavenly-ones force
abusione huiusmodi in ultionem contumeliae suae facile
by-abuse of-this-kind to the-vengeance of-insult its-own easily
consurgit, equidem spero priora esse, quae spondeo, quam
rises indeed I-hope first to-be what I-promise than

quae tu minaris. Quare adero ut mortalis mortalem
what you threaten wherefore I-will-be-present as a-mortal a-mortal
violentiam experturus, inclinationisque eius vis ac potestas
violence going-to-try and-of-the-inclination its the-force and power
est penes superos. Nam illud quaeso te: quorsum tanto opere
is with the-gods-above for that I-ask you to-what-end so in-work
congestum est auri te et argenti opibus aestuare? An ut
heaped is of-gold you and of-silver in-riches to-seethe whether that
his cognitis, si modo eorum amor nobis est, spe praedae
with-these learned if only of-them love to-us is with-hope of-booty
obstinatius et audacius dimicaremus? atque hinc fiat,
more-stubbornly and more-boldly we-should-fight and hence it-come-about
ut superato te hinc quidem nobis in commune quaestus et
that with-overcome you hence indeed for-us in common gain and
emolumentum victoriae fiat, mihi vero istud, quo tute
profit of-victory may-be to-me but that in-which you-yourself
gloriare, Persidos cunctae orbisque totius accedat imperium?
boast of-Persia all and-of-the-world whole may-accrue the-empire
Sin tibi faverit, nihilum amplius quam oppressum latrocinium
but-if to-you she-favors nothing more than a-crushed robbery
gratulabere. Adde nunc illud, misisse te mihi habenam
you-will-congratulate add now that to-have-sent you to-me a-strap
unam vel pilam loculosque auri refertos: de quibus quamvis
one and a-ball and-purses of-gold filled about which although
tu, quae visa fuerint, dictitaris, ego tamen mihi ut auspicato
you what seemed have-been you-said I yet for-myself as by-good-omen
cuncta ex te concessa ac sponsa profitebor. Accepi enim
all-things from you granted and promised will-profess I-have-received for
habenae scilicet potestatem, ut habeam, qua in subiectos
of-the-strap namely the-power that I-may-have which on the-subjects
uti scientius possim; pilae vero simulamen, quoniam ex
to-use more-knowingly I-may of-the-ball but the-likeness since from

ambitu sui et rotunditate orbis imago videatur, haud
the-circuit of-itself and roundness of-the-world the-image it-seems not
dubie mihi universitatis ipsius per te imperium repromittit.
doubtfully to-me of-the-universe itself through you the-empire promises
Quodque hic tertium est, loculos ego auri ac si opum tuarum
and-what here third is the-purses I of-gold as if of-riches your
factam mihi accepi cessionem, subiectumque te viribus meis
made to-me I-have-received a-cession and-subject you to-strength my
annuum istud mihi fore pretium servitutis depensurum.'
yearly that to-me going-to-be the-price of-servitude going-to-pay
His igitur litteris palam lectis atque signatis redire 41
with-these then letters openly read and sealed to-return
internuntios iubet. Ipse tamen omni mox Syria superata
the-go-betweens he-orders he-himself yet with-all soon Syria overcome
ac redactis eius gentibus in potestatem ad Asiam ire
and with-reduced its nations into his-power to Asia to-go
contendit. Enimvero acceptis Alexandri litteris rex Darius
hastens but-indeed with-received of-Alexander the-letter king Darius
eisque gravius et adrogantius motus ad satrapas suos ultra
and-by-it more-heavily and more-arrogantly moved to satraps his beyond
Taurum regentes talem continentiam scribit: Nuntiatum sibi
the-Taurus ruling such content writes reported to-himself
Alexandrum Philippi, insanientem admodum adolescentem,
Alexander of-Philip raving very a-youth
Asiam incursantem. Igitur sese oportere eum protinus
Asia invading therefore them it-behooves him at-once
obviantes compeditum ad sese dirigere: esse enim regi
meeting shackled to themselves to-send to-be for to-the-king
consilium, uti adfectus verberibus puerilibus amictusque
the-plan that afflicted with-blows boyish and-clothed
post veste purpurea cum talis et crepitaculis matri
afterward in-a-garment purple with dice and rattles to-his-mother

reddatur: sic enim Macedonum pueros lusitare. Tum fore
he-be-returned thus for of-the-Macedonians the-boys play then going-to-be
ut, cum illi praefectus ad observantiam disciplinae Persa
that when to-him set-over for observance of-discipline a-Persian
aliquis comitaretur, virile officium rectius disceret. Igitur
some should-accompany the-manly duty more-rightly he-might-learn therefore
oportere satrapas quidem classem eius una cum navitis
it-behooves the-satraps indeed the-fleet his together with the-sailors
alto submergere, milites vero cunctos ferro vinctos ad
in-the-deep to-sink the-soldiers but all with-iron bound to
Rubri maris ulteriora transduci, ut illic colere iuberentur;
of-the-Red sea the-farther-parts to-be-carried that there to-till they-be-ordered
equos ceteraque militum impedimenta sibi ipsos
the-horses and-other of-the-soldiers baggage for-themselves themselves
habere privos amicisque largiri. Sed hisce litteris nihilum
to-have privately and-to-friends to-bestow but with-these letters nothing
ad metum satrapae moti regi respondere: 'Hystaspes et
to fear the-satraps moved to-the-king answer Hystaspes and
Spinther deo Dario salutem dicunt. Miramur satis latuisse
Spinther to-god Darius greeting say we-wonder enough to-have-escaped
te, rex, tantae multitudinis impetum supervenire nostratibus,
you king of-so-great a-multitude the-attack to-come-upon our-men
qui quales quantique sint, quo facilius noscitares,
who of-what-sort and-how-many they-are that more-easily you-might-know
quinque, quos forte indidem captos haberemus, vinctos
five whom by-chance from-there captured we-had bound
transmisimus, non ausi eorum ultra aliquid inquirere, quae
we-have-sent-across not daring of-them further anything to-inquire which
sint fortassis melius regi praescitui. Boni igitur consules,
are perhaps better for-the-king to-be-foreknown good then you-will-take
quamprimumque cum exercitu vel potentissimo eidem obviabis.'
and-as-soon-as-possible with an-army even most-powerful him you-will-meet

Sed ne sic quidem abiciendam molliendamve Darius adrogantiam 42
but not so even to-be-cast-off or-softened Darius his-arrogance
putat. Enim respondet ducibus memoratis, ultra illis
thinks for he-replies to-the-leaders mentioned further for-them
spem vitae agendae iam deponendam, si modo creditis sibi
the-hope of-life to-be-led now to-be-laid-down if only entrusted to-them
finibus abscessissent. Quippe virtutes hosticas magnifice
from-the-borders they-had-withdrawn for the-valors hostile magnificently
executos nihilum periculi monstravisse, quo reapse
having-recounted nothing of-danger to-have-shown by-which in-fact
scire Macedonum fortitudinem potuissent. 'Et quem enim
to-know of-the-Macedonians the-fortitude they-could and whom for
vulneratum,' inquit, 'vestrum, quemve interemptum audiens
wounded he-says of-you or-whom slain hearing
hoc coniectem?' Nihil igitur superesse, quam uti probro
this should-I-conjecture nothing then to-remain than that to-shame
fuisse huiusmodi duces Persarum regno sentiret. Sed
to-have-been of-this-kind leaders of-the-Persians to-the-kingdom he-should-feel but
inter haec iam Alexandrum iuxtim posuisse castra noscit
among these-things already Alexander close-by to-have-pitched camp he-learns
propterque vicinum fluvium mansitare. Igitur ad ipsum
and-near a-neighboring river to-stay therefore to him-himself
rursus et nominum adrogantiam et deorum consortium
again both of-names the-arrogance and of-the-gods the-partnership
sibi vindicans gentiumque se centum atque viginti
for-himself claiming and-of-nations himself a-hundred and twenty
dominum praedicans ita scribit: 'Latuitne te solum, Alexander,
the-lord proclaiming thus he-writes has-it-escaped you alone Alexander
Darii nomen honosque ille, quo nos donat atque
of-Darius the-name and-honor that with-which us presents and
participat supera maiestas? eoque ausus es transmisso
shares-with the-above majesty and-for-this dared you-have with-crossed

mari Persas veluti hostis appellere? non beatissimum
sea the-Persians as an-enemy to-approach not most-blessed
ratus, si contentus imperio Pellae ac Macedoniae secessu
thinking-it if content with-the-empire of-Pella and of-Macedonia in-seclusion
audaciam tuam inter proximos iactitares? Enimvero usurpas
daring your among the-nearest you-boasted but-indeed you-usurp
et regium nomen et congregata tibi ad societatem sceleris
both the-royal name and gathered for-you to the-partnership of-crime
parilium conspiratione hostem te nostri profiteris, cui
of-equals by-conspiracy an-enemy you of-us you-profess for-whom
quam longe praestantius foret id inter Graeculos iactitare,
how far more-excellent it-would-be this among little-Greeks to-boast
quos Graecos fere ut inutiles nec necessarios Persarum
whom Greeks almost as useless nor necessary of-the-Persians
regna non quaerunt. Sat igitur habeo vel hoc tantum
the-kingdoms not do-seek enough then I-have even this alone
imprudentiae signum, quod ratus nos vestratibus similes huc
of-imprudence the-sign that thinking us to-your-people like here
contendisti. Quin ergo errata corrige nec addas huiusmodi
you-have-hastened why then your-errors correct nor add of-this-kind
facinoribus incrementum. Est enim scire nos, quibus deorum
to-deeds increase it-is for to-know us whom of-the-gods
pariter et prudentia et dignitas favet, peccatis istis ut
equally both the-prudence and the-dignity favors to-sins those as
hominum subvenire. Censeo igitur, ut adorandum me venias,
of-men to-help I-propose then that to-worship me you-come
ne contra inobsequens poenam pro venia merearis.
lest on-the-contrary disobedient punishment instead-of pardon you-merit
Quod ut tibi ratum sit, Iovem iuro et parentes meos
which that to-you ratified be Jupiter I-swear and parents my
omnem tui iniuriam protinus e meo pectore recessuram.'
all of-you the-injury at-once from my breast going-to-withdraw

Et haec quidem scripta regis Alexander legerat. Enim 43
and these indeed the-writings of-the-king Alexander had-read for
ulterius non verbis, sed gladio agendam rem ratus per
further not by-words but by-the-sword to-be-conducted the-thing thinking through
Arabiam exercitum ducit atque in aequore, quod agendae
Arabia the-army he-leads and on the-plain which for-conducting
rei opportunius videbatur, aciem extendit. Qua
the-thing more-suitable seemed the-battle-line he-extends with-which
inspecta Darius spem primam eamque vel maximam in falcatis
inspected Darius hope first and-that even greatest on scythed
curribus ponit, qui ut facilius aciem hostium incursarent,
chariots places which that more-easily the-line of-the-enemies they-might-attack
a latere conlocantur. Sed id consilium Persae disici
on the-flank are-placed but that plan of-the-Persian to-be-scattered
Alexander facilius opinatus incurrentibus curribus per acies
Alexander more-easily thinking with-attacking chariots through the-lines
phalangasque locum transitui pandi praedicit tumque
and-phalanxes a-place for-passing to-be-opened he-orders and-then
in transvehentes peditum suorum iacula torqueri: eoque
onto those-crossing of-the-infantry his javelins to-be-hurled and-by-it
perfectum est, ut brevi omnis ille curruum numerus teneretur
accomplished it-was that shortly all that of-chariots the-number was-held
una equis et aurigantibus fixis. Igitur sedata formidine,
at-once with-horses and charioteers transfixed therefore with-calmed the-fear
quam Persae de curribus intentaverant, aequatum omne
which the-Persians from the-chariots had-threatened leveled the-whole
proelium videbatur. Agebat porro Alexander in dextro cornu,
battle seemed was-acting further Alexander on the-right wing
quod laevo scilicet Persico obviabat. Inscenso igitur equo
which to-the-left namely Persian faced with-mounted then horse
signum increpari bellicum mandat, unaque coeuntium clamor
the-signal to-be-sounded of-war he-orders and-at-once of-those-clashing the-shout

adtollitur ancipiti satis proelio ac diuturno. Cum interea
is-raised in-doubtful enough battle and prolonged when meanwhile
sinistrum cornu Macedonum a Dario, qui in dextris suorum
the-left wing of-the-Macedonians by Darius who on the-right of-his-men
agebat, vi maiore pelli conspicatur implicatosque
was-acting with-force greater to-be-driven he-sees and-entangled
ordines universos non tam discriminum necessitate quam
the-ranks all not so-much of-the-dangers by-the-necessity as
multitudinis, inconsulto subpetiari laborantibus properaverat.
of-the-multitude rashly to-relieve to-the-laboring he-had-hastened
Exim pari utrimque oborta caede cum spes exitus
thence with-equal on-both-sides arisen slaughter when the-hope of-the-outcome
fluctuaret, repentino forte imbri procedente, vel adversari
wavered with-sudden by-chance rain coming-on either to-be-adverse
sibi caelites id Persae interpretati vel ad elementi
to-themselves the-heaven-dwellers this the-Persians interpreting or to of-element
eius iniuriam molliores fuga facessunt unaque his
that the-harm softer in-flight depart and-together-with these
Amyntas Macedo, Antiochi filius, qui olim transfuga Darii
Amyntas the-Macedonian of-Antiochus son who once a-deserter of-Darius
amicitiam cooptaverat. Quippe fugientibus et tempus horae
the-friendship had-chosen for to-the-fleeing also the-time of-the-hour
blandiebatur, quod vesperascens foeditatem fugientium pariter
was-favorable because growing-dark the-ugliness of-the-fleeing equally
et periculum pertexisset. Darius tamen ratus delicatiore
and the-danger had-covered Darius yet thinking with-more-delicate
illa fuga et vehiculo regali periculum evitare, quodque e
that flight and with-the-vehicle royal the-danger to-avoid and-because from
suggestu regiae turris promptius conspicabilis foret, currum
the-platform of-the-royal tower more-readily visible he-would-be the-chariot

quidem in loca quaedam abdendum mandat et avertendum,
indeed into places certain to-be-hidden he-orders and to-be-turned-aside
ipse autem equo conscenso properantiae consulit.
he-himself but with-a-horse mounted for-haste provides
Sed enim Alexander hanc sibi peculiarem gloriam 44
but indeed Alexander this for-himself peculiar glory
adpetens, si rex fugiens comprehenderetur, animosius
seeking if the-king fleeing were-caught more-spiritedly
insecutus currus quidem armaque regalia matremque una
having-pursued the-chariot indeed and-arms royal and-the-mother together
et uxorem cum virginibus filiabus emensis stadiis sexaginta
and the-wife with the-maiden daughters with-traversed stadia sixty
comprehendit; ipsum vero Darium non minus tenebrosior
he-catches him-himself but Darius not less the-darker
nox quam cursus velocitas liberaverat quippe iam primum
night than of-the-course the-speed had-freed for already first
in haec et huiuscemodi fortunaria dispositis equis et
for these and of-this-kind chances with-placed horses and
itinere proviso. Macedones vero potiti victoria in castra
with-the-route foreseen the-Macedonians but having-won the-victory into the-camp
Persica migravere unaque Alexander tentoriis regiis
Persian moved and-together-with-them Alexander to-the-tents royal
superveniens expertus ibi primum est una cum militibus suis
coming experienced there first has together with soldiers his
fortunae illius ac victoriae emolumentum. Neque mage uspiam
of-fortune that and of-victory the-profit nor more anywhere
continentis animi moderamen Alexander potuit ostentare,
of-a-restrained mind the-moderation Alexander could show
quam quod in hoc fortunae favore ex aequo suae atque
than that in this of-fortune favor from equal of-his and
adversae partis iniit rationem, non secus scilicet probatis
of-the-opposite side he-took account not otherwise namely with-approved

hostium navioribus, qui pro patria fortiter oppetissent, quam
of-the-enemies the-more-zealous who for country bravely had-died than
si quis suorum strenuus exstitisset. Cunctos igitur, quos in
if any of-his-own vigorous had-stood-out all then whom in
bello nobilitaverat militiae experimentum et mors inclytos
war had-ennobled of-soldiering the-trial and death famous
fecerat, inquiri prostratos et magnifice sepeliri et sepulcris
had-made to-be-sought lying and magnificently to-be-buried and with-tombs
honorari iubet. Matrem porro Darii una cum uxore
to-be-honored he-orders the-mother further of-Darius together with the-wife
filiabusque cultu regio prosequebatur, ac si qui praeterea in
and-daughters with-dress royal he-attended and if any besides into
potestatem hostium devenissent, fortuna pristina donabantur.
the-power of-the-enemies had-come with-fortune former were-presented
Enimvero cecidisse tunc Macedonum satis constat peditum
indeed to-have-fallen then of-the-Macedonians enough it-is-agreed of-foot
quidem septingentos, equitum porro centum et sexaginta,
indeed seven-hundred of-horse further a-hundred and sixty
sed vulneratorum numerum in duobus milibus exstitisse.
but of-the-wounded the-number at two thousand to-have-stood
Contra Persarum desiderata quidem centum et viginti
on-the-other-side of-the-Persians missed indeed a-hundred and twenty
milia, praedae autem una servitiis pecuisque et quae
thousand of-booty but together with-slaves and-flocks and what
vehebant pecunia fuit talenta quattuor milia.
they-carried money was talents four thousand
45 Sed Darius fuga reversus longe auctiore numero contracto
but Darius from-flight returned with-a-far greater number gathered
in Alexandrum moliebatur suisque undique convenire,
against Alexander was-contriving and-his-men from-everywhere to-assemble
in quantum manus armari potuerat, iubet. Id tamen
in as-much a-band to-be-armed could he-orders this yet

comperiens Alexander ex hisce exploratoribus, qui in dicionem
learning Alexander from these scouts who into the-power
Macedonum devenissent, omniaque illa Darii milia iuxta
of-the-Macedonians had-come and-all those of-Darius thousands beside
Euphraten castra posuisse, ipse quoque ad Scamandrum,
the-Euphrates camp to-have-pitched he-himself also to Scamander
ducem suarum partium, qui curabat tunc Macedoniam
the-leader of-his parties who was-managing then Macedonia
sese profecto, scribit omnis phalangas, quas, armare, aut si
with-himself having-set-out writes all the-phalanxes which to-arm or if
quid praeterea in auxiliis virium foret, propere admoliretur,
anything besides in auxiliaries of-strength there-were hastily he-should-bring
neque enim hostis longius adsidere. Quae dum pro commodo
nor for the-enemy farther to-sit which while for advantage
festinantur, ipse una exercitu Achaia peragrata
are-hastened he-himself together with-the-army with-Achaea traversed
multisque praeterea civitatibus receptis aut quaesitis etiam
and-with-many besides cities recovered or acquired even
centum et septuaginta milia collegit armatorum Taurumque
a-hundred and seventy thousand gathered of-armed-men and-the-Taurus
transducit. Tumque summo in culmine Tauri montis hasta
he-leads-across and-then highest on peak of-Taurus mountain with-his-spear
defixa dixisse fertur, quisquis illam rex milesve Graecus
fixed to-have-said is-reported whoever it king or-soldier Greek
aut barbarus humo evellere ausus foret, edictum
or barbarian from-the-ground to-pluck-out dared should-have the-edict
sibi urbis ac patriae suae suisque excidium meminisset.'
for-himself of-city and of-country his and-his-own the-destruction should-remember
Ipse tamen ad civitatem Pieriam, quae Bebryciae urbs 46
he-himself yet to the-city Pieria which of-Bebrycia a-city
habetur, iter exim fecit; qua in urbe et templum
is-held his-way thence made which in city both a-temple

opiparum et simulacrum Orphei erat admodum religiosum.
sumptuous and an-image of-Orpheus was very sacred
Ibidem Musae etiam Pierides consecratae videbantur unaque
there the-Muses also Pierian consecrated were-seen and-at-once
omnigenum figmenta viventium Orphei musicam demirantia.
of-all-kinds figures of-the-living of-Orpheus the-music marveling-at
Cum igitur admirationis studio simulacrum illud Alexander
when then of-wonder with-zeal image that Alexander
intueretur, sudor repente profluere et per omne simulacri
gazed-at sweat suddenly to-flow-forth and through all of-image
illius corpus manare visus non sine admiratione videntium
that the-body to-trickle seen not without the-wonder of-those-seeing
fuit. Motus ergo portenti novitate coniectatorem vel
was moved therefore of-the-portent by-the-novelty a-diviner even
celebratissimum Melampoda sciscitatur, quid tandem ille
most-celebrated Melampus he-asks what at-last that
sudor sibi simulacri minaretur. Tum ille: 'Sudor sane largus
sweat to-him of-the-image threatened then he sweat truly abundant
laborque,' ait, 'quam prolixissimus tibi quoque in his rebus
and-labor he-says as most-prolonged to-you also in these affairs
praesentibus, o rex, erit; quippe et gentium peragratio et
present o king will-be for both of-nations the-traversing and
operum difficultates tete manent, quod illi quoque Orphei
of-works the-difficulties you await which to-him also Orpheus
fuit, qui peragrans urbes Graecas et barbaras ad favorem sui
was who traversing cities Greek and barbarian to favor of-himself
animos admirantium flexerit.' Hisce auditis Alexander honore
the-minds of-those-wondering bent with-these heard Alexander with-honor
quam largo Melampoda muneratur. Eximque in Phrygiam
as generous Melampus rewards and-thence into Phrygia
venit atque illic Hectora Achillemque unaque alios heroas
he-comes and there Hector and-Achilles and-together others heroes

divum honore participat. Praecipue tamen Achillem veneratur
of-the-gods with-honor he-shares especially yet Achilles he-reveres
ac rogat, uti sibi et ipse faveat et dona, quae ferret,
and asks that to-him also he-himself be-favorable and the-gifts which he-bore
dignanter admittat. Haec enim a sese non ut ab externo ac
graciously admit these for by him not as by a-stranger and
superstitioso, verum ut consanguineo ac religioso dedicari:
superstitious-man but as by-a-kinsman and devout-one to-be-dedicated

Hinc primus extat Aeacus Iovis proles,
hence first stands Aeacus of-Jupiter the-offspring
atque inde Peleus Phthiae regna possedit,
and thence Peleus of-Phthia the-realms possessed
quo tu subortus inclyta cluis proles;
from-whom you sprung as-famous are-called offspring
Pyrrhusque post id nobile adserit sanguen,
and-Pyrrhus after that the-noble claims blood
quem subsecuta est Pieli fama non dispar;
whom followed has of-Pielus the-fame not unequal
Pielique proles Eubius dehinc regnat.
and-of-Pielus the-offspring Eubius thereafter reigns
Post Nessus ardens excipit domus nomen,
after-him Nessus ardent takes-up of-the-house the-name
Argusque post id, qui potens fuit Xanthi.
and-Argus after that who powerful was of-Xanthus
Ex hoc Arete nobilis genus ducit.
from this-one Arete noble the-line draws

Areta natus Priami nomen accepit,
from-Aretes born of-Priam the-name received
Tryinus unde, et Eurymachus post illum,
Tryinus whence and Eurymachus after him
ex quo Lycus fit dives, et dehinc Castor.
from whom Lycus becomes rich and thereafter Castor
Castore natus est Dromon, qui dat Phocum.
from-Castor born is Dromon who gives Phocus
Atque hinc suborta est Metrias, quae suscepit
and hence sprung is Metrias who took-up
Neoptolemei nominis vicem dignam;
of-the-Neoptolemean name a-succession worthy
cui substitutus Charopus. Hic Molossorum
to-whom substituted Charopus he of-the-Molossians
regni potitus auctor exstitit stirpis
of-the-kingdom having-possessed the-author stood-forth of-the-stock
nostrae ***
our (lacuna)
*** erit que viscus inclytum matris,
(lacuna) (obscure) and the-flesh famous of-the-mother
e qua subortus vestro sanguini adnector.
from whom sprung to-your blood I-am-joined
Quaesoque nomen adseras tuum nobis,
and-I-beg the-name that-you-claim your for-us
bellisque praestes gloriasque subtexas,
and-in-wars you-excel and-glories weave
velut feracis seminis *** fructum,
as of-a-fruitful seed (lacuna) the-fruit
quod cuncta late spatia terrae pervadat:
which all widely the-spaces of-the-earth may-pervade

unaque metis nostra fac Phaethonteis
and-at-once with-boundaries our make Phaethontean
regna explicari, mundus adserat cunctus.
the-realms to-be-unfolded the-world may-claim whole

VII · THEBES AND CORINTH

Abdera shuts him out for fear of Darius, and he spares it. Starving by the Maeotic marsh, he has the horses killed and wins back his men with a speech. At Acragas he takes Apollo's tripod, and a voice hails him as a new Hercules. Thebes defies him and is razed, though a piper pleads for it in song. At Corinth the Theban Clitomachus wins three contests and says he has no city; Alexander, guessing his wish, lets Thebes be refounded.

Haec precatus in istum Alexander modum ibidem flumen 47
these-things having-prayed in that Alexander manner there the-river
Scamandrum cum videret clipeumque Achilli templo Herculis
Scamander when he-saw and-the-shield of-Achilles in-the-temple of-Hercules
consecratum, nec alvei illius latitudinem demiratus nec
consecrated neither of-channel that the-width wondering-at nor
magnificentiam clipei pondusve famosum, 'O te beatum
the-magnificence of-the-shield or-the-weight famous o you blessed
Achillem,' fertur saepe dixisse, 'qui Homero praedicatore
Achilles is-said often to-have-said who with-Homer as-herald
celebraris!' His auditis ab eodem cum multi admodum
are-celebrated with-these heard from the-same when many very
litterati studiosius erga amicos religioneve tracti iter eius
learned-men more-zealously toward friends or-by-religion drawn journey his
prosequerentur parique sese stilo opera sua prosecuturos
attended and-with-equal themselves pen deeds his going-to-pursue

esse promitterent, optasse se dixit vel Thersitem apud
to-be promised to-have-wished himself he-said even Thersites in
Homerum mage, quam apud scriptores eiusmodi Achillem
Homer rather than among writers of-this-kind Achilles
putari maluisse. Huc usque tamen comes eius itineris
to-be-thought to-have-preferred hither as-far yet companion his of-journey
ac laboris mater Olympias fuit. Sed exim participato
and of-labor his-mother Olympias was but thence with-shared
convivio cum illam ad Macedoniam remisisset, dat
banquet when her to Macedonia he-had-sent-back he-gives
una ducere comitatum spectabilis multitudinis optimatium
together to-lead an-escort of-remarkable multitude of-nobles
captivorum; ipseque devertens iter institit ad Darium.
captive and-himself turning-aside the-journey he-pressed toward Darius
48 Igitur cum sibi per urbem Abderam transitus foret,
therefore when to-him through the-city Abdera the-passage was
obseratis urbis suae claustris Abderitae, eum ne reciperent,
with-barred of-city their the-gates the-Abderites him that-not they-should-receive
obfirmaverant. Id contumeliam ratus et convenire protinus
had-resolved this an-insult thinking and to-assemble at-once
milites et urbem illam igni vastare mandavit. Sed legatione
the-soldiers and the-city that with-fire to-waste he-ordered but by-an-embassy
Abderitae docent sese illud non odio contemptuve
the-Abderites inform themselves that not from-hatred or-contempt
Graeci regis eiusque iustissimi factitare; enim metuere
of-the-Greek king and-of-him most-just to-do for to-fear
impetum barbarorum motusque Darii inconsultiores; cui
the-attack of-the-barbarians and-the-movements of-Darius more-rash to-whom
si potestatis aliquid in sese relictum foret, non absque poena
if of-power anything against them left were not without punishment
Abderitarum fore, quod Alexandrum in amicitiam contra
of-the-Abderites going-to-be that Alexander into friendship against

Persae commoda receptassent. 'Igitur reverso tibi,' aiunt, 'et
of-the-Persian the-interests they-had-received therefore returned to-you they-say and
victori parebimus.' Ad haec rex illum, quem conceperint de
victorious we-will-obey to this the-king that which they-have-conceived of
Dario metum, abicere supplices iubet neque ulterius eius vim
Darius fear to-cast-off the-suppliants orders nor further his force
atque impotentiam formidare. Nunc tamen se velle, respondit,
and violence to-dread now yet himself to-wish answered
urbem quam confidentissime reserent, se in praesenti
the-city as most-confidently they-unbar himself at the-present
oppidum haud ingressurum. 'Enim cum revenero,' inquit,
the-town not going-to-enter for when I-return he-says
'non hospes vobis, sed amicus ero.' His dictis iter ad
not a-guest to-you but a-friend I-will-be with-these said the-journey to
Euxinum tendit omnesque sibi urbes eius litoris vindicat.
the-Euxine he-directs and-all to-himself the-cities of-that shore claims
Equestri denique Neptuno sollemniter operatus ad Maeotim 49
to-equestrian finally Neptune solemnly having-sacrificed to the-Maeotic
paludem venit asperam satis et inviabilem prae rigore.
marsh he-comes harsh enough and impassable because-of the-frost
Quae circa occupatus omnibus hisce deficitur, quae ad
which around engaged with-all these he-runs-short which for
alimoniam requiruntur. Igitur fame obsessus ita praesentibus
food are-required therefore by-hunger besieged so with-those-present
consulit, uti equos militum interfici iuberet eisque
he-consults that the-horses of-the-soldiers to-be-killed he-should-order and-on-them
milites vesci. Enimvero quamquam id consilium ferme
the-soldiers to-feed but-indeed although that plan almost
ex necessitate sequerentur, tumultus tamen et indignatio
from necessity they-followed an-uproar yet and the-indignation
omnium congruebat, veluti studio factum, ut necessitate
of-all agreed as-if on-purpose done that by-the-necessity

praesenti spes sibi futura laberetur. Quare cum omnis
present the-hope for-them future might-slip wherefore when all
militaris observantia solveretur neque ad custodiam solitam
military discipline was-dissolved nor for guard customary
vigiliae ceteraque munia servarentur, rex motus in haec
the-watches and-the-other duties were-kept the-king moved in these
verba contionatur: 'Neque me fugit, fortissimi milites,
words harangues not me escapes bravest soldiers
rem militiae necessitatisque bellicae prima subsidia
of-the-business of-soldiering and-of-necessity of-war the-first supports
equos haberi oportere, quos ego interfici iusserim et de
the-horses to-be-held it-behooves which I to-be-killed have-ordered and from
usu illo ad alimoniam victumque proficere. Sed cum in ea
the-use that toward food and-sustenance to-profit but since in that
re duorum nominum periculum versaretur, ut aut equis
thing of-two names the-danger turned that either by-horses
aliti viveremus aut hisce servatis vel priores vel pariter
fed we-should-live or with-these kept either earlier or equally
oppeteremus, secutum me fateor consilium, quod pro
we-should-die followed I confess the-plan which in-place-of
deteriore melius videbatur. Quippe spem foveo diis
the-worse better seemed for hope I-cherish with-the-gods
coepta iuvantibus fore, uti cum primum gentem aliquam
the-undertakings helping it-will-be that when first a-nation some
et subsidium uberius nacti fuerimus, equos quoque haud
and a-support more-abundant found we-shall-have horses also not
deterioris usus parare sit nobis facultas. Quippe si vos,
of-worse use to-procure be for-us the-means for if you
quod omnes superi difflaverint, detestabili illa necessitate
which all the-gods-above blow-away by-detestable that necessity
ac fame animas poneretis, milites quidem forsitan possem,
and hunger your-lives should-lay-down soldiers indeed perhaps I-could

sed Macedonas milites ubinam repperissem? Quare animos
but Macedonian soldiers where would-I-have-found wherefore your-minds
reformate in melius vobisque suadete nullum esse vestrum
reshape for the-better and-yourselves persuade none to-be of-you
adeo sui amantem atque sollicitum, quem non pro se
so of-himself loving and anxious whom not for himself
mea cura praevertat.' Hisce dictis sedati erant animi militum
my care forestalls with-these said calmed were the-minds of-the-soldiers
revocatisque viribus ad officia castrensia sese converterant.
and-with-recalled strength to the-duties of-the-camp themselves they-had-turned
Quare perculsis plurimis civitatibus iter in Locros protinus 50
wherefore with-struck very-many cities his-journey into the-Locri at-once
vertit. Qua in urbe refectis animis omnium Agragantum
he-turns which in city with-refreshed minds of-all to-Acragas
tendit. Eam urbem ingressus nihilum moratus scandit
he-goes that city having-entered nothing delaying he-climbs-to
Apollinis templum sacerdotemque, quae ibidem antistabat,
of-Apollo the-temple and-the-priestess who there presided
solitam vaticinari in id ipsum coepit urguere. Enimvero cum
accustomed to-prophesy to that very-thing began to-press but-indeed when
vates dei in se spiratione cessante nihil tale se
the-prophetess of-the-god in her with-the-breath ceasing nothing such herself
posse fateretur, Alexander motus, ni faceret, interminatur
to-be-able confessed Alexander moved unless she-did threatens
tripodam quoque se ad Herculis fabulam sublaturum. Et
the-tripod also himself after of-Hercules the-tale going-to-carry-off and
cum dicto aufert scilicet tripodam, quem Croesus quidem
with the-word he-carries-off namely the-tripod which Croesus indeed
opulentissimum consecrarat; sed per eum divino spiritu
most-opulent had-consecrated but through which with-the-divine breath
commeante vaticinari antistitem fas erat. Tum fertur ex
passing to-prophesy the-priestess lawful was then is-reported from

adyto vox ad Alexandrum: 'Id quidem, quod tu facis,
the-shrine a-voice to Alexander this indeed which you do
Hercules fecit et ille deus et tu divinitati iam destinatus.
Hercules did and he a-god and you for-divinity already destined
Quare te par est nihil in nostri contumeliam niti, si modo
wherefore you right it-is nothing to our insult to-strive if only
virtutibus tuis ex favore numinum consulis.' Hisce dictis ex
for-the-virtues your from the-favor of-the-deities you-provide with-these said from
adyto addit et vates: 'En vides, rex, quod illa tibi numinis
the-shrine adds also the-prophetess lo you-see king that that for-you of-the-deity
praestigiat divinatio, quae et Herculem et Alexandrum
conjures the-divination which both Hercules and Alexander
vocat. Igitur praenuntio tibi fore actus tuos humanorum
calls therefore I-foretell to-you going-to-be acts your than-human
omnium fortiores nomenque per saecula porrigendum.'
all stronger and-your-name through the-ages to-be-extended

51 Hinc cum Thebas Alexander transcendisset peteretque
hence when Thebes Alexander had-crossed-to and-sought
Thebanos indidem armatorum mille comitatum, Thebani
from-the-Thebans thence of-armed-men a-thousand as-escort the-Thebans
portas post haec praecepta clauserunt, factique eius
the-gates after these commands shut and-of-the-deed his
temeritatem cum supplicatione non excusassent, arma
the-rashness with supplication not had-excused arms
sumpsere et ad resistendum violentiae Alexandri sese
took-up and for resisting the-violence of-Alexander themselves
paravere; adduntque his illud: quingentos armatos e suis
prepared and-they-add to-these that five-hundred armed-men from their
muris insistere ac voce maxima clamare iussere atque
walls to-stand and with-voice greatest to-shout they-ordered and
Alexandro dicere, uti aut veniret ad proelium aut de
to-Alexander to-say that either he-should-come to battle or from

moenibus et obsidione discederet. Sed ad haec ridens
the-walls and the-siege should-withdraw but to these-things laughing
Alexander, 'O vos fortissimos,' ait, 'qui cum ipsi custodiam
Alexander o you bravest-men he-says who when yourselves the-guard
vestri murorum vallo teneatis, nobis praecepta bellandi
of-yourselves of-the-walls by-the-rampart hold to-us precepts of-warring
praebetis!' Igitur gerendum his ait morem proeliaturumque
offer therefore to-be-done to-these he-says compliance and-going-to-fight
se minatur, non ea tamen opinione, qua cum fortibus
himself he-threatens not in-that yet opinion in-which with brave-men
disceptaret; enim protinus iubet mille quidem equites
he-would-contend for at-once he-orders a-thousand indeed horsemen
circumvallare eos, qui in muro constiterant, pedites
to-surround those who on the-wall had-taken-stand the-infantry
vero securibus vectibusque adgredi claustra portarum ac
but with-axes and-bars to-attack the-bolts of-the-gates and
fundamenta subruere murorum. Non enim difficile esse id
the-foundations to-undermine of-the-walls not for difficult to-be that
aedificium armis excidere, quod per lyrae cantus et
building with-arms to-cut-down which through of-the-lyre the-songs and
musicam tumultuario convenisset; et statim inici flammas
music haphazardly had-come-together and at-once to-be-thrown flames
arietesque admoliri iubet, quorum crebro et vehementi
and-rams to-be-brought-up he-orders of-which with-frequent and violent
admodum pulsu non difficile nec diu casus omnium est
very battering not hard nor long the-fall of-all was
moratus. Ipse vero cum funditoribus totidem obire
delayed he-himself but with slingers as-many to-go-about
discursim, adeo ut omni telorum genere fatigatos aut
running-to-and-fro so that with-every of-missiles kind wearied either
prosternerent Thebanos aut vulnerarent. Atque ita tertio fere
they-laid-low the-Thebans or wounded and so on-the-third about

die conlapsis omnibus, quae obstabant, invehitur Alexander
day with-collapsed all-things which stood-in-the-way rides-into Alexander
Thebas eamque diripere exscindereque festinat tot scilicet
Thebes and-it to-plunder and-to-raze hastens for-so-many namely
saeculis et Cadmi ceterorumque imperiis nobilem.
ages and of-Cadmus and-of-the-others by-the-rules famous

52 Ad quam fortunam ceteris praestupescentibus prae vi
at which fortune with-the-others stunned because-of force
malorum uni tibicinum forte consilium subit aptare tibias et
of-evils to-one of-the-pipers by-chance a-plan occurs to-fit his-pipes and
melos, quam posset fabrile, canere regis pedibus provolutum.
a-song as he-could skillful to-sing of-the-king at-the-feet prostrate
Quod cum Alexander videret acuto et religioso consilio
which when Alexander saw by-a-shrewd and pious plan

efficax multum atque ad movendam sui misericordiam
effective much and for moving of-himself pity
esse provisum, tunc auloedus ille manibus extensis:
to-be provided then the-piper that with-hands outstretched

Hancine tu urbem, maxime regum Alexander,
this you city greatest of-kings Alexander
properabis exscindere, quam tibi dii
will-you-hasten to-raze which for-you the-gods
immortales, prosapiae tuae principes,
immortal of-lineage your the-founders
pepererunt? nonne te subit hinc Liberum
bore does-it-not you occur hence Liber
ortum? hanc Herculis esse nutricem,
sprung this of-Hercules to-be the-nurse
hinc illa orgia et praestantissimos
hence those orgies and the-most-excellent
deorum cultus diffusos esse per mundum?
of-the-gods worships spread to-be through the-world
Boni igitur consules ac facesses
good then you-will-take and you-will-depart
ab hac tam sacrilega voluntate.
from this so sacrilegious will

Neque enim, si quid inpatientius
nor for if anything more-impatiently
ira belli mandavit, non mox te
the-anger of-war ordained not soon you
ad poenitentiam reversurum ***
to repentance going-to-return (lacuna)

Addebat etiam:
he-added also

Hos tibi muros, haec moenia Zethus ille
these for-you walls these ramparts Zethus that
vel Amphion, stirpis tuae pars maxima,
or Amphion of-stock your part greatest
Apolline Musisque adminiculantibus
with-Apollo and-the-Muses helping
fecit. Nec vides in rem tuam tuique
made nor do-you-see against thing your and-your
generis gloriam te saevire? Quid quod
of-race the-glory you to-rage what of-the-fact-that
idem illi dii, praestites et maiores tui,
the-same those gods guardians and forefathers your
laetitiam suis et ultionem ex hostibus,
joy to-their-own and vengeance from enemies
pacem denique etiam ignotis
peace finally also to-the-unknown
maiestate sui et virtutibus peperere?
by-the-majesty of-themselves and by-virtues brought-forth
Hoc Liber ex India, hoc nobis Hercules
this Liber from India this to-us Hercules
ex omni terrarum orbe procurat:
from all of-lands the-world provides

quorum te malo imitatorem potius
of-whom you I-prefer an-imitator rather
quam invidentem fuisse. An tibi putas
than envying to-have-been or to-you do-you-think
sine sacrilegio rem futuram
without sacrilege the-thing going-to-be
locum istum ferro et igni populari,
place this with-sword and fire to-lay-waste
in quo Semelen suam rex deum Iupiter
in which Semele his-own the-king of-the-gods Jupiter
maritaverit, in quo Alcumenam quoque
wedded in which Alcmena also
eiusdem Iovis ulnae dignitatae sunt?
of-the-same Jupiter's arms honored were

Addebat et fabulas, quaecumque Thebanae sunt, et memorias 53
he-added also the-tales whatever Theban are and memories
religiosas, quas vetus historia commendat. Sed hic commotior
religious which the-old history commends but here more-moved
rex 'Quam vellem,' inquit, 'o tu, qui civium tuorum
the-king how I-should-wish he-says o you who of-citizens your
infortunio subfragaris, consultor potius fuisses in melius
for-the-misfortune vote a-counselor rather you-had-been for the-better
et illic tuam prudentiam exercuisses, ubi cautione opus
and there your prudence you-had-exercised where of-caution need
fuerit, non huiusmodi experimento! Quare neque tibiis
was not of-this-kind by-experience wherefore neither by-pipes
vinci pectus martium potest nec contumelia militaris
to-be-conquered a-breast martial can nor an-insult military
tam artificio quam supplicatione sopitur.' Et post haec
so by-art as by-supplication is-lulled and after this

peragi omne excidium iubet. Sed Thebani, quicumque
to-be-carried-out the-whole destruction he-orders but the-Thebans whoever
fugae contra eversionis suae impetum consuluerant, ubi
by-flight against of-the-overthrow their the-onset had-provided when
tempus fuit, congregati sciscitatum Apollinem mittunt, ecquid
time it-was gathered to-consult Apollo send whether
sibi redintegrare urbem Thebanam fata permitterent. Ad
to-them to-restore the-city Theban the-fates would-allow to
haec igitur huiusmodi Apollinis est responsum:
this then of-this-kind of-Apollo is the-answer

Maiugena, Alcides, et Pollux cestibus auctor
Maia's-son Alcides and Pollux of-gauntlets author
arte sua Thebis reditum cultumque dedere.
by-art their to-Thebes return and-worship gave

Hac sorte data opperiebantur Thebani, si quid tale
with-this oracle given waited the-Thebans if anything such
proveniret.
should-come-about

54 Alexander vero cum Corinthum devenisset eamque occupavisset,
Alexander but when to-Corinth he-had-come and-it occupied
forte acciderat sollemne certamen gymnicum apud illos
by-chance it-had-happened a-solemn contest gymnastic among them
agitari; unde Corinthii quoque, uti adesset atque illi
to-be-held whence the-Corinthians also that he-be-present and that
certamini praesideret, magnopere contendunt. Adnuit igitur
contest preside-over greatly strive he-nodded then
rex; cumque plurimos pro merito coronis donisque
the-king and-when very-many according-to merit with-crowns and-gifts
largissimis muneraretur, Thebanus quidam, cui Clitomachus
most-generous he-rewarded a-Theban certain to-whom Clitomachus

nomen esset, certamen luctae profitetur idemque de
the-name was the-contest of-wrestling enters and-the-same of
cestibus pugnam atque identidem pugillatum; denique tria
gauntlets the-fight and likewise boxing finally three
ista certamina idem profitetur et subit. Ergo cum primum
those contests the-same enters and undertakes therefore when first
luctando adversario praestitisset coronamque laboris exegisset,
in-wrestling to-the-opponent he-had-surpassed and-the-crown of-the-labor had-claimed
iubet Alexander cetera quoque eundem prius exsequi, quae
orders Alexander the-others also the-same first to-complete which
promisisset, quaeque si pari fortuna obtineret, nihil omnium
he-had-promised and-which if with-equal fortune he-won nothing of-all
fore, quod sibi petenti rex negaret. Igitur usus
going-to-be which to-him asking the-king would-deny therefore having-used
fortitudine atque fortuna cum cestibus potior et pugillatu
strength and fortune when with-gauntlets superior and in-boxing
felicior foret, revertitur ad regem coronandus. Sed ab eo
more-fortunate he-was he-returns to the-king to-be-crowned but from him
cum quaereret praeco more sollemni, quis esset nomine
when asked the-herald by-custom solemn who he-was by-name
quemve se civem profiteretur, ut illud ex more praedicaretur,
or-whom himself a-citizen he-professed that it by custom be-proclaimed
Clitomachum quidem se appellari ait, civitatem vero habere
Clitomachus indeed himself to-be-called he-says a-city but to-have
desisse. Sed id cum coronis redditis iam deesse diceret
to-have-ceased but this when with-crowns rendered now to-be-lacking he-said
Alexander gloriae victoris illius, addit Clitomachus olim se
Alexander to-the-glory of-victor that adds Clitomachus once himself
habuisse etiam civitatem, sed priusquam Alexander regnum
to-have-had also a-city but before Alexander the-kingdom
adeptus foret; eo vero imperante sibi patriam deperisse.
obtained had with-him but ruling for-himself his-homeland to-have-perished

Hinc intellecto, quo pergeret intentio deprecaturi, uti suum
hence with-it-understood where was-going the-intent of-one-going-to-beg that his-own
esset, quod ille foret pro patria petiturus, edici
it-be what he would-be for his-homeland going-to-ask to-be-proclaimed
per praeconem iubet: condi Thebas esse permissum
through the-herald he-orders to-be-founded Thebes to-be permitted
in honorem scilicet trium deorum, Mercurii, qui repertor
in honor namely of-three gods of-Mercury who discoverer
luctandi cluat, Herculisque, qui pugillatus invenerit, Pollucis
of-wrestling is-called and-of-Hercules who boxing found of-Pollux
etiam, qui cestibus sit magister. Eoque effectum est, uti
also who of-gauntlets is master and-by-this brought-about it-was that
oraculum Apollinis congrueret cum Alexandri pronuntiatione.
the-oracle of-Apollo agreed with of-Alexander the-proclamation

VIII · THE ATHENIANS DEBATE

At Plataea a priestess foretells Alexander's glory; the magistrate Stasagoras, deposed for removing her, appeals to Athens, which insults Alexander. He demands a thousand talents a year, then ten orators. Aeschines urges peace; Demades, recalling Xerxes' defeat, scorns the boy king and calls the orators the city's watchdogs. Demosthenes praises Aeschines and answers Demades: Athens lacks such generals, words make no weapons, and Tyre and Thebes were no weaklings.

Igitur Alexandro iter e Corintho Plataeas erat, urbem 1
therefore for-Alexander the-journey from Corinth to-Plataea was a-city
quidem illam operis maximi populique, enimvero religioni
indeed that of-work greatest and-of-people but-indeed to-religion
intentam Proserpinae deae, cuius templum etiam erectum ad
devoted of-Proserpina the-goddess whose temple also erected to
magnificentiam visitur. Sed forte illo in tempore annuo
magnificence is-seen but by-chance at-that in time at-the-yearly
sacro tegmen numini parabatur. Coniectura vaticinandi
rite a-covering for-the-deity was-being-prepared the-conjecture of-prophesying
sacerdoti eiusmodi fuit, multum ad gloriam gestarum rerum
for-the-priestess of-this-kind was much for glory of-deeds done
et gerendarum eidem Alexandro auspicari, quod illo
and to-be-done for-the-same Alexander to-be-auspicious that at-that
in tempore sacris supervenisset; idque responsum et ad
in time on-the-rites he-had-come-upon and-this answer both for
spem et gaudium illi fuit, liberaliterque acceptam vatem
hope and joy to-him was and-generously received the-prophetess
a se dimittit. Enim et aliud testimonium vati
from himself he-dismisses for also another testimony for-the-prophetess
ad veridicentiam forte tale provenerat. Stasagorae quippe,
to truthfulness by-chance such had-come-about to-Stasagoras for

magistratui Plataeensium, postea ingresso templum locumque
the-magistrate of-the-Plataeans afterward having-entered the-temple and-the-place
eum, in quo idem tegmen numini texeretur, cum ei
that in which the-same covering for-the-deity was-being-woven when to-it
perexiguum superesset, adversum ea vates, quae
very-little remained against those-things the-prophetess which
secunda Alexandro praecinerat, illi respondit eumque ait
favorable to-Alexander she-had-foretold to-him answered and-him she-says
magistratu suo protinus deponendum. Quod cum inclementius
from-office his at-once to-be-deposed which when rather-harshly
vir ceteroqui melioris conscientiae accepisset, in iram
the-man otherwise of-better conscience had-received into anger
commotionemque conversus increpare vatem falsidicentiae
and-agitation turned to-reproach the-prophetess of-false-speaking
coeperat. Verum ad haec sacerdos: 'Ne sane,' inquit, 'moveare
he-had-begun but to this the-priestess not indeed she-says be-moved
his dictis, o vir; nam cuncta ista, quaeque hominibus
by-these words o man for all those-things and-which by-men
divinitus praenoscuntur, colligi coniecturis argumentisque
by-divine-means are-foreknown to-be-gathered by-conjectures and-by-arguments
praenosci diis sedet. Accipe denique argumentorum
to-be-foreknown to-the-gods it-sits-well receive finally of-the-arguments
vias. Quippe ut illud melioris spei Alexandro diceretur, id
the-ways for that that of-better hope to-Alexander should-be-said at-that
temporis supervenerat, quo insigniri vestis intextu
of-time he-had-come in-which to-be-marked the-garment with-the-weaving
purpurae coeperat. Id enim demum ad ornamentum rei
of-purple had-begun this for at-last for the-ornament of-the-thing
praeparatae adhibebatur. Enimvero, ut vides, iam textu
prepared was-applied but-indeed as you-see now with-the-weave
ferme completo et labore omnis operis absoluto tumet
almost completed and with-the-labor of-all the-work finished swells

ingressus. Igitur quod ista vestis ab opere laboris pausam
your-entry therefore because this garment from the-work of-labor a-pause
haberet, idcirco non ab re visum est tibi quoque
had therefore not from the-matter seemed it-has for-you also
terminum magistratus futurum.' Id cum altius animum
an-end of-office going-to-be this when more-deeply the-mind
Stasagorae descendisset simulque metu ponendae potentiae
of-Stasagoras had-gone-down and-at-the-same-time by-fear of-losing his-power
ageretur, quo vates sibimet, non Stasagorae contraria
he-was-driven because the-prophetess to-himself not to-Stasagoras hostile-things
praedixisset, ipsam illam sacerdotio deduci iubet.
had-foretold her very from-the-priesthood to-be-removed he-orders
Quod cum Alexandro nuntiatur adversum iudicium et 2
which when to-Alexander is-reported against his-judgment and
gratiam suam Stasagoram nisum, graviter infestus eundem
favor his Stasagoras to-have-striven heavily hostile him
illum, ut praedicatum fuerat a sacerdote, spoliat magistratu
that as foretold it-had-been by the-priestess he-strips of-office
sacerdotemque loco restitui iubet. Quod igitur Stasagorae
and-the-priestess to-her-place to-be-restored he-orders since then for-Stasagoras
magistratus ab Atheniensibus datus foret, eo recurrit ibique
the-office by the-Athenians given had-been to-that he-runs-back and-there
iniuriam facti deflens opem ab his, a quibus dignitatem
the-injury of-the-deed lamenting help from those from whom dignity
illam acceperat, imploravit. Animo incitatiore Athenienses ne
that he-had-received implored with-mind more-roused the-Athenians not
verbis quidem a regis contumelia temperavere. Quibus
with-words even from of-the-king insult refrained with-which
acceptis Alexander in hanc sententiam litteras ad Athenienses
received Alexander in this sense a-letter to the-Athenians
dedit: 'Equidem me scio post susceptum patris mei regnum
gave indeed myself I-know after the-taken-up of-father my kingdom

procuratione fortunae iampridem occiduo orbe disposito,
by-the-management of-fortune long-since with-the-western world settled
idque per litteras, pacatisque his partibus et ad auxilium
and-this by letters and-with-pacified these parts and to the-help
exercitus mei commilitio copulatis gratiam reliquis eius studii
of-army my in-fellowship joined favor to-the-rest of-that zeal
fecisse, contentum his modo, qui mecum a Macedonia
to-have-shown content with-those only who with-me from Macedonia
inierant hunc laborem, quorumque comitatu Europa nobis
had-entered-upon this labor and-in-whose company Europe to-us
omnis accesserat. Sed ex his omnibus Thebanos quidem non
all had-come but from these all the-Thebans indeed not
levi de causa occidione interemi. De Atheniensibus vero spes
light for reason with-slaughter I-destroyed about the-Athenians but hope
mihi erat dextros mihi satis et obsequentes futuros. Enim
to-me was favorable to-me enough and obliging going-to-be for
cum secus dictis vos insolentibus velitatos audierim,
since otherwise in-words you insolent to-have-skirmished I-have-heard
accipite sententiam meam non verborum scilicet agmine
receive opinion my not of-words namely with-a-column
gloriantem — quod decentius fieret a potentiore—,
boasting which more-fittingly would-be-done by the-more-powerful
verum uti sciatis boni vos consulturos, si praeceptis
but that you-may-know good you going-to-take if to-precepts
mandatisque nostris libentem operam commodetis. Aut enim
and-commands our willing effort you-lend either for
meliores esse oportet aut melioribus obsequentes. E qua re
better to-be it-behooves or to-the-better obedient from which matter
mille annua talenta dependi mihi ab Atheniensibus iubeo.'
a-thousand yearly talents to-be-paid to-me by the-Athenians I-order

Ad haec illi rescribunt: ‘Non nos diffitemur et patris tui 3
to this they write-back not we deny both of-father your
vita diu offensos et eius morte gavisos esse; quod idem
by-the-life long offended and by-his death glad to-have-been that the-same
iam coepimus tui quoque velle, iuvenis inconsultissime, cum
now we-have-begun of-you also to-wish young-man most-rash since
tibi ab Atheniensibus dependenda mille talenta scripseris,
to-you by the-Athenians to-be-paid a-thousand talents you-have-written
uti scilicet inter nos principium bellandi parares. Quod
that namely among us a-beginning of-warring you-might-prepare but
si tibi tanta est confidentia, paratioribus occursabis.’ His
if to-you so-great is confidence better-prepared-men you-will-meet to-these
rescribit Alexander in haec verba: ‘Iam quidem miseram
writes-back Alexander in these words already indeed I-had-sent
Leontam, qui vos excisos linguis ulcisci vecordiae potuisset
Leontas who you cut-out with-tongues to-punish of-madness could-have
vestrosque una oratores ad me perducere. Enim consultius
and-your together orators to me to-bring for more-prudent
visum est ipsum me ad evertendas Athenas protinus militare,
seemed it-has myself me for overthrowing Athens at-once to-campaign
quia iussis nostris obieceritis contumaciam. Si igitur
because to-commands our you-opposed defiance if then
declinando huic experimento consulitis, decem oratores vestros
for-declining this trial you-provide ten orators your
ad me deduci patiemini. Hoc enim modo reliquorum
to me to-be-brought you-will-allow this for in-way of-the-rest
urbisque vestrae habebitur ratio.’ Hisce Alexandri litteris
and-of-city your will-be-held account with-these of-Alexander letters
cum hoc tantum, non se facturos esse, superscripsissent,
when this only not themselves going-to-do to-be they-had-written-above
eandem epistolam referri protinus mandavere. Quae
the-same letter to-be-carried-back at-once they-ordered which

causa cum mox curiam contraxisset deliberationi praesentium
cause when soon the-senate had-convened for-deliberation of-the-present
necessariam, orator Aeschines in haec verba contionatus est:
necessary the-orator Aeschines in these words harangued has
4 'Etsi video, Athenienses viri, quantum nos impendeat
although I-see Athenian men how-much us threatens
ex praesenti, propiusque et saluti vestrae communi et
from the-present and-nearer both to-safety your common and
voluntatibus stare dedi nos Alexandri voluntati,
to-wishes to-stand to-be-surrendered us of-Alexander to-the-will
tamen comprehendisse me sentio *** neque commodis
yet to-have-grasped me I-feel (lacuna) neither to-interests
vestris neque, quod ad nos pertinet, saluti propius videri,
your nor what to us pertains to-safety nearer to-seem
quam si in hac sententia perseveretis, uti condicionibus
than if in this opinion you-persist that to-the-conditions
regiis praeceptisque pareamus. Non enim inani iactantia
royal and-commands we-obey not for from-empty boasting
periculum periclitandi videor mihi hanc fovere sententiam,
the-danger of-risking I-seem to-myself this to-cherish opinion
sed quod intuear spem cupiti infirmiorem, cum et
but because I-see the-hope of-the-desired weaker since both
Alexandri institutionem et Philippi vehementiam recordor
of-Alexander the-upbringing and of-Philip the-violence I-recall
atque considero. Etenim Philippo adrogantiae mos propior
and consider for in-Philip of-arrogance the-way closer
erat, Alexandro vero adsunt Aristotelis disciplinae. Neque
was in-Alexander but are-present of-Aristotle the-teachings nor
in hoc ducor, ut qui illis educationibus laborarit, non
into this am-I-led that who in-those upbringings has-labored not
his reverentiam deferat, a quibus ortae sunt sibi hae
to-these reverence he-should-pay from whom arisen have for-him these

disciplinae ipsique ars regnandi sit tradita. Quare
disciplines and-to-him-himself the-art of-ruling be handed-down wherefore
fiet, profecto fiet, ut omnem intentionem
it-will-come-about surely it-will-come-about that all the-intent
animi, quam ad nos armasse videbatur, in benivolentiam
of-mind which against us to-have-armed seemed into goodwill
protinus vertat, nisi mavultis mage arma hominis experiri.'
at-once be-turn unless you-prefer rather the-arms of-the-man to-try
In hanc fere sententiam cum Aeschines perorasset, Demades 5
in this nearly opinion when Aeschines had-concluded Demades
e numero oratorum, viribus haud contemnendus, intervenit
from the-number of-the-orators in-strength not to-be-despised intervened
atque hinc oritur: 'Quousque tandem, Aeschines, meditatis
and thence rises how-long at-last Aeschines with-studied
hisce et ad mollitiem effeminatioribus verbis timiditates
these and toward softness more-effeminate words timidities
nobis et dissolutiones Atheniensibus struis territans nos
for-us and slacknesses for-the-Athenians do-you-build terrifying us
et avertens a belli studiis, quibus inclyti semper atque
and turning-away from of-war the-pursuits in-which famous always and
inopinabiles fuimus? Aut quae te tam infesta caelestium
unexpected we-have-been or what you so hostile of-the-heaven-dwellers
vis in haec verba sollicitat, cum tu suaseris et merito olim
force into these words provokes since you urged and deservedly once
constanterque persuaseris arma nos sumere adversum Persas
and-steadfastly persuaded arms us to-take-up against the-Persians
et in illa tot hostium milia instructos ferme sola
and against those so-many of-enemies thousands drawn-up almost by-the-sole
animi virtute militasse, at nunc contra, quasi intentos
of-mind valor to-have-fought but now on-the-contrary as-if drawn
arcus, sic idem obfirmatas sententias nostras remittendas ac
bows so the-same steadfast opinions our to-be-slackened and

relaxandas putes? Censesne igitur vitandam declinandamque
to-be-relaxed you-think do-you-think then to-be-avoided and-declined
nobis pueritiam cum tyrannide, duo nomina inconsultissima,
by-us boyhood with tyranny two names most-rash
freta temeritate sola et audacia patris confidentissimi?
relying on-recklessness alone and daring of-a-father most-confident
Deinde illi nos horum tela atque aciem perhorrebimus,
then those we of-these the-weapons and line shall-dread
qui Xerxae milia averterimus, Lacedaemonios vicerimus,
who of-Xerxes the-thousands turned-away the-Lacedaemonians conquered
Corinthios straverimus, Megares in fugam verterimus,
the-Corinthians laid-low the-Megarians into flight turned
Zacynthios exciderimus? Nosne ergo Alexandro illi quem
the-Zacynthians destroyed shall-we then to-Alexander that whom
dixi, ut Aeschines suadet, vitabimus obviare?
I-spoke-of as Aeschines urges avoid to-meet
6 Enimvero ait memorem illum magisterii vestri
but-indeed he-says mindful him of-teaching your
disciplinarumque, quas apud nostros peritos acceperit,
and-of-disciplines which among our experts he-received
et pudore flectendum et reverentia molliendum vultusque
both by-shame to-be-bent and by-reverence to-be-softened and-faces
ipsos nostros religione praeteritae consuetudinis minime
themselves our from-religion of-past custom least
aspernaturum. O rem ridiculam et puerilis, me dius fidius,
going-to-despise o thing laughable and of-puerile me god's faith
abiectaeque sententiae! Absentes nos contumeliis lacessivit
and-of-abject opinion absent us with-insults he-has-provoked
et ad supplicium dedi sibi tyrannico spiritu postulat
and to punishment to-be-surrendered to-him with-tyrannical spirit demands
et interitum nostrum molitur civitatisque praeludit exitium
and the-destruction our contrives and-of-the-city rehearses the-ruin

is, a quo praesenti nobis humanitatem istam et amicitiam
he from whom present to-us humanity this and friendship
hariolamini. Neque illud mage nunc ante oculos venit,
you-prophesy nor that more now before our-eyes comes
Stasagoram nostrum Plataeensium magistratu deiectum? in
Stasagoras our of-the-Plataeans from-office cast-down in
cuius scilicet contumelia nostra iniuria continetur, quod
whose namely insult our injury is-contained because
illud, quidquid nostrum universitati moliatur, in illo priore
that whatever against-our whole-body he-contrives in that earlier-case
signaverit. Is ergo exspectabitur, ut praesentia nostra
he-has-marked he then will-be-awaited that by-presence our
moveatur, quem Stasagorae purpura et magistratus facesque
he-be-moved whom of-Stasagoras the-purple and the-office and-fasces
minime moverunt, cum in illius unius nominis dignitate
least moved when in that one name's dignity
puero isti universae Atheniensium curiae maiestas obviaret
to-boy that of-the-whole Athenian senate the-majesty met
atque oculis eius sese et vultibus ostentaret, siquid tamen
and to-the-eyes his itself and to-the-face showed if-anything yet
recte sapere didicisset? Is ergo nostram praesentiam mitius
rightly to-know he-had-learned he then our presence more-gently
opperietur, an mage, cum semel in eius manus potestatemque
will-await or rather when once into his hands and-power
venerimus, dedet suppliciis ultionibusque poenalibus?
we-have-come will-surrender to-tortures and-to-vengeances penal
Et haec quidem sint dicta de moribus. Huc tamen addite 7
and these-things indeed let-be said about his-manners hither yet add
aliquid etiam de eius aetate, in qua aestimatu perfacile est,
something also about his age in which to-reckon very-easy it-is
quod illa dimicare forsitan confidentius, consulere dementius
that it to-fight perhaps more-confidently to-consult more-madly

possit. Enimvero, ait, Tyrios excidit: neque enim poterant
can but-indeed he-says the-Tyrians he-destroyed nor for could
illi forsitan restitisse. Thebanos evertit: non illos quidem
they perhaps to-have-resisted the-Thebans he-overthrew not them indeed
inertes aut belli artibus alienos, sed enim frequentibus
idle or of-war to-the-arts strangers but indeed with-frequent
admodum discriminibus fatigatos. Peloponnesios, ait,
very dangers wearied the-Peloponnesians he-says
captivitate subiecit, neque hoc addit: non bello, non telis,
to-captivity he-subjected nor this he-adds not by-war not by-weapons
enimvero lue corruptos et fame. Hic nunc, si placet, hic
but-indeed by-plague corrupted and by-famine here now if it-pleases here
sane proferte in medium nostra Xerxique experimenta,
indeed bring-forward into the-middle our and-against-Xerxes trials
qui mare molibus presserit, qui altum illud navibus straverit,
who the-sea with-moles pressed who the-deep that with-ships paved
qui terram illam omnem exercitu suo texerit, qui aëra ipsum
who the-land that whole with-army his covered who the-air itself
telis iaculisque velaverit. Deinde illum quidem Persen adeo
with-missiles and-javelins veiled then that indeed Persian so
spirantem et confidentem abegimus incensis eius navibus
breathing and confident we-drove-off with-burned his ships
aut etiam superatis, et tot illa milia exercitus ab hac
or even overcome and so-many those thousands of-army from this
civitate repulimus Cynaegiro et Antiphonte et Mnesicharmo
city we-repelled with-Cynaegirus and Antiphon and Mnesicharmus
aliisque non multis illi violentiae occursantibus. Nunc autem
and-others not many that violence meeting now but
nos, quorum duces roburque virium enumerare difficile est,
we whose leaders and-the-vigor of-strength to-enumerate difficult is
reniti Alexandro declinabimus, puero confidenti, et hisce
to-resist Alexander shall-we-decline a-boy confident and to-these

noxiis satellitibus, qui imprudenti imprudentius obsequentes
guilty attendants who to-the-imprudent more-imprudently obeying
temeritatem eius praecipitare mage poterunt quam fulcire?
the-recklessness his to-hurl-headlong rather will-be-able than to-prop
At quos — id per deos deliberate — quos tandem destinandos 8
but whom this by the-gods consider whom at-last to-be-sent
Aeschines censeat decem pariter oratores? Eosne omnes,
Aeschines proposes ten equally orators them all
quorum singulis saepe salutis vestrae consilia rexistis?
by-whose individual often of-safety your the-counsels you-have-directed
Neque hoc videtis Alexandrum vobis subtili quodam et
nor this do-you-see Alexander to-you by-subtle certain and
clandestino consilio monstrasse, quid illud sit tandem, quo
secret plan to-have-shown what that is at-last by-which
ipse quoque intelligat se disparem Atheniensibus fore?
he-himself also understands himself unequal to-the-Athenians going-to-be
Quippe cum in rebus agendis bellicis pariter atque civilibus
for since in affairs to-be-done of-war equally and civil
omne factum fundari stabilirique videatur utilitate
every deed to-be-founded and-established seems by-the-usefulness
consilii, ut tunc demum rectius atque consultius manuum
of-counsel so-that then at-last more-rightly and more-prudently of-hands
opera subsequatur, id ipsum vobis avertere ac praevenire
the-work follows this very-thing from-you to-turn-away and to-forestall
conatur, ut veluti inermem ratem sollertia gubernantis sic
he-tries that as an-unarmed raft by-the-skill of-the-helmsman so
vos urbemque Atheniensium totam desertos consiliariis vestris
you and-the-city of-the-Athenians whole deserted by-counselors your
opprimat et incurset. In quo ne quid a militibus de
he-may-crush and attack in which lest anything from soldiers about
oratoribus dixerim: equidem puto vel canes decem solo
orators I-should-have-said indeed I-think even dogs ten by-the-sole

latratu suo et infestissimis lupis et ceteris bestiis terrori
barking their both to-most-hostile wolves and to-the-other beasts a-terror
esse, etiamsi in illos dente nil valeant; his vero
to-be even-if against them with-tooth nothing they-avail with-these but
quiescentibus aut facessentibus vel ignavissimam bestiam totis
quiet or departing even the-most-cowardly beast to-whole
gregibus perniciosam satis atque infestam esse consuesse.'
flocks destructive enough and hostile to-be to-be-wont
9 In hanc fere sententiam Demades dixerat. At vero Athenienses
in this nearly opinion Demades had-spoken but indeed the-Athenians
Demosthenis tunc consilia flagitabant, quod scilicet eius
of-Demosthenes then the-counsels demanded because namely his
viri orationisque maiestas saepe eorum commoda
of-the-man and-of-speech the-majesty often their interests
consiliaque rexisset. Tum dicitur is orator consurrexisse,
and-counsels had-directed then is-said that orator to-have-risen
manuque de populo tumultuante silentium poscens in
and-with-his-hand from the-people in-uproar silence demanding into
haec erupit: 'O cives viri! placet enim in praesenti vos
these-words he-burst o citizens men it-pleases for at the-present you
hac communi nostrum appellatione nominare, ut scilicet
by-this common our appellation to-name that namely
sub nomine adfectus huiusmodi intelligi promptius sit,
under the-name of-feeling of-this-kind to-be-understood more-readily it-be
quidquid omnium dixero, id non meo mage quam communi
whatever of-all I-say that not for-my rather than for-common
scilicet vestrum commodo profuturum. Agitur enim haec
namely your advantage going-to-profit is-conducted for this
curia, ut video, super tractatu, utrumne vobis arma adversum
senate as I-see about the-question whether by-you arms against
Alexandrum sint sumenda, an vero nobis eius condicionibus
Alexander are to-be-taken-up or indeed by-us his conditions

obsequendum. In quo quidem accedere me laudareque Aeschini
to-be-obeyed in which indeed to-assent me and-to-praise of-Aeschines
sententiam non segniter profitebor. Usus est enim oratione
the-opinion not sluggishly I-will-profess used he-has for a-speech
admodum modesta et temperantissima, ex qua videtur
very modest and most-temperate from which he-seems
neque viribus nostris diffidere, si bellandum foret, neque
neither strength our to-distrust if to-be-warred were nor
contemplatione harumce praesentia commoda neglexisse.
in-contemplation of-these the-present interests to-have-neglected
Enimvero quoniam haec illo dicente a multis audio sic 10
but-indeed since these-things with-him speaking by many I-hear so
accepta ut segnis cuiusdam et alieni de bello sententiam,
received as of-a-sluggish certain-man and foreign about war an-opinion
interim nunc ad orationem eam transeam, qua Demades
meanwhile now to the-speech that I-pass which Demades
usus, robustus sane ille vir ac disertissimus, ita in suadendo
used sturdy truly that man and most-eloquent so in persuading
peroravit, ut nos putaret exemplis olim felicium gloriarum ad
he-concluded that us he-thought by-examples of-once happy glories to
praesentia quoque pericula producendos. Ait enim nos Xerxem
the-present also dangers to-be-led-forth he-says for us Xerxes
finibus eiecisse, Cynaegiro scilicet duce et hisce, qui
from-the-borders to-have-expelled with-Cynaegirus namely as-leader and these who
una cum ipso militabant. Ad quam partem orationis quaeso,
together with him were-fighting to which part of-the-speech I-ask
Demade, ut paulisper ea, quibus magnopere confidebas,
Demades that for-a-little those-things in-which greatly you-trusted
mecum conferre tractareve ne dubites. Quid enim tandem
with-me to-compare or-handle not you-hesitate what for at-last
mihi diceres, si a te exactum iri vellem, uti tales
to-me would-you-say if from you demanded to-be-going I-wished that such

aliquos nunc mihi etiam duces promeres ac tum demum
some now to-me also leaders you-should-produce and then at-last
in Alexandrum hortarere? Quod si illi non adsunt
against Alexander you-should-urge-us but if those not are-present
tales aut tot, utique nobis quoque sunt consilia tutioris
such or so-many surely for-us also are counsels of-safer
commodi volutanda considerandumque prae omnibus, an
advantage to-be-turned-over and-to-be-considered above all whether
praesentibus commodis periculorum gloria praeoptanda sit. Non
to-present interests of-dangers the-glory to-be-preferred be not
enim si orationis plusculum in curiam detulerimus aut compta
for if of-speech a-little-more into the-senate we-have-brought or neat
satis atque ornatiora verba prompserimus, exim nobis aliquid
enough and more-adorned words we-have-produced thence to-us any
virium accessurum est et arma fabricanda nova de verbis.
of-strength going-to-accrue is and arms to-be-forged new from words
11 At dices magnum illum et potentissimum regem Xerxem
but you-will-say great that and most-powerful king Xerxes
fuisse, sed eundem nostro apparatu superatum. Donamus.
to-have-been but the-same by-our equipment overcome we-grant
Et quamquam haud dubie profitendum sit nos illius viribus
and although not doubtfully to-be-confessed be-it us than-his strength
minores longe fuisse, consilio vero vel prudentia potiores,
less far to-have-been in-counsel but or prudence superior
nunc tamen intelligo videoque ne illud quidem Alexandro
now yet I-understand and-see that-not that even to-Alexander
deesse, quo a nobis Xerxes potuerit superari. Tredecim
to-be-lacking by-which by us Xerxes could to-be-overcome thirteen
ferme iam numero eius bella pariter et victoriae numerantur,
almost already in-number his wars equally and victories are-counted
civitatesque illi innumerae, quin immo provinciae consensere,
and-cities to-him countless but nay provinces have-agreed

aut quae contumacius sponte cedere detrectaverint,
or which more-defiantly of-their-own-accord to-yield refused
subiugatae. Quae quam dant consiliis viam, nisi ut
are-subjugated which-things what do-they-give to-counsels a-way unless that
periculo careamus? Videlicet Tyrii imbelles, ut ait Demades,
from-danger we-be-free evidently the-Tyrians unwarlike as says Demades
fuere et idcirco superati. Illi sunt Tyrii, qui adversum
were and therefore overcome they are the-Tyrians who against
classem innumeram Xerxi confidentissime restiterunt atque
the-fleet countless of-Xerxes most-confidently resisted and
eam deinceps incenderunt. Inermes, inquit, Thebani. Illine
it thereafter burned unarmed he-says the-Thebans those
qui omne aevum omnemque aetatem suam non in bellis
who every age and-all lifetime their not in wars
modo, verum in victoriis consumpserunt?
only but in victories spent

IX · ATHENS YIELDS, SPARTA FALLS

Demosthenes argues that Alexander spares those who resist him, has won Egypt and founded Alexandria, and wins nations by kindness; Athens sends him a golden crown. Alexander answers, recalling Athens' ingratitude to its own great men, and forgives the city, praising Demosthenes most. Sparta resists by land and sea, is burned, submits, and is left free. Darius consults his satraps; his brother Oxyathres tells him to imitate Alexander, who fights in the front line.

Addit etiam Peloponnesios non bello victos, sed fame 12
he-adds also the-Peloponnesians not by-war conquered but by-famine
lueque superatos: quibus quidem Peloponnesiis Alexandrum
and-plague overcome to-whom indeed Peloponnesians Alexander
satis constat frumenta quoque laborantibus direxisse, adeo
enough it-is-agreed grain also to-them-laboring to-have-directed so

ut Antigono, duce Alexandri, resistente, quod hisce vires
that with-Antigonus as-leader of-Alexander resisting because to-these strength
et alimonias destinaret, quibuscum sibi mox foret bello
and supplies he-was-sending with-whom for-himself soon it-would-be by-war
et proeliis decernendum, Alexandrum respondisse sit palam:
and battles to-be-decided Alexander to-have-answered be openly
'Ut,' inquit, 'intrinsecus eos et inter se decertantes bello
that he-says internally them and among themselves fighting by-war
vincam, nec gloriae meae palmam luis sibi aut
I-may-conquer nor of-glory my the-palm of-plague for-themselves or
famis nomina vindicent.' Et haec quidem ita sint. Mirari
of-famine the-names may-claim and these-things indeed so let-be to-wonder
tamen vos inter haec non oportet Stasagoram magistratu
yet you among these-things not it-behooves Stasagoras from-office
esse deiectum, cum indignatio illa vobis utilitatique communi
to-be cast-down since indignation that to-you and-to-advantage common
proficiat. Nam si Atheniensis Stasagoras aeque quam sacerdos
profits for if an-Athenian Stasagoras equally as priestess
illa templi nostratis est, quam magistratus ille privaverat
that of-the-temple of-our-country is whom magistrate that had-deprived
sacerdotio, nonne praevenisse indignationem vestram et
of-the-priesthood not to-have-forestalled indignation your and
sententias videtur Alexander, cum illam iniuriam in auctorem
opinions seems Alexander since that injury upon the-author
verterit, quam Stasagoras fecerat in sacerdotem, omniaque,
he-turned which Stasagoras had-done against the-priestess and-all
quae ille in contumeliam nostram fecerit, perinde ultus sit,
which he for insult our had-done just-as avenged he-has
ut a nobis quoque ulciscenda esse praesumeret?'
as by us also to-be-avenged to-be he-presumed

In hisce etiam nunc Demosthenis oratio versabatur et 13
in these-things even now of-Demosthenes the-speech was-occupied and
adclamatio protinus nimia Amphictyonum erat et tumultus
an-acclaim at-once excessive of-the-Amphictyons was and an-uproar
incongruus. Ac Demadi silentium iubebatur, laudari vero
unfitting and on-Demades silence was-ordered to-be-praised but
nonnunquam Aeschines ab optumo quoque. Sed enim consensus
sometimes Aeschines by the-best each but indeed the-agreement
populi universus ire in sententiam Demosthenis. Cum
of-the-people whole to-go into the-opinion of-Demosthenes when
igitur obortum strepitum is orator aliquantulum compressisset,
then the-risen din that orator a-little had-checked
sic reliqua subnexuit: 'Patiamini,' inquit, 'quaeso, Athenienses
thus the-rest he-subjoined allow-me he-says I-beg Athenian
viri, ut etiam nunc ad illa, quae Demades magnopere
men that also now to those-things which Demades greatly
dixerat, respondeam. Ait enim Xerxem maria quidem
had-said I-may-answer he-says for Xerxes the-seas indeed
muro munisse, profundum etiam navibus constravisse,
with-a-wall to-have-fortified the-deep also with-ships to-have-paved
exercitu Graeciam complevisse, aëra ipsum subtexuisse
with-army Greece to-have-filled the-air itself to-have-veiled
iaculis et sagittis, gentem Persidos denique superduxisse
with-javelins and arrows the-nation of-Persia finally to-have-led-over
captivitatibus Graeciae. Laudamusne igitur eius potentiam, qui
to-the-captivities of-Greece do-we-praise then his power who
haec fecerit, an exsecramur, quod urbes Graeciae spolians
these-things did or do-we-curse because the-cities of-Greece despoiling
suam barbariem frequentaverit? Quid ergo ad haec exempla
his barbarism he-crowded why then to these examples
Alexandrum provocamus? qui Graecorum quidem, quisque sibi
Alexander do-we-challenge who of-the-Greeks indeed each-one to-him

restiterit, non captivitati addixerit, sed victoriae liberalitate
resisted not to-captivity has-consigned but of-victory with-liberality
correxerit unaque secum coegerit militare, professus palam
has-set-right and-together with-himself compelled to-campaign having-professed openly
id esse votum regno et potentiae suae, ut amicos
this to-be the-wish for-the-kingdom and the-power his that friends
quidem adficeret beneficiis, inimicos vero transduceret ad
indeed he-might-affect with-kindnesses enemies but he-might-bring-over to
amicitias. Quod si id illi votum et propositum fuit,
friendships but if this to-him the-wish and purpose was
Athenienses nos, qui amici Alexandro fuerimus, qui magisteria
Athenians we who friends to-Alexander have-been who teachings
nostra eidem praeiverimus, inimici tanto viro malumus
our to-him have-led-the-way enemies to-so-great a-man do-we-prefer
esse quam amici? Id vero ego dici turpe Atheniensibus
to-be than friends this indeed I to-be-said shameful for-the-Athenians
puto, fieri posse porro non arbitror. Turpe enim est nos
think to-be-done to-be-able further not I-think shameful for it-is us
quidem, qui illi magistri fuerimus, consilio imprudentissimos
indeed who to-him teachers have-been in-counsel most-imprudent
deprehendi, illum autem, qui a nobis has scientiarum artes
to-be-detected him but who from us these of-the-sciences arts
acceperit, prudentia nos et sapientia praevenire.
received in-prudence us and in-wisdom to-surpass

14 Sed haec omittamus. Ad illa nunc animos advertite.
but these-things let-us-omit to those-things now your-minds turn
Quis rex tyrannusve quisque Graecorum imperatorum
what king or-tyrant each of-the-Greek commanders
Aegyptum aliquando adgredi aut inruere ausus est, quod ille
Egypt ever to-attack or to-rush-upon dared has which he
solus cum deorum auctoritate fecit? Clementiam suam reapse
alone with of-the-gods authority did clemency his in-fact

sic et beneficiis commendavit, ut tantam illic urbem condiderit
so and by-kindnesses he-commended that so-great there a-city he-founded
ac fundaverit, quantam sub omni orbe terrarum nullam fama
and established as-great-as under the-whole world of-lands none rumor
distulerit, idque in his regionibus factum, quae nuper agere
spread and-this in these regions done which lately to-live
Persae sub dicione videbantur. Enimvero ipsis indigenis id
the-Persians under sway seemed but-indeed with-the-very natives this
petentibus ac deprecantibus, qui cum Alexandro belli fortunam
seeking and entreating who with Alexander of-war the-fortune
subire deligerent, ille Alexander, ille, inquam, quem vos mente
to-undergo chose he Alexander he I-say whom you of-mind
captum et percitum nominatis, hac Aegyptios oratione
bereft and frenzied name with-this the-Egyptians speech
compressit, qua diceret idcirco se illis tantam civitatem
restrained in-which he-said for-this-reason himself for-them so-great a-city
urbemque condidisse, ut ipsis exercentibus terram et quieti
and-town to-have-founded that with-them working the-land and to-quiet
indulgentibus ac remissis ille pro universis subditis militaret.
indulging and relaxed he for all the-subjects might-campaign
Perfecit igitur partim experimentis et ostentatione virtutis 15
he-accomplished then partly by-proofs and display of-valor
partim ratione pariter et oratione prudenti, ut non solum
partly by-reason equally and speech prudent that not only
parere ei libentibus sit Aegyptiis, verum etiam ad ea
to-obey him willing be for-the-Egyptians but also to those-things
pendenda, quaecumque sint regibus necessaria, faciles animos
to-be-paid whatever be for-kings necessary ready minds
habeant et voluntatem. Videte denique, quae quantaque primus
they-have and will see finally what and-how-great first
omnium apud Aegyptum imperii sui iecerit fundamenta. Quot
of-all among Egypt of-empire his he-laid the-foundations how-many

enim exercitus milia urbs illa alere possit, haud dubium est,
for of-the-army thousands city that to-feed could not doubtful it-is
neque his modo subficiens, qui moenibus suis atque gremio
nor for-these only sufficing who in-walls its and in-bosom
teneantur, sed procul etiam laborantibus et dimicantibus
are-held but far-away also for-those-laboring and fighting
idonea sustentatrix, una viris unaque his omnibus, quae
a-fit sustainer at-once in-men and-at-once in-these all-things which
sint multitudini necessaria, opulens et abundans, facilis ad
be for-a-multitude necessary rich and abundant easy for
oboedientiam regis, prudentia eius scilicet, qui sic instituerit
obedience to-the-king by-the-prudence of-him namely who so has-established
obsequentium mores. Alimoniam petit: protinus parent.
of-the-obedient the-manners provision he-seeks at-once they-obey
Auro indiget: sunt vectigalia ditia. Militem quaerit: animis
gold he-needs there-are revenues rich a-soldier he-seeks with-minds
volentibus praesto sunt. Et hisce nos opponemus periculum
willing at-hand they-are and to-these we shall-oppose the-danger
nostrum, quibus utique per concordiam copulati auctiores esse
our with-whom surely through concord joined greater to-be
instructioresque poterimus, lacessitis vero, ne quid infaustius
and-more-equipped we-shall-be-able provoked but lest anything more-ill-omened
dicam, semper in armis et proeliis?' In hanc sententiam
I-say always in arms and battles to this opinion
Demosthenis omnis Atheniensium numerus congruebat.
of-Demosthenes all of-the-Athenians the-number agreed
Decernit denique coronam auream Alexandro esse mittendam
decrees finally a-crown golden to-Alexander to-be to-be-sent
pondo quinquaginta consultumque ordinis sui, quo gratiarum
by-weight fifty and-a-decree of-order its by-which of-thanks
actio teneretur, una legatis, qui honoratissimi forent eius
the-expression was-contained together with-envoys who most-honored were of-that

urbis, dummodo ab illa oratorum transmissione temperaretur.
city provided-that from that of-orators sending-over it-be-refrained
Profecta ergo legatio cum apud Plataeas regem Alexandrum
having-set-out then the-embassy when at Plataea king Alexander
offendisset insinuassetque mandata et Demosthenis una
it-had-found and-had-conveyed the-commands and of-Demosthenes together
suasionem consensumque Amphictyonum universorum, ad
the-persuasion and-agreement of-the-Amphictyons all to
eiusmodi responsum regis benivolentia protinus transfertur:
of-this-kind an-answer of-the-king by-goodwill at-once is-transferred
'Scriberem vobis, Athenienses, ut rex, sed ab hac me 16
I-would-write to-you Athenians as king but from this me
appellatione distulerim, donicum omni barbaria subiugata
title I-should-defer until with-all barbarism subjugated
adfectus hic meus nomini Graeco proficiat. Enim quoniam
affection this my to-the-name Greek may-profit for since
iampridem scripseram decem oratores vestros ad me destinari,
long-since I-had-written ten orators your to me to-be-sent
quod eorum culpa inobsequentiae argueremini, scire vos par
because by-their fault of-disobedience you-were-accused to-know you right
est non eo me istud consilio fecisse, quo potentiam
it-is not with-that me this plan to-have-done by-which power
meam in eos, quorum disciplinis institutus essem, aliquis
my against those in-whose teachings educated I-had-been anyone
experiretur. Etenim si id facto opus esset, utique una cum
should-experience for if this of-deed need were surely together with
exercitu martioque terrore ad vestra moenia transcendissem.
the-army and-martial terror to your walls I-would-have-crossed
Sed quoniam haec ostentatio inimica vel hostica est, idcirco
but since this display hostile or enemy-like is therefore
prudentissimos vestrum convenire conloquio meo malui, ut
the-wisest of-you to-meet in-conversation my I-preferred that

cum his communis commodi disceptator subsicui metus vos
with these of-common advantage as-arbiter of-supplementary fear you
formidine solverem. Enimvero vos, qui conscientia premeremini,
from-dread I-might-free but-indeed you who by-conscience were-pressed
nihil omnino sanctum erga mea obsequia consultantes, quin
nothing at-all sacred toward my compliance consulting nay
etiam explorantes idoneum tempus, quo meos Macedonas
even searching-out a-suitable time in-which my Macedonians
infestaretis, id animi prodidistis, quod adversum nos tunc
you-might-attack that of-mind you-have-betrayed which against us then
etiam habuissetis, cum patre meo Zacynthios oppugnante
also you-had when with-father my the-Zacynthians attacking
auxiliatores diversae parti fueritis. Contra autem cum vos
helpers to-the-opposite side you-were on-the-other but when you
a Corinthiis oppugnaremini, Macedonum auxiliis et eorum
by the-Corinthians were-attacked of-the-Macedonians with-the-help and their
subfragiis potiti Corinthiorum vim a vobis repulsam
votes having-obtained of-the-Corinthians the-force from you repelled
esse meministis. Rursusque nobis Minervae simulacrum
to-be you-remember and-again to-us of-Minerva an-image
ritu vestro erigentibus in Macedonia vos simulacra et
in-rite your erecting in Macedonia you the-images and
imagines patris mei e templis ac sacris vestris deponendas
portraits of-father my from temples and rites your to-be-taken-down
esse duxistis. Egregiam igitur vicem pro tot et talibus
to-be you-thought an-excellent then return for so-many and such
beneficiis a vobis accepimus.
kindnesses from you we-have-received

17 Quae profecto vos etiam ad praesentem discordiam memoria
which surely you also to the-present discord the-memory
iniquitatis vestrae ducebat, non sinens utique animo nostro
of-unfairness your led not allowing surely to-mind our

benignitatique confidere, ob id vel maxime, ne quando maiestate
and-to-kindness to-trust for this even most lest ever by-majesty
hac regia sublimatus ad ultionem praeteritae iniuriae magis
this royal exalted to vengeance of-past injury rather
quam ad adfectum civicum raperer. Verum id neque mihi
than to affection civic I-should-be-swept but that neither to-me
ad naturam est neque civica religio permittit, cum me quoque
for nature is nor civic religion allows since me also
apud vos studentem et ipsi Atheniensem esse malueritis,
among you studying and you-yourselves an-Athenian to-be preferred
et ego nomine hoc participato me glorier gloriatusque sim.
and I with-name this shared myself should-glory and-gloried have
Enim intelligo naturale vobis esse sic sapere, cum praeterita
for I-understand natural for-you to-be so to-think since past
quoque exempla in eos, quorum consiliis uteremini, hostili
also examples against those of-whose counsels you-made-use with-hostile
vos animo fuisse testentur. Sic Euclidem praedicatum
you mind to-have-been bear-witness thus Euclides proclaimed
apud vos sinceritate suadendi clausum carcere necavistis. Sic
among you for-sincerity of-advising shut in-prison you-killed thus
Demosthenem porro, cuius urbs vestra oratione pariter staret
Demosthenes further by-whose city your speech equally stood
et cura, in exilium proiecistis. Tum Alcibiadem legationes
and care into exile you-cast then Alcibiades embassies
vestras naviter apud Cyrum et efficaciter prosecutum curiae
your zealously with Cyrus and effectively having-carried-out of-senate
vestrae consortio abrelegastis. Sapientiae denique totius apud
your from-the-fellowship you-banished of-wisdom finally whole among
vos Socratem magistrum iniustissima morte multastis. Ingrati
you Socrates the-master with-most-unjust death you-punished ungrateful
Philippo, qui tribus bellis auxilio vobis et subpetiis fuit;
to-Philip who in-three wars as-help to-you and support was

quique queramini de Alexandro velut ob Stasagorae iniuriam,
and-who complain about Alexander as for of-Stasagoras injury
quae omnis vindictae vestrae profecerat. Idem enim Stasagoras
which all for-vengeance your had-profited the-same for Stasagoras
sacerdotem Atheniensem sacerdotii vestri dignitate privaverat.
a-priestess Athenian of-priesthood your of-dignity had-deprived
18 Enimvero quoniam ista haec nunc omnia ex animo et memoria
but-indeed since these these now all from mind and memory
nostra placuit aboleri, sic vobis ad praesentiam responsum
our it-has-pleased to-be-abolished thus to-you for the-present an-answer
habetote: probatas mihi satis laudatasque esse suasiones
have approved by-me enough and-praised to-be the-persuasions
Aeschini, Demadem quoque non improbari, quod constantiam
of-Aeschines Demades also not to-be-disapproved because constancy
suam civibus curiae probatam vellet, sed enim laudari
his to-the-citizens of-the-senate approved he-wished but indeed to-be-praised
praecipue Demosthenem, qui unus verae utilitatis et commodi
especially Demosthenes who alone of-true utility and advantage
vestri tenax ea vobis, quae essent ad amicitiam nostram,
your holding-fast those-things to-you which were for friendship our
suaserit. Sit igitur Atheniensibus dignitas, quae cluebat, neque
urged let-be then to-the-Athenians the-dignity which was-famed nor
ex me quicquam dubium formidaverit, cuius haec est vel
from me anything doubtful let-them-fear of-whom this is even
maxima summa sententiae, ut cum mihi adversum barbaros
the-greatest sum of-opinion that since for-me against the-barbarians
pro libertate communi bellum et inimicitias elegerim, eam
for freedom common war and enmities I-have-chosen that
praecipue urbem Atheniensium tuear, quae theatrum quoddam
especially city of-the-Athenians I-protect which a-theater certain
et communis curia videatur esse Graeciae universae.'
and common senate seems to-be of-Greece whole

Cum in hanc sententiam Alexander Atheniensibus respondisset, 19
when in this sense Alexander to-the-Athenians had-answered
collecto exercitu Lacedaemona proficiscitur. Id enim sibi
with-gathered army to-Lacedaemon he-sets-out this for to-them
vel opportunissimum tempus Lacedaemonii adrogabant,
even most-opportune time the-Lacedaemonians claimed
quo virium suarum potentiam demonstrarent in Alexandri
in-which of-strength their the-power they-might-show in of-Alexander
inimicitiis, cuius concordiam tunc Atheniensium civitas
enmities whose concord then of-the-Athenians the-city
maluisset. Adventanti igitur ad urbem suam obiecta
had-preferred to-him-approaching then toward city their opposed
sunt claustra portarum, classemque armis et militibus
were the-bars of-the-gates and-a-fleet with-arms and soldiers
instruxere, quod utrimque terra vel mari formidolosos se
they-equipped because on-both-sides by-land or sea fearsome themselves
fore Alexandro arbitrarentur. His rex compertis
going-to-be to-Alexander they-thought with-these the-king learned
primum ad eos per epistolam loquitur, qua moneret, uti
first to them through a-letter speaks in-which he-warned that
boni consulerent eamque gloriam bellicam, quam maiores
good they-should-take and-that glory of-war which the-ancestors
sibi strenue peperissent, nullo turpi periculo amitterent
for-them vigorously had-won by-no shameful danger they-should-lose
solverentque. Etenim si quid eorum fortuna in praesentibus
and-dissolve for if anything their fortune in present-things
vacillaret, cunctae quoque priscarum memoriae gloriarum
wavered all also of-ancient memory of-glories
una sibi perituraе viderentur, eventurumque profecto, ut
together for-them going-to-perish would-seem and-going-to-happen surely that
dum Atheniensibus obstinationem suam pergerent ostentare,
while to-the-Athenians obstinacy their they-proceeded to-show

risui potius inimicis quam periculo hostibus forent.
to-laughter rather to-their-enemies than to-danger to-foes they-would-be
Igitur oportere eos navibus derelictis armisque depositis
therefore it-behooves them with-ships abandoned and-arms laid-down
amicitiae suae potius quam armorum capere experimentum.
of-friendship his rather than of-arms to-take trial
Ceteroquin quos sententia melior indidem non deduxisset,
otherwise whom an-opinion better thence not had-drawn-away
flammis et incendio deponendos.
to-flames and burning to-be-delivered
20 Acceptis igitur hisce mandatis non modo flexi Lacedaemonii
with-received then these commands not only bent the-Lacedaemonians
non sunt, sed ut confidentius in arma concurrunt. Coepto
not were but as more-confidently into arms they-run-together with-begun
tamen atque exercito per biduum proelio non difficile Alexandro
yet and conducted for two-days battle not hard to-Alexander
fuit flammis iniectis excidii periculum Lacedaemoniis
it-was with-flames thrown of-destruction the-danger to-the-Lacedaemonians
ostentare. Quare tunc demum supplices submissique, ne illud
to-show wherefore then at-last suppliant and-submissive lest that
excidium sibi et captivitas perseveraret Alexandro, procedunt.
destruction for-them and captivity continue to-Alexander they-come-forth
Ad quos rex ait: 'Equidem me scio integris etiam tunc
to whom the-king says indeed me I-know with-whole even then
rebus haec consulere voluisse; at enim vos cum post classis
affairs these-things to-consult to-have-wished but indeed you since after of-fleet
vestrae urbisque incendia supplicetis, non improbo vel serum
your and-of-city the-burnings you-beg not I-reject even a-late
poenitendi consilium. Sed enim utique vos exempla ducebant
of-repenting plan but indeed surely you examples led
perinde arma nostra ut Xerxi Persica posse propelli.
just-as arms our as of-Xerxes the-Persian to-be-able to-be-driven-back

Sat igitur sit, quod de utroque diversum fortunae
enough then let-it-be that about each different fortune
senseritis.' Et cum his dictis facessere protinus militem suum
you-have-felt and with these words to-depart at-once soldiery his
ab expugnatione urbis Lacedaemonos iubet liberamque eam
from the-storming of-the-city of-Lacedaemon he-orders and-free it
et ad formam pristinae maiestatis civibus haberi permittit.
and in form of-former majesty by-the-citizens to-be-held he-allows
Tunc rebus Graeciae sic compositis ire in barbaros 21
then with-the-affairs of-Greece thus settled to-go against the-barbarians
tendit itinere per Ciliciam ordinato. At vero Darius
he-aims with-the-route through Cilicia ordered but indeed Darius
conductis in unum satrapibus universis et ducibus bellandi
with-gathered into one the-satraps all and leaders of-warring
consilia quaerebat frequenter admodum recolens, ut se opinio
counsels sought frequently very recalling how him opinion
super Alexandro frustrata foret. Quippe illum incrementis
about Alexander deceived had-been for him by-the-increases
bellicae rei audiebat quotidie sublimari, quem saepe
of-the-war business he-heard daily to-be-exalted whom often
latrunculum nominasset; neque sese iam nescire anceps
a-little-robber he-had-named nor himself now not-to-know doubtful
sibi et viribus hostium et imperii maiestate fieri
for-himself both by-the-strength of-the-enemies and of-empire the-majesty to-be-made
certamen. Quippe etsi sibi auctior numerus militantium
the-contest for although to-him a-greater number of-fighters
obsequeretur, audaciam tamen fortitudinemque se Alexandri
obeyed the-daring yet and-fortitude himself of-Alexander
demirari. Denique pudorem suum haud dubie fatebatur, quod
to-wonder-at finally the-shame his not doubtfully he-confessed that
ei viro pilam habenamque misisset, quae cuivis magis quam
to-that man a-ball and-strap he-had-sent which to-anyone rather than

illi ad virtutum meritum iuxta essent. Ergo iubebat omnes in
to-him to the-merit of-virtues near were therefore he-ordered all in
commune consipere, quid facto melius repperissent. Neque enim
common to-agree what of-doing better they-had-found nor for
cessatione aut desidia opus esse, in hosce provectus Alexandri
by-idleness or sloth need to-be against these advances of-Alexander
virtutibus procurrentibus, cumque in sese paulatim
with-the-virtues running-forward and-since against themselves gradually
vices utriusque nominis demutarent, quas sic in contrarium
the-fortunes of-each name were-changing which so to the-contrary
resultare non absque divina providentia arbitrabatur, ut omne
to-rebound not without divine providence he-thought so-that all
illud diadematis Persici decus ferme iam in Macedonica
that of-the-diadem Persian glory almost already into the-Macedonian
regna transisset. Et haec quidem Darius ad suos.
kingdoms had-passed and these-things indeed Darius to his-men

22 At vero eius frater Oxyathrus, velut indigna mage quam si
but indeed his brother Oxyathres as unworthy rather than if
vera dicerentur, 'Heu,' inquit, 'o frater, o rex, quid hoc tandem
true were-said alas he-says o brother o king what this at-last
rei est, quod tantum Alexandro isti laudator testis
of-the-matter is that so-great for-Alexander that as-praiser witness
accedis? Anne,' inquit, 'haec tibi iam meditata sententia
you-come or he-says this to-you already studied opinion
est, ut illi regno tuo cesseris, Macedoniam eius tibimet
is that to-him kingdom your you-should-yield Macedonia his for-yourself
non vindicaris? Quin potius imitare industriam hostis tui:
not you-should-claim why rather imitate the-industry of-enemy your
quod ille facturus ad nos pergit ac properat, id nos bellum
what he going-to-do to us proceeds and hastens that we war
Graecis inferamus. Neque ego hoc in loco ut ignaviae testis
on-the-Greeks let-us-inflict nor I this in place as of-cowardice witness

Alexandrum deformavero, qui hortor, uti exemplis eius utare
Alexander shall-have-disfigured I-who urge that the-examples his you-use
tu quoque, cum illum videas nec ducibus nec praecursoribus
you also since him you-see neither in-leaders nor in-forerunners
confidentem, sed sibimet laboris omnis officia vindicantem
trusting but for-himself of-labor all the-duties claiming
haec agere, quae tanta sunt. Quae tu quoque, si recte
these-things to-do which so-great are which you also if rightly
sapias, per te feceris. Viden, ut primus inruat in
you-were-wise by yourself would-do do-you-see how first he-rushes against
hostem, prior intonet bellicum, prior periculum subeat,
the-enemy first he-thunders the-war-signal first danger he-undergoes
depositis quidem insignibus regiis, dum est miles, recuperatis
with-laid-aside indeed the-insignia royal while he-is a-soldier with-recovered
vero, cum victor est, nihilum omnium cunctabundus aut
but when victor he-is in-nothing at-all hesitating or
differens, enimvero labore praesenti semper consilia subsecutus.'
delaying but-indeed with-labor present always counsels having-followed

X · THE CYDNUS, THE EUPHRATES, AND THE DISGUISED ENVOY

Bathing in the icy Cydnus, Alexander falls ill; Parmenion accuses the physician Philip of poison, but Alexander drinks the cure as Philip reads the letter, and Parmenion is executed. He breaks the Euphrates bridge behind his army, spares a Persian who struck him, and trades threats with Darius. Rodogune urges her son to make peace. Alexander scares the Persians with herds trailing branches; in a dream Ammon tells him to be his own envoy to Darius.

Ad haec Darius 'Et ubinam,' inquit, 'haec tibi de Alexandro 23
to this Darius and where he-says this to-you about Alexander
est comprehensa notitia?' Tum Oxyathrus eius temporis
is grasped knowledge then Oxyathres of-that time

memoriam refert, quo ad Philippum missus petitum pecunias
the-memory recalls in-which to Philip sent to-ask-for moneys
ab Alexandro adolescentulo etiam tunc minas eiusmodi
from Alexander a-youngster even then threats of-this-kind
excepisset, quas de praesentibus experiretur. Quare boni
he-had-received which about the-present he-was-experiencing wherefore good
consuleret rex Darius et satrapas omnium gentium, quaeve
should-take king Darius and the-satraps of-all nations or-whatever
indidem cogi possent exercituum milia, laboraret,
thence to-be-gathered could of-armies thousands should-labor
non Parthis scilicet Elamisve, non Babyloniis aut
not to-the-Parthians namely or-the-Elamites not to-the-Babylonians or
Mesopotamiae data militiae evacatione, enimvero armanda
of-Mesopotamia given from-service exemption but-indeed to-be-armed
tum Bactra, Indos etiam et Samiramidos regna censebat,
then Bactra the-Indians also and of-Semiramis the-realms he-proposed
omnesque centum et octoginta gentes, quas sibi subditas
and-all hundred and eighty nations which to-him subject
sciret, ad commilitium exercitare, ut si nihilum amplius,
he-knew for fellowship-in-arms to-train that if nothing more
certe vel ostentatio multitudinis terrore quodam Graecorum
surely even the-display of-the-multitude with-terror some of-the-Greeks
animis obsisteret. Haec sententia placebat quidem admodum
to-the-minds might-resist this opinion pleased indeed very
regi, et adstipulabantur etiam plerique praesentes, nisi quod
the-king and assented also very-many present except that
apud eos unum esse prae ceteris viribus penes Graecos
among them one-thing to-be beyond the-other strengths with the-Greeks
constabat, quod plus prudentia mentis quam valentia
it-was-agreed that more by-prudence of-mind than by-the-strength

corporum possent. Ergo secundum haec Darius iubet omnem
of-bodies they-could therefore according-to this Darius orders all
undique armatam multitudinem convenire.
from-everywhere the-armed multitude to-assemble
Alexander vero iter per Ciliciam agens, cum multum 24
Alexander but the-journey through Cilicia conducting when much
spatii sub aestivo sole armis onustus pedibus exegisset,
of-space under the-summer sun with-arms laden on-foot he-had-completed
forte Cydnum, haud cuiquam secundum flumen vel
by-chance the-Cydnus not to-any second river either
magnitudine vel perspicui agminis nimio rigore, cum ponte
in-size or of-its-clear stream in-excessive cold when by-the-bridge
transiret delectatus eius evidentia pariter et magnitudine, una
he-crossed delighted by-its clearness equally and size together
cum armis sese praecipitat e ponte ac natabundus exit.
with his-arms himself he-hurls from the-bridge and swimming comes-out
Sed id factum etiamsi ei ad testimonium fortitudinis
but that deed even-if to-him for testimony of-fortitude
plurimum contulit, valetudinem tamen discriminosius vicerat.
very-much contributed his-health yet more-dangerously it-had-overcome
Quippe calente etiam tunc et sudante corpore incidens
for with-hot even then and sweating body falling-upon
aquae illius vehementiam vel rigorem tantam nervis
of-the-water that the-violence or the-cold such to-the-sinews
iniuriam perniciemque tradiderat, ut undique protinus doloribus
injury and-ruin had-delivered that on-all-sides at-once with-pains
concurrentibus morbi causa contracta vix expiabilis videretur.
rushing-together of-disease the-cause contracted scarcely curable seemed
Quare cum tempus plurimum laberetur neque medentibus
wherefore when time very-much slipped-away nor to-the-healers
sedulo curatio illa pareret, Philippus quidam nomine, sciens
diligently the-cure that obeyed Philip a-certain by-name skilled

artis eiusdem et sedulitate acceptissimus regi, conficit
of-art the-same and by-diligence most-welcome to-the-king prepares
poculum, quod diceret secundaturum. Id cum die statuto
a-draft which he-said was-going-to-succeed this when on-the-day appointed
Alexander hausturus foret, forte Parmenion quidam e
Alexander going-to-drink was by-chance Parmenion a-certain from
ducibus regis, enim infestus Philippo medico, huiuscemodi
the-leaders of-the-king for hostile to-Philip the-physician of-this-kind
sententiae Alexandro litteras mittit, quibus Philippum hunc
sense to-Alexander a-letter sends in-which Philip this-man
clandestina tractasse cum Dario consilia commoneret, uti
secret to-have-handled with Darius plans he-warned that
per poculum saluti Alexandri insidiaretur; eius rei
through the-draft the-safety of-Alexander he-might-plot-against of-that thing
mercedem Philippo fore, ut sororem Darii partemque
the-reward for-Philip going-to-be that the-sister of-Darius and-part
regni cum Dario pepigisset; boni igitur consuleret rex
of-the-kingdom with Darius he-had-bargained good then should-take the-king
et ab illa curationis spe temperaret. Suspectans Alexander
and from that of-cure hope refrain suspecting Alexander
proinde, ut res erat, epistolam quidem intrepidus vultu et
accordingly as the-thing was the-letter indeed unafraid in-face and
animo ad caput lectuli protinus ponit. Accepto autem
in-mind at the-head of-the-little-bed at-once places with-received but
poculo, cum id iam haustui admovisset, eodem momento
the-cup when it already to-drinking he-had-moved in-the-same moment
etiam epistolam Philippo legendam dat. Cumque uno in
also the-letter to-Philip to-be-read he-gives and-when one in
tempore et ille potum, quem acceperat, transmisisset et
time both he the-drink which he-had-received had-passed-down and
hic litteras perlegisset, facile dedit medico intellexisse,
this-one the-letter had-read-through easily he-gave to-the-physician to-understand

quid de sedulitate eius opinionis habuisset. Denique cum
what about the-diligence his of-opinion he-had finally when
curatio illa ad pristinum statum Alexandrum deduxisset
cure that to former state Alexander had-brought
Philippusque ultionem mendacii flagitaret, ut insidiatus
and-Philip punishment of-the-lie demanded as having-plotted
regi Parmenio poenas capite dependit.
against-the-king Parmenion the-penalty with-his-head paid
Igitur recepta valetudine Alexander per Medos exercitum 25
therefore with-recovered health Alexander through the-Medes the-army
ducens iter illud multis admodum diebus per deserta
leading journey that for-many very days through the-wastes
regionis emensus est multamque aquae penuriam toleravit.
of-the-region traversed has and-much of-water scarcity endured
Tandem denique ad Euphratem veniens, fluvium magnitudine
at-last finally to the-Euphrates coming a-river in-size
haud cuiquam facile secundum, eoque constrato navibus
not to-any easily second and-with-it paved with-ships
atque ponte, quo iter suis incunctantius persuaderet,
and bridge by-which the-journey to-his-men more-unhesitatingly he-might-persuade
primus omnium pontem emensus auctoritatem cunctis audaciae
first of-all the-bridge having-crossed authority to-all of-daring
praestitit. Omni igitur iam multitudine impedimentisque
he-furnished with-all then now the-multitude and-baggage
transmissis illico solvi pontem compactarumque ob
carried-across at-once to-be-loosed the-bridge and-of-the-compacted for
id navium iubet vincula. Id cum exercitus universus
that ships he-orders the-bonds this when the-army whole
indignantius accepisset, quod enim per viam sibi
more-indignantly had-received because for on the-way for-themselves
impedimentum illud intranatabilis fluvii proiecisset, et
obstacle that of-the-unswimmable river had-thrown and

utile arbitrarentur secundae meminisse fortunae, accepto
useful they-thought of-favorable to-remember fortune with-received
hoc murmure et indignatione militum rex in haec
this murmur and indignation of-the-soldiers the-king in these
verba contionatur: 'Equidem fateor, milites, duas pariter
words harangues indeed I-confess soldiers two equally
res in animo esse diversas, spem scilicet et pudorem,
things in mind to-be different hope namely and shame
quarum alterum praerogativa praeteritae virtutis ostendit,
of-which the-one the-prerogative of-past valor shows
aliud vero importuni metus opinionibus adumbratur. Quis
the-other but of-untimely fear by-opinions is-shadowed who
enim non videt abolendam prorsus memoriam esse victoriae
for not sees to-be-abolished utterly the-memory to-be of-victory
praecedentis, si praesenti vestrae indignationi commodet
preceding if to-present your indignation it-lends
fidem, qua regem vestrum Alexandrum inconsulte fecisse
credit by-which king your Alexander rashly to-have-acted
opinamini, quod ad fugam vobis infaustissimum iter pontis
you-think because for flight for-you the-most-ill-omened way by-the-bridge's
dissolutione sustulerit? Aut quid prorsus de spe victoriae
dissolution be-removed or what utterly of hope of-victory
residebit, si id verum est? Vel quid mage contrarium
will-remain if this true is or what more contrary
foret huiusmodi votis, quam si quod animo praecepistis,
would-be of-this-kind to-wishes than if what in-mind you-have-anticipated
id vobis tuto pareret? praesertim cum in opere militari
that to-you safely should-appear especially since in work military
formidinis incentivum sit spes tutius evadendi. Sed id
of-fear an-incentive is the-hope more-safely of-escaping but that
quidem deus et virtutis vestrae gloria procul fecerit.
indeed god and of-valor your the-glory far-off will-have-made

Enim ego, qui tot proeliis, tot victoriis doctus
for I who by-so-many battles so-many victories taught
nihil aliud nisi de incremento vestrae gloriae cogitaverim,
nothing other except about the-increase of-your glory have-thought
profecto fecisse mihi videor cum sententia fortiorum, quod
surely to-have-done to-me I-seem with the-opinion of-the-braver that
ignaviae intempestivo reditu amputato soli prorsus victoriae
of-cowardice with-the-untimely return cut-off for-alone utterly victory
viam dextris et gladiis reserandam esse monstraverim.
the-way with-right-hands and swords to-be-unlocked to-be I-have-shown
Neque id dissimulabo, quod sentio, adiuvare me votis
nor this will-I-hide what I-feel to-help me with-prayers
fortunam eiusmodi, ut si ignaviae reditus requireretur,
fortune of-this-kind that if of-cowardice a-return were-sought
longe sit melius hic occumbere gloriose quam post nomen
far it-is better here to-fall gloriously than after the-name
victoriae praecedentis dedecorosius evasisse. Quin legem
of-victory preceding more-disgracefully to-have-escaped nay a-law
nobis fortitudinis dicimus, solis esse militandum, qui
for-us of-fortitude we-declare for-them-alone it-is to-be-soldiered who
cursum noverint ad insequendum hostem potius quam ad
a-course know for pursuing the-enemy rather than for
periculi fugam. Quam cum perpetuo ignoraveritis, deos ego
of-danger flight which when perpetually you-have-not-known the-gods I
vobis immortales polliciti ac spei meae vades dixerim,
to-you immortal of-the-promise and of-hope my as-sureties would-say
nihil omnino posse oboriri impedimenti, quin si solita
nothing at-all to-be-able to-arise of-hindrance that-not if the-accustomed
vobis utamini fortitudine, debitam victoriam capessatis.' Ad
for-you you-use fortitude the-due victory you-seize to
haec Alexandri verba et favor militum et animus excitatus
these of-Alexander words both the-favor of-the-soldiers and the-spirit roused

nihil omnino praeter victoriae desiderium celeritatemque
nothing at-all except of-victory desire and-speed
conceperat. Sed enim cum omnis Darii exercitus propter
had-conceived but indeed when all of-Darius the-army along
Tigridis alveum locatus adventum Macedonum exspectaret
of-the-Tigris the-channel placed the-arrival of-the-Macedonians awaited
nec cunctabundus Alexander acie instructa sese hostibus
nor hesitating Alexander with-the-line drawn-up himself to-the-enemies
obtulisset, coepto conflictu ferventique re bellica unus
had-offered with-begun clash and-boiling business of-war one
ex Persis armis Macedonicis indutus, evitata hoc astu
of the-Persians in-arms Macedonian clad with-avoided by-this trick
dinoscentia, ut propter similitudinem scilicet munimenti,
the-discernment so-that because-of the-likeness namely of-the-armor
a tergo Alexandrum ense infesto adoritur ac ferit.
from behind Alexander with-sword hostile attacks and strikes
Sed ictus propter galeae fortitudinem habitus frustra
but the-blow because-of of-the-helmet the-strength held vainly
dissiluit, et ad comprehendendum protinus virum satellites
glanced-off and for seizing at-once the-man the-bodyguards
properant regique eum offerunt. A quo cum Alexander
hasten and-to-the-king him present from whom when Alexander
requisisset causas ausi huius, 'Primum,' inquit, 'Alexander,
had-asked the-causes of-daring this first he-says Alexander
neque te clam sit, non ego ex numero tuo sum,
nor from-you hidden let-it-be not I from number your am
enim vestratibus armis Persa vestitus. Verum cum satrapes
for in-your-own arms a-Persian clad but since a-satrap
sim, dignitatem eiusmodi gloriae apud Darium praemium
I-am the-dignity of-this-kind of-glory with Darius as-reward
pactus sum, ut si interfecto te tantae rei compendium
bargained I-have that if with-killed you so-great a-thing's gain

procurassem, cum regni parte filiam quoque regis ad
I-had-procured with of-the-kingdom part the-daughter also of-the-king in
coniugium promererer. Quae profecto haud dubie fierent,
marriage I-might-earn which surely not doubtfully would-happen
ni tecum fortuna potius quam mecum stetisset.' His
unless with-you fortune rather than with-me had-stood with-these
auditis Alexander multis suorum praesentibus iterare eum
heard Alexander with-many of-his-men present to-repeat him
iubet sermonem promissi et audaciae, laudatum denique
orders his-speech of-the-promise and of-daring praised finally
fidei ac fortitudinis ad suos ire iubet, quod eum
of-faithfulness and of-fortitude to his-own to-go he-orders because him
exemplo strenui *** utilisque praecepti apud milites
as-an-example of-a-vigorous (lacuna) and-useful precept among soldiers
suos id esse vellet, si pari fide in se quoque sui
his that to-be he-wished if with-equal faithfulness toward him also his
satellites uterentur. Sed hoc quidem die inclinatione tantum
bodyguards might-behave but this indeed day with-an-inclination only
leviter pro Macedonum partibus ostentata uterque exercitus
slightly for of-the-Macedonians the-side shown each army
ad castra discedit. Cumque reficiendo corpori ciboque capiendo
to camp departs and-when for-refreshing the-body and-food for-taking
essent, rursus alius satrapa Alexandro se offert cum
they-were again another satrap to-Alexander himself offers with
dignitatis quidem illius professione, sed qui diceret se
dignity indeed of-that the-profession but who said himself
multa magnaque rei bellicae opera pro Dario gessisse,
many and-great of-the-business of-war works for Darius to-have-done
enimvero sibi haud parem gratiam repraesentatam. Si
but-indeed to-himself not equal favor rendered if
igitur sese susciperet, fore sibi admodum facile, ut
then himself he-would-take-up going-to-be for-himself very easy that

cum decem milibus reliquos Darii satrapas incursaret
with ten thousand the-remaining of-Darius satraps he-should-attack
et caperet, una etiam ipsum quoque Darium facile
and capture together also him-himself also Darius easily
comprehensurus. Ad haec Alexander reverti hominem, et
going-to-seize to this Alexander to-return the-man and
si quid valeret, auxiliari regi suo mandat. 'Qua enim,'
if anything he-could to-help king his he-orders by-what for
inquit, 'spe alienos tibi milites tuto commiserim cives tuos
he-says hope another's to-you soldiers safely could-I-entrust citizens your
propriosque prodenti?' Id tamen temporis etiamtum res
and-own betraying this yet at-the-time even-then the-affairs
absente rege Dario per eius satrapas agebantur. Hystaspes
with-absent king Darius through his satraps were-conducted Hystaspes
denique et Spinther scribunt regi: iam pridem quidem
finally and Spinther write to-the-king already long-ago indeed
se super Alexandri exercitu ea, quae compererant,
themselves about of-Alexander the-army those-things which they-had-learned
nuntiasse, enimvero nunc longe auctioribus viribus invasisse
to-have-reported but-indeed now far with-greater strength to-have-invaded
partem Persici regni pluribusque interfectis et captis non
part of-the-Persian kingdom and-with-many killed and captured not
sine periculo ac discrimine sese vexare; oportere igitur se
without danger and peril themselves to-harass it-behooves therefore him
quam primum una cum omni exercitu ad confligendum
as soon-as-possible together with all army for fighting
cum Alexandro praesto esse. His litteris Darius acceptis
with Alexander at-hand to-be with-this letter Darius received
ipse quoque ad Alexandrum scribit in hanc sententiam:
he-himself also to Alexander writes in this sense
'Video tibi laboratum, ne quid omnium faceres, quod
I-see by-you labored-it lest anything of-all you-should-do which

tibi apud nos veniam polliceretur. Ita et adrogans litteris
to-you with us pardon might-promise so both arrogant in-letters
et iactabundus in hac eadem temeritate exstitisti, ut
and boastful in this same rashness you-have-stood-forth that
quidvis horum ad animum meum venerit, excitare me potius
whichever of-these to mind my has-come to-rouse me rather
ad ultionem quam ad misericordiam queat flectere. Non igitur
to vengeance than to pity can bend not then
adeo pertaesos deos regni mei et orientis sui esse sedis
so weary the-gods of-kingdom my and of-the-east their to-be of-the-seat
existimo, ut ad occidua tecum pariter migraturi sint. Quos
I-think that to the-west with-you equally going-to-migrate they-be whom
ego facio iuroque ultioni meae debitae non defuturos. An
I make and-swear to-vengeance my due not going-to-be-lacking or
tu putas servire te mihi artifici isto obsequio, quod matri
you do-you-think to-serve you me by-artful that compliance in-that to-mother
coniugive ac liberis meis clemens es? Equidem puto
or-wife and to-children my merciful you-are indeed I-think
matrem mihi in deos abisse, filios vero nec susceptos
my-mother for-me among the-gods to-have-gone the-sons but neither taken-up
quidem habere, nec coniugem habuisse. Quin magis omnia
even to-have nor a-wife to-have-had nay rather all
haec ferro et vindicta persecuturus sum. Quippe si
these-things with-sword and vengeance going-to-pursue I-am for if
faceres ac velles eorum aliquid, quod iracundiae meae mederi
you-did and wished of-them something which anger my to-heal
potuisset, ipse ad me supplex venires ac poenitens;
could-have yourself to me as-suppliant you-would-come and penitent
foret enim, ut vertente ad veniam animo his te
it-would-be for that with-turning to pardon mind with-these you
honoribus prosequeremur, quibus te diis aequatum esse
honors we-should-attend with-which you to-the-gods equaled to-be

gratularere. Quod si non facias, sane saevias, quantum libuerit,
you-would-rejoice but if not you-do truly rage as-much-as it-pleases
in meos. Neque enim mater aut coniux neque liberi
against mine nor for my-mother or wife nor children
habiti clementius ad mansuetudinem me praevenerunt. Habes
held more-mercifully to clemency me have-forestalled you-have
igitur mandata haec atque suprema; respondeto, quod voles,
then commands these and last answer what you-wish
alterumque optato vel exspectato, id est veniam mali an
and-the-one-or-other choose or await that is pardon of-evil or
poenam.' Haec cum laetior Alexander audisset suisque
punishment these-things when more-glad Alexander had-heard and-to-his-men
legisset, ipse quoque respondit, non minus sibi pertaesas
had-read he-himself also answered not less to-himself wearying
esse vaniloquentias et iactantias barbari, quam sperare
to-be the-vain-talk and boasting of-the-barbarian than to-hope
illum diis quoque infestis haec dicere, quippe qui
him with-gods also hostile these-things to-say since who
timens et metu percitus constantiam verbis inconsultioribus
fearing and by-fear stirred constancy with-words more-rash
fingeret, verum ageret rem timentis. Quod ergo adfectus
feigned but acted the-part of-one-fearing what then the-affection
eius eorumque reverentiam spectet, non Dario illud, sed
his and-their reverence concerns not to-Darius that but
communi humanitati praestari. Se tamen protinus ad ipsum
to-common humanity to-be-rendered himself yet at-once to him
esse venturum, modo si adventus ille ceteris Persis placeret,
to-be going-to-come only if arrival that to-the-other Persians pleased
quibus utique praeterita experimenta displiceant; quare a
to-whom surely past trials are-displeasing wherefore by
se quoque supremas litteras datas, cetera vero manu
himself also a-last letter given the-rest but by-hand

esse complenda. Hic uterque exercitus bello paratur. Cui
to-be to-be-completed here each army for-war is-prepared for-which
Alexander cum plurimum conscripsisset, satrapis Phrygiae
Alexander when very-much had-enrolled for-the-satraps of-Phrygia
vel Cappadociae Ciliciamque aut Paphlagoniam vel Arabiam
or of-Cappadocia and-Cilicia or Paphlagonia or Arabia
obtinentibus vestium militarium protinus competentem ad
holding of-clothing military at-once a-sufficient for
militantium numerum et armorum quam maximum numerum
of-fighters the-number and of-arms as greatest a-number
iubet; in quos usus tria milia camelorum apud Syriam
he-orders for which uses three thousand of-camels in Syria
agi mandaverunt, ne quid eorum, quod usui foret belli
to-be-driven they-ordered lest anything of-them which for-use was of-war
commodo, moraretur. Eodem sane tempore Darii duces
to-the-advantage should-delay at-the-same indeed time of-Darius the-leaders
multas eiusmodi litteras misitavere, quibus fatigari sese
many of-this-kind letters kept-sending in-which to-be-wearied themselves
multosque admodum optimatium interemptos, quosdam etiam
and-many very of-nobles killed some also
ad Alexandrum transisse nuntiarent. Haec omnia in id
to Alexander to-have-crossed-over they-reported these all to this
Darium excitabant, ne quid segnius praetermitteret.
Darius roused that-not anything more-sluggishly he-should-pass-over
Igitur ad Porum quoque scribit Darius petitque sibi
therefore to Porus also writes Darius and-asks for-himself
auxilia plurima. Sed Porus valetudine corporis excusata atque
auxiliaries very-many but Porus with-the-health of-his-body excused and
in tempus dilata petita rescripserat. His compertis
to a-later-time deferred the-requests had-written-back with-these learned
Darii mater, quae una cum Alexandro erat, clam litteras
of-Darius the-mother who together with Alexander was secretly a-letter

facit easque ad filium destinat scriptas in hanc sententiam:
makes and-it to her-son directs written in this sense
'Rogodune mater Dario filio salutem dicit. Fama est te
Rodogune the-mother to-Darius her-son greeting says rumor is you
coacto exercitu ad proelium tendere, profecto nescientem,
with-gathered army to battle to-head surely not-knowing
quod orbis quoque vires ad sese venientes rex Alexander
that of-the-world even the-forces to himself coming king Alexander
facile contempserit. Nollem igitur, nate mi, incertum
easily despised I-should-not-wish then son my the-uncertain
futuri a te praeoptari praesentibus, cui fortasse sit
of-the-future by you to-be-preferred to-present-things to-whom perhaps it-be
promptius de quiete aliquid vel amicitia consultare. Quid
readier about quiet something or friendship to-consult what
enim omnium est, quod te excitet ad indignationem, cum
for of-all is-there that you may-rouse to indignation since
ipsae nos quoque, quibus fortuna timebatur tristior, honore,
ourselves we also for-whom fortune was-feared sadder in-honor
quo domi, nulliusque indigentes agitemus. Boni igitur
in-which at-home and-of-nothing in-want we-live good then
consules, si de pactionibus videris.' His lectis Darius
you-will-take if about agreements you-see with-this read Darius
illacrimat; hoc ipso tamen ad indignationem excitamento
weeps this itself yet for indignation as-an-incitement
utebatur, quod putaret indici iniuriam viribus suis, si de
he-used that he-thought to-be-indicated injury to-strength his if about
pactionibus meditaretur. Alexander nihilominus propius iam
agreements he-pondered Alexander nonetheless nearer now
Persas adierat, adeo ut in conspectu eorum etiam muros
the-Persians had-approached so that in sight their even walls
haberet. Enimvero aestimationem intellectam adventus sui in
he-had but-indeed the-estimate understood of-the-arrival his in

hunc modum ludit: pecua multigena seu armenta, quae illis
this manner he-mocks flocks of-many-kinds or herds which for-them
in pascuis abundarent, coacta comprehendi, eorum cornibus
in pastures abounded collected to-be-caught to-their horns
frondentes et auctiusculos ramos adnecti iubet; tumque
leafy and somewhat-large branches to-be-attached he-orders and-then
aliis ramulis adnexis ad caudas pecudum singularum
with-other twigs attached to the-tails of-the-cattle each
agi praeimpedita hactenus mandat, utramque speciem
to-be-driven entangled thus-far he-orders each appearance
pariter imitatus, ut et erectis frondibus, quae adnexae
equally imitating that both by-the-raised leaves which attached
cornibus ferebantur, silvestrem quandam speciem prae se
to-the-horns were-carried woody a-certain appearance before them
agerent, ex qua occuli insequentem exercitum foret, et
they-might-drive from which to-be-hidden the-following army might and
tractis ramulis pulvis excitus omnem dinoscentiam veri
by-the-dragged twigs the-dust raised all discernment of-the-truth
eminus confudisset. Et hoc igitur ex pulvere nebulaque eius,
from-afar might-confuse and this then from the-dust and-cloud its
per immensum quae latius agebatur, obstupefacti iam
through the-immense which more-widely was-driven stunned now
primum, tum etiam ultra opinionem magni exercitus territi
first then also beyond expectation of-a-great army terrified
Persae stupore defixi sunt. Iam per internuntios
the-Persians with-amazement fixed were already through go-betweens
facultatem belli dari sibi decreverat Alexander postulare
the-opportunity of-war to-be-given to-himself had-decided Alexander to-demand
eaque cura depressus in somnum est somniatque sibi
and-by-that care weighed-down into sleep was and-dreams to-himself
deum Ammonem adstitisse omnem habitum, quo deum
the-god Ammon to-have-stood-by all the-attire in-which the-god

Mercurium pingi visitur, sibimet porrigentem cum his
Mercury to-be-painted is-seen to-himself offering with these
mandatis: 'En tibi, fili Alexander, adsum in tempore
commands lo to-you son Alexander I-am-present in time
moneoque ab illo te, quem legare institueras ad Darium,
and-I-warn by that-one you whom to-send you-had-decided to Darius
prodi potuisse. Enimvero forti animo age teteque
to-be-betrayed to-have-been-able but-indeed with-brave mind act and-yourself
ipso pro te utere internuntio, videlicet hoc omni
your-very-self for yourself use as-go-between namely with-this all
habitu adornatus, quem nunc a me tibi offerri consideras.
attire adorned which now by me to-you to-be-offered you-consider
Id enim etsi parum consultum aliis videtur regem sui
this for even-if too-little prudent to-others it-seems a-king of-himself
ipsum pro se nuntium fieri, tibi tamen istud auxilio
himself for himself messenger to-become for-you yet that by-help
nostro proclive est.'
our easy is

XI · ALEXANDER AT DARIUS'S TABLE

Disguised as Mercury, Alexander crosses the frozen Stranga and dines with Darius, pocketing the cups. A Persian who had seen him as a boy knows him; he kills the man holding his horse and flees, and when the ice gives way he swims across. In battle Darius flees over the Stranga, which breaks and drowns his army. He offers his treasures; Alexander refuses, orders Xerxes' palace burned and then saved, views Cyrus's tomb, and settles the maimed Greek captives.

26 Paret rex monitis dei protinusque Eumelo comitante
obeys the-king to-the-warnings of-the-god and-at-once with-Eumelus accompanying
equo vectus, praeterea alio subsidiario sibi adscito,
on-horse carried besides with-another as-reserve to-himself taken

mandatum agit. Igitur cum ad Strangam fluvium
the-commission he-performs therefore when to the-Stranga river
devenisset, qui plerumque ex vehementia nivium adeo
he-had-come which mostly from the-violence of-snows so
stringitur et congelascit, ut instar saxi viabilem sese
is-bound and freezes that like stone passable itself
transeuntibus viris, carris etiam quam onustissimis praebeat,
to-those-crossing men to-wagons also as most-laden it-offers
atque ex hoc ingenio sui tunc gradabilis foret, ibidem
and from this nature of-itself then walkable it-was there
accepto habitu, quem deus monitor praemonstraverat,
with-taken-up the-attire which the-god the-adviser had-shown
ipse quidem uno usus equo coeptum iter agit, Eumelum
he-himself indeed one using horse the-begun journey makes Eumelus
porro cum equis duobus ibidem subsistere ac se operiri
further with horses two there to-stay and him to-wait
iubet. Igitur transmisso flumine, cuius latitudo est haud
orders therefore with-crossed river of-which the-width is not
minus stadii mensura, ad ipsa regis tentoria penetrat.
less of-a-stadium in-measure to the-very of-the-king tents he-penetrates
Sed cum habitum viri Persae demirarentur opinionemque
but when the-attire of-the-man the-Persians wondered-at and-the-opinion
sibi ferme de deo ipso suaderent, nihilominus, ecquis
to-themselves almost about the-god himself urged nonetheless who
foret, quaeritant et volentem convenire regem protinus illo
he-was they-ask and wishing to-meet the-king at-once thither
deducunt. Enimvero forte Darius tunc visendi exercitus sui
they-lead but-indeed by-chance Darius then for-seeing of-the-army his
causa processerat hortandisque animis suorum de ignavia
the-sake had-gone-forth and-for-exhorting the-spirits of-his-men about the-cowardice
Macedonum contionabatur. Iamque aderat Alexander et
of-the-Macedonians was-haranguing and-now was-present Alexander and

habitum illum pompamque regiae magnificentiae mirabatur.
the-attire that and-pomp of-royal magnificence he-wondered-at
Denique non absque ea dubitatione egit, utrumne adorandus
finally not without that doubt he-acted whether to-be-worshiped
sibi idem rex foret, ita omni cultu tunc capitis tunc
by-him the-same king should-be so with-all adornment both of-head and
vestitus, sceptro etiam et indumentis pedum magnifice
of-dress with-scepter also and with-coverings of-the-feet magnificently
adornabatur. Aderantque et satellitum milia stupore
he-was-adorned and-there-were-present also of-bodyguards thousands with-amazement
barbarico regem suum ut deum praesentissimum demirati. Sed
barbarian king their as a-god most-present wondering-at but
viso habitu eiusmodi rex Darius cum officium quoque, quod
with-seen attire of-this-kind king Darius when the-function also which
simulaverat Alexander, cognovisset, idem Alexander prior:
had-feigned Alexander he-had-learned the-same Alexander first
'En tibi adsum internuntius quidem, enimvero quem nihilo
lo to-you I-am-here a-go-between indeed but-indeed whom by-nothing
secus ipsius Alexandri praesentia opinere. Verbaque eius
otherwise of-himself of-Alexander the-presence you-should-think and-the-words his
et mandata sunt talia: 'Ego,' inquit, 'arbitror eum regem,
and commands are such I he-says think that king
qui parum festinanter contendet ad proelium, iam ipsum
who too-little hastily hastens to battle already himself
suae ignaviae et diffidentiae testem esse. Quare ne ultra
of-his cowardice and diffidence witness to-be wherefore lest further
cessaveris, quin protinus respondeto, quod tempus nobis
you-delay that-not at-once you-answer what time to-us
agitando proelio dederis.' Ad hanc confidentiam dicti
for-the-waging battle you-give to this confidence of-the-saying
cum excitatus animo Darius 'Numnam quaeso,' dixisset, 'tu
when roused in-mind Darius surely-not I-ask he-had-said you

ipse Alexander ades, qui adeo nihilum reverens nostri
yourself Alexander are-present who so in-nothing respecting us
confidentissime loqueris?' responsum accepit sese quidem
most-confidently speak an-answer he-received himself indeed
internuntium esse, enim pro ipso Alexandro uti praesente
a-go-between to-be for for himself Alexander as present
loqui oportere. Accepit haec Darius dicta clementius et,
to-speak it-behooved received these Darius sayings more-gently and
'Quoniam,' inquit, 'more legationis huius ne Alexander
since he-says by-the-custom of-embassy this lest Alexander
quidem secus honoratur, ad sacrificium hinc ac deinceps ad
even otherwise be-honored to the-sacrifice hence and next to
convivium convertamur.' Post haec dicta cum manus rex
the-banquet let-us-turn after these words when the-hand the-king
Alexandro adprehendisset atque in regiam ingressi forent, id
of-Alexander had-grasped and into the-palace entered they-had that
quoque sibi auspicato fieri Alexander arbitratus est, quod
also to-himself auspiciously to-happen Alexander thought has because
volente rege in eius regiam deducebatur. Igitur ubi tempus
with-willing king into his palace he-was-led therefore when the-time
coenandi fuit, rexque accubuit ceterique secundum ordinem
of-dining was and-the-king reclined and-the-others according-to the-order
dignitatis, ut illis mos erat, discubuere, adversum tamen
of-dignity as for-them the-custom was reclined opposite yet
Darium coenare sedentarius iussus Alexander honore legati
Darius to-dine sitting ordered Alexander with-the-honor of-envoy
omnium oculos in se facile convertebat. Quamquam enim
of-all the-eyes onto himself easily turned although for
brevi corpore neque ad Persicam magnitudinem haberetur —
of-short body nor to Persian size he-was-held
plerique ferme auctiusculi sunt—, tamen et filo oris
very-many nearly somewhat-larger are yet both in-the-build of-face

et reliquorum membrorum situ admirabilis visentibus
and of-the-other limbs in-the-placement admirable to-the-onlookers
erat. Igitur convivio iam procedente eiusmodi quid facere
he-was therefore with-the-banquet now proceeding of-this-kind something to-do
Alexandrum subit. Poculum enim, ut quodque ad bibendum
Alexander occurs-to the-cup for as each for drinking
acceperat, ubi strinxisset, vas ipsum in sinum sibi
he-had-received when he-had-drained-it the-vessel itself into the-fold for-himself
condere atque ut proprium coeperat detinere. Quod ubi
to-hide and as his-own began to-keep which when
a ministris regi est indicatum, incertum id damnumne
by the-servants to-the-king was reported uncertain this whether-a-loss
an contumeliam ratus insurgensque Darius 'Ecquid,' inquit,
or an-insult thinking and-rising Darius what he-says
'hoc est, quod pocula hoc furatrinae genere avertisti?'
this is that the-cups by-this of-theft kind you-have-carried-off
Sed ubi de motu corporis Alexander intellexit, quid
but when from the-movement of-body Alexander understood what
in Dario mobilitatis animi foret, — hac enim ex causa
in Darius of-agitation of-mind was this for from reason
id consilium exsequebatur — 'O rex,' ait, 'morem ratus
this plan he-was-carrying-out o king he-says the-custom thinking
hic quoque Alexandri nostri servari id, quod apud nostros
here also of-Alexander our to-be-kept that which among our-people
didiceram, exsecutus sum; quippe illi liberalitatis haec
I-had-learned I-carried-out have for for-him of-generosity this
forma est, uti principibus ac ducibus suis, quos tali convivio
the-form is that to-chiefs and leaders his whom at-such a-banquet
dignanter acceperit, privata pocula fieri sinat, quaecumque
graciously he-has-received private the-cups to-become he-allows whatever
acceperint haurienda. Quod ergo magnanimitate illi te
they-have-received to-be-drained what then in-magnanimity to-him you

quoque parem ducerem, non in contumeliam traxeris.' Hoc
also equal I-reckoned not into insult you-should-draw with-this
blandimento responsionisque eius gratia cum rex ceterique
flattery and-of-the-answer his the-grace when the-king and-the-others
permulsi essent, admirationem sui silentio testabantur.
soothed had-been wonder of-him in-silence they-attested
Sed id silentium ferme ad periculum vergit. Unus quippe ex 27
but that silence almost to danger turns one for of
convivantibus, cui vocabulum Pasarges erat, olim Philippi
those-feasting to-whom the-name Pasarges was once of-Philip
hospitio receptus et ibidem Alexandrum etiam puerum
with-hospitality received and there Alexander even a-boy
conspicatus, paulatim in memoriam relabens eundem ipsum
having-seen gradually into memory slipping-back the-same very
esse, quem opinabatur, animo confirmat. Sensim igitur Dario,
to-be whom he-supposed in-mind he-confirms gradually then to-Darius
quem comprehenderit, Pasarges intimatum venit. Eoque
whom he-had-caught Pasarges made-known comes and-by-it
permotus rex praeque magnitudine prosultans, quid illud
stirred the-king and-for the-size leaping-up what that
esset, quod tantopere excitaretur, nulli mage quam ipsi
was which so-much was-stirring to-no-one more than to-himself
Alexandro prodit, id enim, quod evenerat, iam pridem
Alexander betrays that for which had-happened already long-since
animo suspectanti. Unaque cum poculis, quae sinu gestans
in-mind suspecting and-together with the-cups which in-the-fold carrying
habebat, conclave procurrit ibique pro foribus offendit unum
he-had the-chamber he-runs-out-of and-there before the-doors finds one
e Persis equum, quo advectus fuerat, detinentem. Ne
of the-Persians the-horse on-which carried he-had-been holding lest
quid igitur improperiter in re tali fecisse, custodem
anything then unhastily in a-matter such to-have-done the-keeper

equi gladio perfodit, adscenso autem eo fugae
of-the-horse with-the-sword he-pierces with-mounted but it for-flight
consulit. Quod ubi Persis visum intellectumque est,
he-provides which when to-the-Persians seen and-understood was
quaqua raptim arma capere, ipsum quoque fugientem insequi
wherever hastily arms to-take him also fleeing to-pursue
properabant. Enim et illis molitio tardior et Alexandro
they-hastened for both for-them the-effort slower and for-Alexander
efficacior fuga erat, eo quod intempesta iam nocte
more-effective the-flight was for-this that untimely already night
eaque nullis lunae adminiculis inlustri aliquanto cunctantius
and-it by-no of-the-moon aids lit somewhat more-hesitatingly
regi gradienti subpetiata est forte etiam lampas ex
to-the-king walking helped has by-chance also a-torch from
obvio. Quae cum sibi praelucens facesseret, eo et
in-the-way which when for-himself lighting-ahead went-off thereby both
ipse properantius et nullo tali subsidio Persae tardius
he-himself more-hastily and with-no such help the-Persians more-slowly
agitabant. Sed enim Darius maestior damno elapsi
pressed but indeed Darius sadder at-the-loss of-the-escaped
hostis, cum inter spem metumque animo volutaret, casu
enemy when between hope and-fear in-mind he-turned by-a-mishap
eiusmodi ad maiorem formidinem confirmatur. Forte in
of-this-kind to greater dread is-confirmed by-chance in
conclavi eo, in quo tunc rex agebat, imago quaedam
the-chamber that in which then the-king lived a-picture certain
Xerxi sublimius posita, vel ob memoriam maiorum vel
of-Xerxes rather-high placed either for memory of-ancestors or
de picturae gratia spectabilis, Dario acceptissima erat. Ea
for of-the-painting the-grace remarkable to-Darius most-welcome was it
repente fatiscente compactu procidit dissilitque. Id Darius,
suddenly with-giving-way the-joining fell-down and-burst-apart this Darius

ut res erat, coniectans animo macerabatur. Enimvero
as the-thing was conjecturing in-mind was-tormented but-indeed
Alexander omne intersitum spatium iam mensus ubi ad
Alexander all the-intervening space now having-measured when to
Strangam fluvium accessit, ratus fore uti eum pariter,
the-Stranga river he-came thinking it-would-be that it equally
ut venerat, perviaret, equum quoque, quo vehebatur,
as he-had-come he-would-pass-over the-horse also on-which he-was-carried
impellit primitias congelationis invadere. Sed exesa videlicet
urges the-first-fruits of-the-freezing to-enter but eaten evidently
vel soluta super omni crassitudine ac gelu cessit aequoris
or loosened above all thickness and ice gave-way of-the-surface
facies ad pondus equitantis. Utrique igitur cernuantes in
the-face to the-weight of-the-rider both then falling-headlong into
profundum fluminis ruunt. Sed enim equum agmen violenti
the-depth of-the-river rush but indeed the-horse the-stream of-the-violent
gurgitis pessum tractum averterat; rex vero natatu
whirlpool to-the-bottom dragged had-turned-away the-king but by-swimming
quam valentissimo emensus periculum alterius ripae iam
as most-powerful having-measured the-danger of-the-other bank already
potiebatur, cum eminus videt insecutos sese Persas iam
was-gaining when from-afar sees having-pursued him the-Persians already
litori advenisse, frustra habitos spe transgressus, desperata
to-the-shore to-have-come in-vain held by-hope of-crossing with-despaired
etiam comprehensione, reditui consultare, quippe cum Persae
also capture for-return to-consult for since the-Persians
non modo ad natatus huiusmodi audere non soleant, sed ne
not only to swimmings of-this-kind to-dare not are-wont but not
navigabile quidem ob nimiam vehementiam flumen hoc
navigable even because-of excessive violence river this
habeant. Igitur stupenti Dario demirantique, quae gesta
they-hold therefore to-the-stunned Darius and-wondering-at what-things done

sunt, cassum laborem referunt insecutores. Alexander vero
were the-vain labor report the-pursuers Alexander but
menso alveo offendit Eumelum, quem una cum equis
with-measured channel finds Eumelus whom together with horses
duobus ibidem sibi subsidiarium dereliquerat. Tum illi et
two there for-himself as-reserve he-had-left then to-him both
gestae rei seriem explicat, et ubi ad exercitum redit,
done of-the-thing the-series he-unfolds and when to the-army he-returns
duces quoque laetos facto participat. Omnem exercitum
the-leaders also glad at-the-deed he-shares all the-army
sibi iam iamque adesse instructum armis iubet. Qui cum
to-him now and-now to-be-present drawn-up in-arms he-orders who when
omnis in centum et viginti milibus numeraretur, 'Ne,' inquit,
all at a-hundred and twenty thousand was-numbered not he-says
'ne sit vobis aliquid, milites, quod cunctemini.
not let-there-be for-you anything soldiers that you-should-hesitate-over
Quaecumque fuerant ex hostibus noscitanda, ipse per me
whatever was of the-enemies to-be-learned I-myself through myself
praesens oculis deprehendi. Neque si foret periculum de
present with-my-eyes have-detected nor if there-were danger from
multitudine ignavorum, non prompte vobis fidem rei
the-multitude of-cowards not readily to-you faith of-the-thing
compertae dixissem. Sunt enim illa inexplicabilia hostium
found-out would-I-have-said are for those countless of-the-enemies
milia, sed enim seges prorsus facilisque materia manibus
thousands but indeed a-crop utterly and-easy material to-the-hands
ac virtutibus vestris cedent, nisi cui vestrum arduus
and to-the-valors your they-will-yield unless to-anyone of-you arduous
quidem et fugiendus hic labor, o Macedones, videatur, si
indeed and to-be-fled this labor o Macedonians seems if
vobis tanta sit caedendi materia, quantam renuat ac recuset
for-you so-great be of-slaughtering the-material as-much-as refuses and rejects

victricis dexterae fatigatio.' Ad haec dicta gratantium
of-the-victorious right-hand the-weariness to these words of-the-rejoicing
voces et laetitia militum congruebat omni scilicet alacritate
the-voices and the-joy of-the-soldiers agreed with-all namely eagerness
bellum sibi desiderantium exspectantiumque.
war for-themselves desiring and-awaiting
Aciebus igitur ordinatis propter latus fluminis Strangae, 28
with-the-lines then drawn-up along the-side of-the-river Stranga
Darium etiam eodem Macedones adventare cum omni suo
Darius also to-the-same the-Macedonians approaching with all his
agmine iam intrepidi cernebant, omni scilicet parte terrarum,
column now fearless saw in-every namely part of-the-lands
qua visentium oculi vagarentur, phalangis eius atque
where of-the-onlookers the-eyes wandered of-the-phalanx his and
ordinibus confluentibus. Enim cum illa Strangae mobilitas
with-ranks flowing-together for when that of-the-Stranga mobility
naturalis rursus ad glaciem convenisset et stratum alvei
natural again to ice had-come-together and the-bed of-the-channel
tenacissimum fideliter etiam transeuntibus polliceretur, Darius
most-holding faithfully also to-those-crossing promised Darius
prior haud dubitans exercitus ordines suos perinde, ut in acie
first not doubting the-army's ranks his just as in the-line
constiterant, transgredi flumen intersitum iubet. Emensis
they-had-stood to-cross the-river intervening orders with-traversed
igitur universis, quidquid de Stranga metui potuisset,
then all whatever about the-Stranga to-be-feared could
idem Darius e curru regio, cuius suggestu altius
the-same Darius from the-chariot royal of-whose platform higher
vectus eminus cunctis visi consuerat, demutat ad currus,
carried from-afar to-all to-be-seen he-was-wont changes to the-chariots
quibus proelialibus utebantur, itidemque cuncti satrapae et
which fighting they-used and-likewise all the-satraps and

optimates eiusdem imitatu fecerant, multis iam exercitum
nobles of-the-same in-imitation had-done with-many now the-army
intercurrentibus, qui virtutis solitae singulos et necessitatum
running-among who of-valor customary each and of-necessities
praesentium commonerent. E diverso autem cum longe
present might-remind from opposite but when far
tranquillius doctiusque Alexander Macedones in cornua
more-calmly and-more-skillfully Alexander the-Macedonians into wings
protendisset, ipse Bucephala suo vectus imperatoriis officiis
had-extended he-himself on-Bucephalas his carried imperial duties
fungebatur. Tandem igitur bellicum lituo praecinente
performed at-last then the-war-signal with-the-trumpet sounding
pari utrimque procursu partes in sese procurrunt.
with-equal from-both-sides onrush the-sides against each-other run-forward
Primumque saxis ac missilibus iaculati, mox ensibus etiam
and-first with-stones and missiles having-shot soon with-swords also
strictis comminus proeliantur. Multa denique diei parte
drawn hand-to-hand they-fight with-much finally of-the-day part
consumpta, ubi non discriminis parilitate protrahi bellum
spent when not of-danger by-the-equality to-be-protracted the-war
Darius vidit, enimvero quod unum id morae Macedonibus
Darius saw but-indeed that one this of-delay for-the-Macedonians
videretur, ut metendis Persicis militibus tantummodo
seemed that in-mowing-down Persian soldiers only
laborarent, quo res periculi tenderet, haud dubie
they-labored whither the-matter of-danger tended not doubtfully
interpretatus fugam capessit et cursu sese, quam properiter
having-interpreted flight he-seizes and by-the-course himself as hastily-as
posset, praesentibus liberat. Strangam denique etiam tunc
he-could from-those-present frees the-Stranga finally even then
stratum firmitudine perviabili transmittit atque exit et ipse
paved with-firmness passable he-crosses and goes-out and he-himself

quidem iter ad regiam properat. Iam vero turbatis
indeed the-journey to the-palace hastens already but with-disordered
Persicis rebus, cum omnes pariter illae tot phalanges,
Persian affairs when all equally those so-many phalanxes
quae tamen ferri hostiumque nondum expertae essent, ad
which yet of-the-sword and-of-enemies not-yet experienced were to
eundem alveum avidius advenissent, sive ex illa fragilitate
the-same channel more-eagerly had-come whether from that fragility
naturae sive inconsulto agmine pariter inruente, Stranga suum
of-nature or with-rash column equally rushing-in the-Stranga its
officium deficit ingressosque submergit omnesque, quos
duty fails and-those-who-entered submerges and-all whom
alveo acceperat, necat. Reliquos porro insecuti Macedones
in-its-channel it-had-received kills the-rest further pursuing the-Macedonians
obtruncant, nec fere fit aliquid ex illis omnibus reliqui,
cut-down nor almost is-made anything of those all remaining
quo semesa curtaque Alexandri victoria videretur. Tum
by-which half-eaten and-curtailed of-Alexander the-victory might-seem then
ergo Darius omni spe meliore deposita cum ingressus
therefore Darius with-all hope better laid-aside when having-entered
regiam suam humi sese eiulabundus miserabiliter prorsus
palace his on-the-ground himself wailing pitiably utterly
et ignobilius constravisset, maerebat quidem et eorum
and more-ignobly had-thrown he-grieved indeed both their
mortes, qui sibi adeo infauste militassent, maerebat etiam
deaths who for-him so ill-fatedly had-fought he-grieved also
damnum regni, quod ad incitas deduxisset, tunc nomen
the-loss of-the-kingdom which to straits he-had-brought then the-name
et gloriam et parta tot saeculis deformataque nunc
and glory and won through-so-many ages and-disfigured now
Persidos regna lugebat, recursabantque eum et captae
of-Persia the-realms he-mourned and-there-came-back-to him both captured

urbes et subiugatae nationes et aequatio sui ad deorum
cities and subjugated nations and the-equating of-himself to of-the-gods
immortalium vires solisque ortus, quem consessorem
immortal the-powers and-of-the-sun's rising which as-throne-sharer
sibi dixerat gloriatior; qui quidem nunc profugus
to-himself he-had-called more-boastful who indeed now a-fugitive
desertusque et inops omnium foret profecto, dicens, nulli
and-deserted and destitute of-all was surely saying to-no-one
esse hominum rata vel stabilia fortunaria, quae si parvam
to-be of-men ratified or stable the-fortunes which if a-small
inclinationem status sui nacta sint, in contrarium protinus
inclination of-state its met they-have to the-opposite at-once
resultarent et quosque de culmine ad profundas tenebras
they-rebound and each-one from the-summit to deep darkness
urguerent. Indulgens ergo lamentis eiusmodi humi
press indulging therefore in-laments of-this-kind on-the-ground
porrectus inopsque solatiorum diu miseriter agitabat.
stretched and-destitute of-consolations long pitiably he-lived

29 Tandem tamen ubi satietas eum praesentium cepit, veluti
at-last yet when satiety him of-present-things seized as-if
sobrius maestitudinis factus conscribit litteras ad Alexandrum
sober from-sadness made he-writes a-letter to Alexander
in hanc sententiam: 'Darius domino Alexandro haec dicit:
in this sense Darius to-lord Alexander this says
Ante omnia quidem hoc moneo, uti te in hac fortunae
before all-things indeed this I-warn that you in this of-fortune
beatitudine esse tamen hominem recognoscas, siquidem satis
blessedness to-be yet a-man you-recognize since enough
idoneum argumentum ad id consilii tibi ego praesto sim,
suitable proof for this counsel to-you I at-hand am
quo profecto docere possim nil homines quam quaeque
in-whom surely to-teach I-can nothing men than each

praesentia sua praesumere oportere. Neque enim id modo
present-things their to-presume ought nor for this only
de me primum fortuna commenta est. Iam pridem istud
about me first fortune devised has already long-since that
in parente meo dea illa Xerxe monstraverat. Is quippe
in father my goddess that Xerxes had-shown he for
pari adrogantia cupitorum cum in vestros militiam
with-equal arrogance of-things-desired when against your-people campaign
delegisset, alioquin avidior rerum, quae regum glorias
he-had-chosen otherwise more-greedy of-things which of-kings the-glories
trahunt, pro hisce omnibus, quae petebat, opes suas
draw for these all which he-sought the-wealth his
totque illa militantium milia adtrita pariter amissaque
and-so-many those of-fighters thousands worn-down equally and-lost
*** ad poenitudinem vertit. Hisce igitur usus exemplis
(lacuna) to repentance turned with-these then using examples
doctusque de talibus pro Graeco nomine atque clementia
and-taught about such-things for the-Greek name and clemency
competentius feceris, si miseratione hosce impertias, quos
more-fittingly you-will-act if with-pity these you-share whom
tibimet fortuna supplices procuravit. Igitur ego per favisores
for-yourself fortune as-suppliants has-procured therefore I by the-favorers
tui deos nostrique adversatores quaeso obsecroque, uti
of-you gods and-of-us adversaries ask and-beseech that
mecum matris quoque et coniugis, ut te dignum
with-me of-my-mother also and of-wife as of-you worthy
est, filiorum quoque nostrorum meminisse non aspernere.
it-is of-children also our to-remember not you-scorn
Eius tibi benivolentiae vicissitudinem spondeo, uti thesauros,
of-that to-you goodwill the-return I-promise that the-treasures
quos ex vetusto nobis reges parentes subfossos humi
which from old for-us kings parents dug-under in-the-ground

abditosque latebris reliquerunt, ipse quoque coram referam
and-hidden in-hiding-places left I-myself also in-person will-report
indicemque, tumque tibi Persarum deos prosperos et
and-point-out and-then for-you of-the-Persians the-gods favorable and
imperium secundum Medorum etiam et reliquarum gentium
the-rule prosperous of-the-Medes also and of-the-other nations
deprecabor digno profecto tali favore caelestium, si in
I-will-pray-for worthy surely of-such favor of-the-heaven-dwellers if in
aliis quoque relevandis tuimet memineris ut mortalis.' Hisce
others also to-be-relieved yourself you-remember as a-mortal with-these
litteris sumptis Alexander contionem protinus optimatium et
letters received Alexander an-assembly at-once of-nobles and
praesentium cogit et ea, quae scripta sunt, recitari
of-those-present gathers and those-things which written are to-be-read-out
non differt. Enimvero tunc unus adsistentium Parmenion in
not he-delays but-indeed then one of-those-standing-by Parmenion into
eam sententiam vadit, uti nec humanitatis officium Alexander
that opinion goes that neither of-humanity the-duty Alexander
supplici denegaret et ea, quae sibi promiserat,
to-a-suppliant should-deny and those-things which to-him he-had-promised
libentius amplexaretur, redditurus scilicet matrem pariter et
more-gladly should-embrace going-to-return namely the-mother equally and
coniugem una cum filiabus mercede promissi. Sed enim
the-wife together with daughters for-the-reward of-the-promise but indeed
ad haec Alexander, 'Atqui,' inquit, 'o Parmenion, mihi
to these-things Alexander but he-says o Parmenion to-me
contra consilium est respondere Dario, frustra se illum
against-your counsel it-is to-answer to-Darius in-vain himself him
hisce in nos liberalitatibus iactitare, quod thesauros suos
with-these toward us generosities to-boast that treasures his
suaque regna pollicetur. Non enim videt cuncta ista haec,
and-his kingdoms he-promises not for he-sees all those these

quae nobis litteris largietur, iure belli nostra esse perfecta,
which to-us by-letter he-will-bestow by-the-law of-war ours to-be made
neque ille super hisce nobis aliquando bellum indixerat. Enim
nor he about these to-us ever war had-declared for
quod ipsi, quaecunque Darius possederat et obtinebat,
because we-ourselves whatever Darius had-possessed and held
nostra esse, id est virtutis praemia, arbitraremur, idcirco
ours to-be that is of-valor the-rewards we-thought therefore
in haec ipsa me militavisse, neque mihi in Asiam
for these very-things me to-have-campaigned nor for-me into Asia
transeundi aliam quis dixerit esse causam, nisi quod cuncta
of-crossing other anyone would-say to-be a-cause except that all
haec mihi ac meae praeiudicaveram possessioni. Sat
these-things for-me and for-my I-had-prejudged possession enough
igitur Dario videatur id modo unum lucri habere, quod
then to-Darius let-it-seem that only one-thing of-gain to-have that
imperterritus his omnibus veluti alienissimis incubaverit.'
undaunted on-these all as most-foreign he-has-brooded
Et in hanc sententiam dictatas litteras ferri ad Darium
and in this sense dictated a-letter to-be-carried to Darius
iubet. Ipse vero transit ad huiusmodi diligentiam, uti
he-orders he-himself but passes to of-this-kind diligence that
et vulnerati competentius curarentur et desiderati bello
both the-wounded more-fittingly should-be-cared-for and the-missing in-war
sepulchris ad meritum decorarentur. Atque in haec
with-tombs according-to merit be-adorned and in these
occupatus hiemis spatia transegit, quidquid interea temporis
occupied of-winter the-spaces he-passed whatever meanwhile of-time
fuerit, diis praestitibus sacrificiis obsecutus. Atque
was to-the-gods guardian with-sacrifices having-attended and
cum interea motu quodam animi repentino iussisset
when meanwhile by-impulse some of-mind sudden he-had-ordered

regiam Xerxi, quae opulentissima et pulcherrima videbatur,
the-palace of-Xerxes which most-opulent and most-beautiful seemed
iniecto igni concremari, id quoque mox per poenitentiam
with-thrown fire to-be-burned that also soon through repentance
reformatus exstingui atque ad faciem pristinam retineri
reformed to-be-extinguished and to form former to-be-kept
praecepit. Fuit eidem inter haec curae, ut sepulchra
he-ordered was to-the-same among these-things a-care that the-tombs
Persarum et sepulta olim eorum corpora intueretur, quod
of-the-Persians and buried once their bodies he-should-view because
in his sepulchris multi crateres aurei multaque magni
in these tombs many mixing-bowls golden and-many of-great
pretii condita ad templorum magnificentiam dicerentur. Sed
price stored for of-temples magnificence were-said but
egregie ceteris anteibat Cyri aedes, quae scilicet turris
outstandingly the-others surpassed of-Cyrus the-house which namely a-tower
ad faciem lapide levi quadratoque in summam altitudinem
to appearance of-stone smooth and-squared to the-highest height
exstructa processerat. Ipsi vero Cyro conditorium erat e
built had-risen himself but for-Cyrus the-sepulcher was of
lapide visendo, cuius sive natura perspicua sive inscalptio
stone to-be-seen of-which whether the-nature transparent or the-carving
adeo tenuis erat, ut nihilo prorsus, quidquid intererat,
so thin was that in-nothing utterly whatever lay-between
impediret intuentium diligentiam, adeo ut propter saxi
hindered of-the-onlookers the-diligence so that because-of of-stone
illius evidentiam capilli etiam conditi cadaveris viserentur.
that the-clearness the-hairs even of-the-buried corpse were-seen
Sed propter hoc sepulchrum flebile spectaculum Alexander
but beside this tomb a-tearful spectacle Alexander
protinus conspicatur. Erant enim Graeci ibidem complures,
at-once sees there-were for Greeks there very-many

quos cum variis ex causis diversisque temporibus captivitate
whom when for-various from causes and-different times by-captivity
rex aut regii subegissent, praesectis naribus auribusque
a-king or royals had-subdued with-cut-off noses and-ears
et quaecumque hominum vultibus decoriter natura providit,
and whatever of-men to-the-faces becomingly nature has-provided
suppliciali post servitio devincti circa haec sepulchra
by-penal afterward slavery bound around these tombs
custodes agitabant. Hi igitur omnes ubi iuxtim Alexandrum
as-guards lived these then all when close-by Alexander
agere sensere, pariter voce et eiulatu suae gentis
to-be they-perceived equally with-voice and with-wailing of-their nation
Graecisque supplicationibus obsecrantes audientem linguae
and-with-Greek supplications beseeching the-hearer of-tongue
propriae insignia facile permoverunt. Quare productos cum
their-own by-the-marks easily moved wherefore brought-forward when
videret adeo flebiliter mutilatos atque laniatos fideliterque
he-saw so pitiably mutilated and mangled and-faithfully
causas et ritum Persicum cognovisset, misertus eorum
the-causes and the-rite Persian had-learned pitying them
dederat quidem volentibus facultatem, uti viatico
he-had-given indeed to-the-willing the-means that with-journey-money
sumptuati, si vellent, ad patriam remearent. Enim cum
supplied if they-wished to homeland they-might-return for when
sese ignobiles foedatosque latere melius a conspectu
themselves ignoble and-disfigured to-hide better from the-sight
popularium quam ad ludibrium forsitan occursuros civibus
of-their-countrymen than to mockery perhaps going-to-meet to-the-citizens
praesentirent, huius quidem rei gratiam fecere regi,
they-foresaw for-this indeed thing thanks they-made to-the-king
sibi tamen et locum, quem colerent, et vitam ab
for-themselves yet both a-place which they-might-till and a-life from

indigentia laxiorem protinus impetravere. Dat igitur his et
want freer at-once they-obtained gives then to-them both
agros dapsiles et cetera etiam, quae ad agrorum exercitia
fields abundant and the-other also things-which for of-the-fields the-work
secundarent, proque supplicum civium consulit voluntate.
might-further and-for of-the-suppliant citizens he-provides the-wish

XII · THE DEATH OF DARIUS

Darius asks Porus for help. His satraps Bessus and Ariobarzanes stab him and leave him for dead. Alexander finds him dying, covers him with his cloak, and hears his last wishes: burial, honor for his mother, and Roxane as Alexander's wife. Alexander carries the bier himself, leaves the Persians their laws, crucifies the murderers, and takes Roxane as his wife; Rodogune answers that he is to them what Darius was, and he marches against Porus.

30 Sed inter haec rursus Darius comparando exercitui
but among these-things again Darius for-preparing the-army
scribendisque militibus animum confirmarat. Scribit denique
and-for-enrolling soldiers his-mind had-strengthened he-writes finally
Poro, regi Indiae, talia: 'Clam me non est in
to-Porus king of-India such-things hidden-from me not it-is into
indignationem tuam te ducere, quidquid nos ex hostico
indignation your you to-draw whatever we from the-enemy
patiamur; ferinam etenim expertus hostium rabiem vel
suffer a-beastly for having-experienced of-the-enemies the-rage or
ipsis etiam orbatus adfectibus ex illa regia beatitudine
of-the-very also bereft affections from that royal blessedness
in extimam veni Darius ille miserationem, cum mihi
into the-uttermost I-have-come Darius that misery since to-me
non mater amantissima, non uxor conspirantissima, non
not the-mother most-loving not the-wife most-harmonious not

suavissimi filii propter sint, quin haec cuncta adversantibus
the-sweetest sons near are nay these all to-the-adversaries
serviunt. Quare pollicente me non modo thesauros opesve
are-slaves wherefore with-promising me not only treasures or-riches
regales, sed regni quoque nostri quam amplissimam
royal but of-the-kingdom also our as most-ample
portionem, spretis Macedo supplicibus eiusmodi una
a-portion with-spurned the-Macedonian suppliants of-this-kind alone
tantum proventuum suorum adrogantia delectatur. Ergo,
only of-successes his in-the-arrogance is-delighted therefore
mi Pore, iam opibus fatigatus, animo tamen ad sententiam
my Porus now in-riches exhausted in-mind yet for opinion
milito, si modo faveas. Rursus enim proelium meditor,
I-campaign if only you-favor again for battle I-plan
et si quos queam, ad communionem duco sententiae.
and if any I-can to fellowship I-lead of-opinion
Quod si tu quoque tam iustae indignationi nostrae
but if you also so just to-indignation our
accesseris tuamque iniuriam existimaveris, quae in me
should-accede and-yours the-injury should-think which against me
grassata est, ita praecavebis, ut te dignum erit et
raged has so you-will-take-precaution as you worthy will-be and
maiorum nostrorum, et isti conspirationi consulere tuisque
of-ancestors our and to-that alliance to-attend and-to-your
commodis non deesse. Igitur ex opinione nostra
interests not to-be-lacking therefore according-to opinion our
feceris, si gentes quam plurimas congreges, quamque
you-will-act if nations as very-many you-gather and-as
primum queas, ad portas Caspias tendas. Enim ne sit
first you-can to the-gates Caspian you-head for lest be
militia tibi militantium inhonora, dabuntur a me
the-service to-you of-the-fighters unhonored there-will-be-given by me

singulis armatorum aurei tres pedestrium, equiti
to-each of-the-armed gold-pieces three of-the-foot to-the-horseman
vero quinque, ceteraque quae alimoniis abundarint.
but five and-the-other-things which in-provisions abound
Praedae quoque bellicae pars ex medio vestra fiat. At
of-booty also of-war a-part from the-middle yours be but
enim tibi privum munus istud habebis, quod indidem
indeed for-you as-private gift that you-will-have which thence
regalissimum est, Bucephalam equum scilicet una cum
most-royal is Bucephalas the-horse namely together with
regiis phaleris regioque cultu concubinisque omnibus, quas
royal trappings and-royal attire and-the-concubines all whom
octoginta centumque numerant, qui noverunt: eas omnes
eighty and-a-hundred count those-who have-known them all
ac tales cum ornatibus propriis consequere. Quare acceptis
and such with ornaments their-own you-will-obtain wherefore with-received
his litteris, ne versaveris, quaeso, verterisve tale consilium;
this letter do-not turn I-ask or-reverse such a-plan
quin properato ad nos venias una cum hisce, ut dixi,
rather hastily to us you-come together with these as I-said
gentibus, quae circa Indum colunt.' Et haec quidem
nations which around the-Indus dwell and these-things indeed
Darius.
Darius

31 Sed Alexandrum ista nequaquam latuere doctum
but from-Alexander these-things by-no-means were-hidden informed
ex transfuga Persa quodam. Quare coacta manu ad
by a-deserter Persian certain wherefore with-gathered band to
regiones Medicas tendit, comperiens Darium Ecbatanis agere.
the-regions Median he-heads learning Darius at-Ecbatana to-be
Omissa denique Asia iter, quod instituerat, festinabat
with-omitted finally Asia the-journey which he-had-undertaken he-hastened

satis adserentibus internuntiis, quod si Darius fugiens
firmly with-asserting go-betweens that if Darius fleeing
portas Caspias intravisset, inefficacem illam insecutionem
the-gates Caspian had-entered ineffective that pursuit
Alexander laboraret. Quae quidem etiam tum, veluti
Alexander would-labor-at which indeed even then as-if
parum fideli sermone acciperet, dubia rex arbitrabatur;
too-little in-faithful speech he-received doubtful the-king thought
sed cum Bazanus quidam, eunuchus regius, transfugisset
but when Bazanus a-certain eunuch royal had-deserted
isque certius enarrasset Darium protinus fugiturum,
and-he more-certainly had-related Darius at-once going-to-flee
addita est Alexandro properatio. Aderant tunc Dario
added was to-Alexander haste there-were-present then with-Darius
fugam molienti satrapae duo, quorum nomen alteri
flight contriving satraps two of-whom the-name to-the-one
Besas erat, alius vero dictus Ariobarzanes. Hi, cum iam
Bessus was the-other but called Ariobarzanes these when now
rumoribus calidioribus adesse Alexander nuntiaretur, rati
by-rumors hotter to-be-near Alexander was-announced thinking
se plurimum in gratiam provisuros esse victoris,
themselves very-greatly into favor going-to-provide to-be of-the-victor
si necem Dario intulissent, regem suum in sua
if death on-Darius they-had-brought king their in his-own
regia solitarium opprimunt et letaliter vulnerant ac si
palace alone they-overpower and mortally wound as if
iam mortuum derelinquunt cautissimum confirmantes, si
already dead leave-him most-cautious declaring if
tantisper a conspectu Alexandri recessissent, donicum
for-a-while from the-sight of-Alexander they-had-withdrawn until

illud facinus, quod perpetrarant, ut victor perpenderet,
that crime which they-had-committed that the-victor might-weigh-it
divulgaretur.
was-divulged

32 Iamque exercitus Macedonum rursus Strangae memorati
and-now the-army of-the-Macedonians again of-the-Stranga mentioned
fluenta transmiserat et Alexander protinus superveniens
the-streams had-crossed and Alexander at-once arriving
regiam, in qua obversari Darium compererat, cursim
the-palace in which to-dwell Darius he-had-learned hastily
inrumpit eumque recens vulneratum atque adhuc spirantem
bursts-into and-him freshly wounded and still breathing
miseriter offendit. Sed id Alexandro ultra opiniones
pitiably finds but that for-Alexander beyond the-expectations
omnium flebile et luctuosum admodum fuit. Videns
of-all tearful and mournful very was seeing
enim participem illius regii nominis ac maiestatis adeo
for the-sharer of-that royal name and majesty so
misere vivendi clausulae reluctantem, flens eiulansque
pitiably of-living against-the-close struggling weeping and-wailing
iacenti homini circumfunditur, eumque amplexabundus
on-the-lying man he-pours-himself and-him embracing
et contegens regia chlamyde in haec verba solatur:
and covering with-his-royal cloak in these words consoles
'Erige te, quaeso, Darie, nec deseras: si quid
raise yourself I-beg Darius nor abandon-hope if anything
enim ex animo est, quod iusseris, ratum habeto
for from the-heart is which you-order ratified hold-it
regna te tua recepturum futurumque rursus illum, qui
kingdoms you your going-to-recover and-going-to-be again that-one who
fueris.'
you-were

Sed ad haec Darius exsangui iam corpore cum voce etiam 33
but to this Darius bloodless now with-body when in-voice also
ad primum impetum deficeretur, manus supplices tendens
at the-first effort he-failed hands suppliant stretching
adtrectansque genua Alexandri adsistentis et circumplexus,
and-touching the-knees of-Alexander standing-by and embracing
ut poterat, tandem talibus loquitur: 'Licet mihi iam,
as he-could at-last in-such-words speaks it-is-allowed for-me now
Alexander victoriosissime, in hac constituto fortuna liberalius
Alexander most-victorious in this placed fortune more-freely
aliquid, quam qui victuri sunt, loqui idque a
something than those-who going-to-live are to-speak and-this from
me amicum tibi, non hosticum putes. Inter haec verba
me friendly to-you not hostile think among these words
blanda disceptes. Numquam igitur te regii nominis
soft you-should-weigh never then you of-the-royal name
decus tollat, nec si quid blandius fortuna promiserit,
the-glory let-lift nor if anything more-sweetly fortune shall-promise
idcirco te coeli compotem arbitrare. Enimvero consultius
therefore yourself of-heaven possessed think but-indeed more-prudently
futuris quam praesentibus consules. Nihil enim interest,
for-future-things than for-present you-will-provide nothing for lies-between
quod dispescat regiam nostram aut plebeculae dignitatem.
which divides royalty our or of-the-commoner the-dignity
En tibi ille Darius, nosti, quippe qui fuerim dominus
lo to-you that Darius you-knew for who I-was master
et deus scilicet huiusce mundi existimatus, ut flebilem
and god namely of-this world reckoned how a-tearful
mortem oppeto. Sed habeo obitus huiusce grande solatium,
death I-meet but I-have of-death this a-great comfort
quod in tuis manibus hunc spiritum iam effundam.
that in your hands this breath now I-shall-pour-out

Quare, quaeso, non invideas sepulturam, quam mihi
wherefore I-beg not you-grudge the-burial which to-me
una cum Persis tui quoque Macedones exsequantur.
together with the-Persians your also Macedonians may-carry-out
Tum Rogodunen matrem meam commendatam tibi ad
then Rodogune mother my entrusted to-you for
honorem dignum nomine nostro habeto atque participem
honor worthy of-name our hold and as-partner
Olympiadi tuae. Colito uxorem etiam meam; filiam vero
for-Olympias your cherish wife also my the-daughter but
Roxanen hac prece tibi commendo atque in manum
Roxane with-this prayer to-you I-commend and into your-hand
do quaesoque eam dignam coniugio tuo censeas. Erit
I-give and-I-beg her worthy of-marriage your you-judge it-will-be
enim illi ad solatium largiter, nihil sibi de regia
for to-her for comfort abundantly nothing to-herself from royal
coniunctione defuisse.' Et in hisce verbis Darius spiritum
union to-have-been-lacking and in these words Darius his-breath
transigit.
ends

34 Multis igitur lacrimis miserationem regiam Alexander
with-many then tears the-pity royal Alexander
prosecutus auferri cadaver et ad magnificentiam debitam
having-attended to-be-carried-off the-corpse and for magnificence due
proque sui dignitate ritu Persarum sepeliri iubet.
and-according-to his dignity by-the-rite of-the-Persians to-be-buried he-orders
Denique corpori regio transvehendo cum baiulos quosque
finally for-the-body royal to-be-carried when as-bearers all
nobilissimos suorum atque indigenas esse iussisset, ut
the-noblest of-his-own and natives to-be he-had-ordered that
illis officium tale non dedignantibus fieret, primus
by-them the-office such not disdaining might-be-done first

ipse onus feretri subiit. Quo viso cuncti quoque
himself the-burden of-the-bier undertook with-which seen all also
illud honoris primi maximum testimonium competebant.
that of-honor first greatest testimony were-competing-for
Infertur igitur sepulchris maiorum omnium tum Darius
is-borne then to-the-tombs of-the-ancestors of-all then Darius
ac paulo post aedes ipsi templumque construitur
and a-little after a-house for-him and-a-temple is-built
et lex dicitur religiosaque sollemnitas datur more
and a-law is-declared and-a-religious solemnity is-given by-custom
praescripto, uti dies ille annuus Persis celebratissimus
prescribed that day that yearly for-the-Persians most-celebrated
fieret, non sacris modo et laetitia hominumque
should-become not with-rites only and joy and-of-men
congregatu, verum spectaculis etiam atque certamine
gathering but with-spectacles also and contest
tum ad mulcedinem aurium solitis procurari tum ad
both to the-soothing of-the-ears wont to-be-provided and to
delectationem oculorum. Nam et fortitudine decertantibus
the-delight of-the-eyes for both in-strength to-those-contending
et voluptate sua cuique praemia et honores annuos
and in-pleasure their-own to-each prizes and honors yearly
statuit.
he-established
Postque haec, quod ex incerto regiae incitationis multi 35
and-after this because from uncertain royal impulse many
victoris animum formidarent eoque vagis terroribus
of-the-victor the-mind feared and-by-it with-vague terrors
agitarentur, quo cunctorum animos deliniret, edicit in
were-agitated that of-all the-minds he-might-soothe he-proclaims in
verba, quorum sententia haec fuit: ‘Rex Alexander, Ammonis
words of-which the-sense this was king Alexander of-Ammon

et Olympiadis filius, Persis dicit. Ea quidem, quae
and of-Olympias son to-the-Persians says those-things indeed which
iure belli transacta sunt, nullum profecto sapientium
by-the-law of-war done were none surely of-the-wise
puto pro culpae merito putaturum. Etenim diis
I-think according-to of-fault the-desert going-to-reckon for for-the-gods
ista sententia est, quam exsequi mortalibus sit necesse.
that opinion is which to-carry-out for-mortals be necessary
Quare superis quidem habeo gratias, favisoribus meis.
wherefore to-the-gods-above indeed I-have thanks favorers my
Enim nunc quoniam vos quoque nostra cura esse coepistis,
for now since you also our concern to-be have-begun
scire vos par est, satrapas quidem regionibus constitutos,
to-know you right it-is satraps indeed over-the-regions appointed
quibus ex more parebitis haud secus prorsus, ac si sub
whom by custom you-will-obey not otherwise utterly than if under
Dario mos erat; eoque id consultavi, ne incerta
Darius the-custom was and-for-this this I-consulted lest the-uncertain
regentium observatio plus penes vos haberet formidinis
of-rulers observance more with you should-have of-dread
quam veritatis. Utemini igitur legibus vestris pariter ac
than of-truth you-will-use then laws your equally and
moribus. Idem enim vobis conventus, eaedem sollemnitates
customs the-same for to-you assemblies the-same solemnities
et suavia; nec vagum quemquam a regione vel sedibus
and pleasures nor wandering anyone from region or seats
suis aberrasse quopiam probaturus sum, quippe quibus
his to-have-strayed anywhere going-to-approve am-I since to-whom
patrimonia privata habere permiserim, exceptis auro pariter
inheritances private to-have I-have-allowed except gold equally
et argento, quae communis hic usus magis esse regia
and silver which common this use more to-be royal

confitetur. Reliqua vero omnis moneta, quae cuique est,
confesses the-rest but all coinage which to-each is
domino permittetur. Armamentaria sane privata, si in usum
to-the-owner will-be-allowed armories indeed private if for use
publicum satrapae necessaria viderint, his quoque eos uti
public the-satraps necessary they-have-seen these also them to-use
oportere mandavi. Agmina pariter peregrinari inque aliena
ought I-have-ordered columns equally to-travel-abroad and-into others'
transire interdixerim, nisi quod tuendi sui gratia
to-cross I-have-forbidden except what for-protecting themselves the-sake
usque ad decem vigintive hominum numerum congreges
up to ten or-twenty of-men the-number gatherings
facient. Cetera multitudo pro rebellatione et hostico
they-shall-make the-other multitude for rebellion and enmity
punietur.
will-be-punished

Mercaturarum versurae sint itidem ut sub Dario pateantque 36
of-trades the-exchanges be likewise as under Darius and-let-be-open
commercia vel Graecis in Persas vel Persis etiam ad
commerce either for-Greeks to the-Persians or for-Persians also to
Graecos. Quippe provisum est, ut per satrapas etiam
the-Greeks for provided it-is that through the-satraps also
dimensa spatia viae publicae consternantur. Sollemnitates
measured the-spaces of-the-road public be-paved solemnities
vobis et certamina gymnica erunt; sed hisce omnibus
for-you and contests gymnastic will-be but over-these all
praesides dedi ex Alexandria mea viros Aegyptios,
presidents I-have-given from Alexandria my men Egyptian
quibus aureae quoque coronae gestamen et amictus
to-whom of-a-golden also crown the-wearing and cloak
purpureus est permissus, praeterque eos ingressu ceteros
purple is allowed and-apart-from them from-entry the-others

sacri templique prohiberi. Iudicia etiam, quae vulgo
of-the-sacred and-of-the-temple to-be-barred judgments also which commonly
privatim quisque faciebat, nisi per curiam publicam
privately each made except through the-assembly public
civitatum celebrari non licebit. Ac si praeter haec
of-the-cities to-be-held not will-be-allowed and if beyond these-things
aliquis ausus erit, hostis supplicio punietur.' Et
anyone dared will-have as-an-enemy with-punishment will-be-punished and
haec quidem Alexander usibus publicis. Quod vero ad
these-things indeed Alexander for-uses public what but for
comprehendendos eos, qui Darium vulneribus incesserant,
seizing those who Darius with-wounds had-attacked
dicit haec: 'Equidem me gaudeo hostem maximum Darium
he-says this indeed I rejoice the-enemy greatest Darius
servitio subiugasse, eiusque mortem licet ipse exsecutus
to-slavery to-have-subjugated and-his death although I-myself carried-out
non sim, habeo tamen hisce, qui id fecerint, gratiam.
not I-have I-have yet to-these who it have-done thanks
Quare quod benivolentiae suae erga me studium protestati
wherefore because of-goodwill their toward me zeal protested
sunt, ii, quique sunt auctores huiusce, hortor ac
they-have they and-whoever are authors of-this I-urge and
moneo, uti se prodant mihique indicent praemia debita
warn that themselves they-reveal and-to-me point-out the-rewards due
recepturi. Neve istud in ambiguum dubiumque quis
going-to-receive nor this into the-ambiguous and-doubtful anyone
transferat, iuro deos maiestatemque patris Ammonis
transfer I-swear by-the-gods and-the-majesty of-father Ammon
et Olympiadis matris meae, quique hi fuerint, eos
and of-Olympias mother my whoever these have-been them
me sublimes ac notissimos omnibus effecturum. Neque
me exalted and most-notable to-all going-to-make nor

enim non maximo digni praemio, qui eius consilia
for not of-greatest worthy reward who his plans
praeverterint, qui rursus bellum et nova mihi proelia
forestalled who again war and new for-me battles
meditabatur.'
was-planning
Ad hoc edictum multis quidem fletu res digna 37
at this edict for-many indeed of-weeping the-matter worthy
videbatur. Sed enim Besas et Ariobarzanes, auctores scilicet
seemed but indeed Bessus and Ariobarzanes the-authors namely
caedis Darii, Alexandro sese obvios ferunt et
of-the-slaughter of-Darius to-Alexander themselves to-meet bring and
professi facinus sponsionem praemii repetunt. Tunc viros
having-professed the-crime the-pledge of-the-reward reclaim then the-men
protinus comprehendi et quam editissimo in loco cruci
at-once to-be-seized and as highest in a-place on-a-cross
subfigi iubet. Quod cum praeter spem omnibus accidisset,
to-be-fixed he-orders which when beyond hope to-all had-happened
patefecit rex dignum se suo nomine existimasse, si
revealed the-king worthy himself of-his name to-have-thought if
quid de regia liberalitate subtraxerit, dum Dario modo
anything from royal generosity he-withdrew while for-Darius only
ultio debita procuraretur. Neque tamen hisce ipsis de
the-vengeance due was-procured nor yet to-these themselves of
periurio se reum fore, cum sublimes eos notissimosque
perjury himself accused going-to-be since exalted them and-most-notable
omnibus fore edicto promiserit, quos quidem facile
to-all going-to-be in-his-edict he-had-promised whom indeed easy
sit visere in illo suggestu crucibus adfixos. Tum omnibus
it-be to-see on that platform on-crosses fixed then to-all
et oratio placuit et regis benignitas comprobata est.
both the-speech pleased and of-the-king the-kindness approved was

Sed hisce gestis ex voto Persarum et illic
but with-these-things done according-to wish of-the-Persians and there
satrapa constituto, qui patruus Dario fuisset, eiusmodi
with-a-satrap appointed who uncle to-Darius had-been of-this-kind
litteras Alexander ad Rogodunen, matrem Darii, facit:
a-letter Alexander to Rodogune mother of-Darius makes
'Ea quidem cuncta, quae mihi adversum Darium fuere,
those-things indeed all which to-me against Darius were
perinde ut diis libuit, sunt transacta. Enimvero ego
just as to-the-gods it-pleased were done but-indeed I
votis petivi, ut eius incolumitatem nanctus socio
with-prayers sought that his safety having-gained as-a-partner
ipso uterer atque amico. Sed is quoniam suorum insidiis
himself I-might-use and friend but he since of-his-own by-the-plots
Besae vel Ariobarzanis sit interfectus, nihil a me reliqui
of-Bessus or of-Ariobarzanes was killed nothing by me left
fuit, quod ad prosequendum eius funus ultionemque dignum
was which for attending his funeral and-vengeance worthy
foret. Verum quoniam supremo Darius adloquio filiam suam
would-be but since in-his-last Darius address daughter his
Roxanen mihi in coniugio esse mandavit, voto eius et
Roxane to-me in marriage to-be commanded to-the-wish his and
precibus accessi; idque e re est de litteris iam
prayers I-have-acceded and-this to the-advantage it-is through letter now
praesciri.'
to-be-foreknown

38 Ad haec Rogodune mater Alexandro sic respondit: 'Nobis
to this Rodogune the-mother to-Alexander thus answered for-us
quoque id voti maxime fuit, ut quoniam diis inclinare
also this of-wish most was that since to-the-gods to-decline
Darii nomen ab illa potentia libuisset, in te nobis et
of-Darius the-name from that power it-had-pleased in you for-us both

illius dignitas et spes omnis incolumis servaretur, quem
his dignity and hope all unharmed should-be-preserved whom
virtutum scilicet et sapientiae merito dignum fortuna sua
of-virtues namely and of-wisdom by-merit worthy of-fortune his
nullus addubitet. Id ergo ut cunctis, ita nobis praecipue
no-one would-doubt this then as to-all so to-us especially
voluptati est, quas et in illa versura fortunae nihilum
a-pleasure is whom both in that turn of-fortune nothing
triste experiri contenderis et habitas pro veteri ac
sad to-experience you-have-strived and held according-to old and
tui nominis dignitate nunc etiam regno participes.
of-your name dignity now even in-the-kingdom as-partners
Igitur nobis quoniam id, Alexander, quod Darius, es,
therefore for-us since this Alexander that Darius you-are
in te nobis deos et deorum beneficia numeramus,
in you for-us the-gods and of-the-gods the-kindnesses we-count
hancque gratiam ut tibi confessae, ita Persarum quoque
and-this gratitude as to-you confessed so of-the-Persians also
proceribus palam fecimus, quo ipsorum etiam votis
to-the-nobles openly we-made that of-them also by-the-wishes
deorum immortalium numeris et consortio congregere.
of-the-gods immortal to-the-numbers and fellowship you-be-gathered
Quare tecum una, quod iubes, Roxanen quoque deinceps
wherefore with-you together what you-order Roxane also henceforth
venerabimur.' Et haec quidem mulieres ad regem. Eaedem
we-will-revere and these-things indeed the-women to the-king the-same
tamen satrapis et optimatibus talia: 'Agamus largiter
yet to-the-satraps and nobles such-things let-us-give abundantly
diis immortalibus gratias, quod Dario desinente Darii
to-the-gods immortal thanks that with-Darius ceasing of-Darius
nobis beneficia non desunt. Nam et Roxanen Alexander
for-us the-kindnesses not are-lacking for both Roxane Alexander

suam fecit eamque coniugii honore dignatur: qua
his-own has-made and-her of-marriage with-the-honor deems-worthy wherefore
cunctos de gratia una cum diis ipsis deorumque
all about favor together with gods themselves and-of-the-gods
simulacris vos regi adeo benignissimo oportebit, atque
images you to-the-king so most-kind it-will-behoove and
id, quod in commune proficiat, confiteri, cum eos, in quos
that which to common profits to-confess since those over whom
dominus factus est, mutuari gaudium suum maluerit quam
master made he-is to-share joy his he-has-preferred than
exercere.'
to-exercise

39 Sed ad eiusmodi legationes Alexander gravabatur. Neque
but at of-this-kind embassies Alexander was-annoyed nor
enim se parilibus cum diis honoribus exaequabat, quin
for himself with-equal with gods honors he-equated nay
immo meminisse semper ut mortalis suimet oportere
rather to-remember always that mortal of-himself it-behooves
admonebat. Nihilominus, ut quisque in haec officia
he-warned nonetheless as each to these duties
venisset, laudatos atque donatos honoratius dimittebat.
had-come praised and presented more-honorably he-dismissed
Idque quod de Roxanes nuptiis consuluisset, cum
and-that which about Roxane's marriage he-had-planned with
matre participat Olympiade iubetque id, quod ex priori
mother he-shares Olympias and-orders that which from earlier
praeda mundi regii fuerat Rogodunes atque Roxanes,
booty of-the-adornment royal had-been of-Rodogune and of-Roxane
referri ad eas protinus. Enim ut adfluerent regalibus
to-be-brought-back to them at-once for as they-abounded in-royal
copiis, ita monet verecundiae quoque disciplinaeque
riches so he-warns of-modesty also and-of-discipline

Graecae meminissent, colentes scilicet Olympiada ita,
Greek they-should-remember revering namely Olympias so
ut se rege et marito dignum foret; id enim
as to-them by-a-king and husband fitting would-be that for
uxore faciente nihil fore, quod magis esset
with-the-wife doing nothing going-to-be which more would-be
Alexandro placiturum. Atque his ita institutis et factis
to-Alexander going-to-please and with-these thus established and done
ordinatoque omni regno Persarum in Porum ducit
and-ordered all the-kingdom of-the-Persians against Porus he-leads
exercitum.
the-army

XIII · PORUS

His men, weary in the Indian desert, want to go home; Alexander shames them into following. Porus writes that even Dionysus was beaten in India; Alexander answers that such boasting marks recklessness, not courage. Heated bronze statues rout the elephants. Bucephalas is killed and dragged from the field. Alexander challenges Porus to single combat, spears him when he turns at a shout, and then calms the Indians with an oath and urges them to bury their king.

Emensus igitur desertas Indiae regiones aquarumque 1
having-traversed then the-deserted of-India regions and-of-waters
indigentissimas, bestiolarum quoque examinibus infestas, quas
most-lacking of-little-beasts also with-swarms infested which
phalangia vocant, multo labore ipse atque exercitus
spiders they-call with-much labor he-himself and the-army
fatigantur; in eademque iam duces eius se conloquia
are-wearied into and-the-same already the-leaders his themselves conversations
conferebant, quod sibi satis esse deberet usque ad Persas
brought that to-them enough to-be ought up to the-Persians
proeliis laborasse. His quoque subditis et Dario
in-battles to-have-labored with-these also subjected and for-Darius
consultum, quantum oportuerit, Graeciae, si modo vectigales
provided as-much-as it-behooved for-Greece if only tributaries
Persas patriae fecissent. Quo vero ille tenderet labor
the-Persians to-their-country they-had-made whither but that would-tend the-labor
in Indiam properantibus, adeo infestis omnibus locis feritate
into India to-those-hastening so hostile all places by-the-wildness
bestiarum? Quod si in tantum cupidine rei bellicae
of-beasts but if in so-far by-desire of-the-business of-war
Alexander urgueretur, non sane videri consultum, inconsultae
Alexander was-urged not truly to-seem prudent to-rash

isti cupidini si comes fieret reliqua multitudo. Iret
that desire if as-companion should-become the-remaining multitude let-him-go
ergo, quo vellet, duceretque, qui vellent; se tamen
then where he-wished and-lead those-who wished themselves yet
missos facere deberet tot iam bellis exercitos ac fatigatos.
dismissed to-make he-ought by-so-many already wars exercised and wearied
Enimvero his Alexander cognitis advocatoque omni tam
but-indeed with-these Alexander learned and-with-summoned all both
Persico scilicet quam Macedonico exercitu in haec verba
Persian namely and Macedonian army in these words
contionatur: 'Unus mihi idemque est sermo apud utrumque
harangues one to-me and-the-same is speech to both
vestrum, o fortissimi milites, quive mecum Macedones huc
of-you o bravest soldiers whether-who with-me as-Macedonians here
venistis, quive Persae experti imperium post victoriam
have-come or-who as-Persians having-experienced the-rule after the-victory
nunc mihi commilitium profitemini. Igitur in commune vobis
now to-me fellowship-in-arms profess therefore in common to-you
dictum hoc habetote, quod si me solum ire in Indos
said this have that if me alone to-go against the-Indians
eorumque bella decrestis, faciam id quidem intrepidus ac
and-their wars you-decree I-will-do it indeed fearless and
libens. Enimvero unum admoneam, quod adtestemini, nihil
gladly but-indeed one-thing let-me-remind which you-may-attest nothing
esse mirum, si ad futura quoque discrimina solus ire
to-be wonderful if to future also perils alone to-go
compellar, cum prioribus quoque solus animi virtute subfecerim.
I-be-compelled since in-former also alone of-spirit by-valor I-sufficed
2 Neque mihi est arduum, Macedones mei, eadem consulere
nor to-me is-it arduous Macedonians my the-same to-consult
nunc, quibus vos rectos in hanc solus possessionem victoriae
now with-which you guided into this alone possession of-victory

duxerim, sola ferme cura imperatoria militans in hisce, quas
I-have-led alone almost by-care imperial campaigning in these which
confecerim expeditiones, nisi forte istud a me adrogantius
I-accomplished campaigns unless perhaps that by me more-arrogantly
ac non verius dictum esse miremini, cum unum quodvis
and not more-truly said to-be you-wonder since one any
imperatorium sapiens prudensque consultum praestet manum
imperial wise and-prudent decision surpasses the-hand
multorum inconsultius laborantium. Recognoscite igitur
of-many more-rashly laboring recognize then
pariter et recensete, an vos umquam subficere potuisse
equally and review whether you ever to-suffice to-have-been-able
tot illis Darii milibus ac fortitudini putaretis, quae ego
to-so-many those of-Darius thousands and to-fortitude would-think which I
princeps semper militiae laborisque semper dux in proeliis
as-leader always of-soldiering and-of-labor always as-captain in battles
insuperavi, nisi forte aliis addubitantibus timentibusque
overcame unless perhaps with-others doubting and-fearing
egomet ipse legationem mei apud Darium facere dubitavi,
I myself the-embassy of-myself to Darius to-make hesitated
nisi uspiam me cunctantem aut residem in proelio denotastis.
unless anywhere me delaying or idle in battle you-have-marked
Si ergo vobis ista sunt amica consilia, uti deserto me
if then to-you these are friendly counsels that with-deserted me
solitarii ad Macedoniam repedetis, ite sane: libens vos votis
alone to Macedonia you-return go indeed gladly you with-prayers
properantibus prosequar, modo si concordi animo id facere
hastening I-will-escort only if with-harmonious mind this to-do
possitis neque dissidentes in nulla pericula prolabamini,
you-can nor quarreling into no dangers you-slip
ex quis facile noscatis omnem exercitus fortunam atque
from which easily you-may-know all of-an-army the-fortune and

virtutem consistere in animo sapientis imperatoris.' His
valor to-consist in the-mind of-a-wise commander with-these
auditis haud dubie cunctos pariter et poenitentia fatigabat.
heard not doubtfully all equally also repentance wearied
Confirmatis denique animis, quaesunt et sedare iracundiam
with-strengthened finally minds they-ask both to-calm the-anger
regis, et uti se obsecutoribus ad cupita.
of-the-king and to-use them as-followers to the-things-desired
3 Atque ita fines Indiae ingressis obvii fuere legati,
and so the-borders of-India to-those-having-entered met-them were envoys
quos rex Porus ad Alexandrum cum litteris miserat, quarum
whom king Porus to Alexander with a-letter had-sent of-which
sententia haec erat: 'Porus rex Alexandro dicit haec. Incursanti
the-sense this was Porus king to-Alexander says this invading
infestantique tibi fines ac civitates meas mando, Alexander,
and-harassing to-you the-borders and cities my I-command Alexander
dicoque, uti cum te hominem memineris, nihil ad deos
and-say that since you a-man you-remember nothing against the-gods
inconsultius moliare. Neque enim urguere te debent ad
more-rashly you-attempt nor for to-urge you ought to
ausa temeraria fortunae hominum imbecilliorum hortarique,
daring reckless the-fortunes of-men weaker and-to-exhort
uti Indos incessas, quod tibi fuerit in Persas fortuna
that the-Indians you-attack because to-you was against the-Persians fortune
proclivior. Non enim te ex eo iuvari aucta speraverit virtus
more-favorable not for you from it to-be-helped increased will-have-hoped valor
tua, cum primum nostri ceperis experimentum. Patet
your when first of-us you-have-taken trial it-lies-open
quippe cuivis nosse, quis ille sim Porus, et an is ulli
for to-anyone to-know who that am Porus and whether it to-anyone
adversum nos licuerit experiri fortitudine, quippe qui non
against us has-been-allowed to-try by-fortitude since we-who not

homines modo, verum etiam deos viribus antestemus. Quibus
men only but also gods in-strength surpass for-which
diis inefficacem audaciam fuisse adversum nos documenta
gods ineffective daring to-have-been against us proofs
sunt antiquissima vel vestra, quippe cum illum ipsum
are most-ancient even yours for since that very
Liberum vestrum, qui apud vos deus existimetur, temere
Liber your who among you a-god is-reckoned rashly
in haec inrumpentem irritum superatumque hinc Indi
into these-parts bursting foiled and-overcome hence the-Indians
in fugam verterint. Quare non modo suadeo, verum iubeo
into flight turned wherefore not only I-advise but I-order
quoque abire te hinc ad tuas Graecias contentum Darii
also to-depart you hence to your Greeces content of-Darius
fortuna et paribus gentibus viribusque ad illam vestri
with-the-fortune and with-equal nations and-strengths for that of-your
nominis mediocritatem. Neque enim si nobis Graecia vestra
name mediocrity nor for if to-us Greece your
opus foret, non olim atque ante Xerxae conatus subacta
of-need were not long-ago and before of-Xerxes the-attempt subdued
Indis foret. Enimvero quoniam inutilis nobis est
by-the-Indians it-would-have-been but-indeed since useless to-us it-is
nihilque dignum opibus nostris aut amoenitatibus habet,
and-nothing worthy of-riches our or delights it-has
neque quaesita est neque quaeretur. Is enim demum
neither sought has-it-been nor will-be-sought that for at-last
labor suavis est proeliantibus, ex quo sit etiam idonea spes
labor sweet is to-those-fighting from which is also a-suitable hope
praemiorum. Neque enim est nostrum, in magno conatu digno
of-rewards nor for is-it ours in a-great effort worthy

operae pretio caruisse. Quare id tertio iam praedico ac
of-the-work price to-have-lacked wherefore this for-the-third already I-foretell and
denuntio tibi, uti facessas ex his, quibus imperare non possis.'
declare to-you that you-depart from these which to-command not you-can
4 His litteris publice recitatis, Alexander ait: 'Nunc quoque
with-this letter publicly read Alexander says now also
vos moneo, sanctissimi milites, ne quid rursum magnificentia
you I-warn most-revered soldiers lest anything again the-magnificence
ista barbarica animos vestros inconsultius turbet. Auditis
this barbarian minds your more-rashly disturb with-heard
enim litteris Pori revocate illam quoque litterarum Darii
for the-letter of-Porus recall that also of-the-letter of-Darius
memoriam, videteque, num adrogantia dispar, num dissimilia
the-memory and-see whether the-arrogance unlike whether unlike
verba aut sit dissimilis imprudentia. Sicut enim istae ferae
the-words or be unlike the-imprudence just-as for those wild
bestiae, quae apud ipsos sunt plurimae, pardi videlicet et
beasts which with them are very-many leopards namely and
leones elephantique, solo illo naturae suae fretae impetu
lions and-elephants on-alone that of-nature their relying-on impulse
et corporis alacritate, facile hominum sapientia subiugantur,
and of-body on-the-agility easily of-men by-the-wisdom are-subjugated
itidem hosce barbaros intelligetis fiducia multitudinis
likewise these barbarians you-will-understand on-confidence of-number
fretos, nulla tamen praeditos imperatoria Graecave sapientia
relying with-no yet endowed imperial or-Greek wisdom
perfacile mox in dicionem nostram esse venturos, atque
very-easily soon into the-sway our to-be going-to-come and
itidem prudentia nostra ad perniciem sui uti posse,
likewise the-prudence our for the-ruin of-themselves to-use to-be-able
ut in feras est facilis hominibus effectus.'
as against beasts is easy for-men the-achievement

In hunc fere modum Alexander cum suos adhortatus esset, 5
in this nearly manner Alexander when his-men exhorted had
ipse quoque Pori litteris responsurus in hanc sententiam
he-himself also of-Porus to-the-letter going-to-answer in this sense
scribit: 'Terreri nos putans, Pore, litteris tuis magnum
writes to-be-terrified us thinking Porus by-letter your a-great
admodum meis consiliis incentivum praestitisti, quo nobis
very to-my plans incentive you-have-furnished by-which for-us
in vos dispositum est militare. Dicis enim nihil eiusmodi
against you planned it-is to-campaign you-say for nothing of-this-kind
habere Graecos, quod sit dignum ad opulentiam vestram, vos
to-have the-Greeks which be worthy for opulence your you
vero hisce esse omnibus adfluentes, quae sint ad beatitudinem
but with-these to-be all abounding which are for blessedness
necessaria. Addis praeterea operae pretium considerari
necessary you-add besides of-the-work the-worth to-be-considered
militantibusque oportere uti, ne frustra laboretur. Quibus
and-for-those-campaigning it-behooves that not in-vain it-be-labored by-which
omnibus doces, quod nos quoque alacrius ad vos tendere
all-things you-teach that we also more-eagerly to you to-head
debeamus, unde nobis haec cuncta, quae adeo vos praedicatis,
ought whence to-us these all-things which so you proclaim
accesserint. Fateor enim nihil esse Graecis eiusmodi, quorum
may-accrue I-confess for nothing to-be for-the-Greeks of-this-kind of-whose
vos divitiis gloriamini, atque idcirco indigentes meliorum a
you in-riches boast and therefore needing better-things from
vobis petere necessaria. Illud vero ridiculum, ut cum te
you to-seek necessaries that but laughable that while yourself
homunculis praeferas, tum diis quoque potiorem esse
above-little-men you-prefer then than-the-gods also more-powerful to-be
pronunties, quod ni adesset litteris tuis, in reliquis fiducia
you-pronounce which unless were-present in-letter your in the-rest the-confidence

fortitudinis dici posset; quoniam vero hisce non temperas,
of-fortitude to-be-said could since but in-these not you-restrain
temeritas utique est intelligenda. Quare sicuti tibi constantiam
recklessness surely is to-be-understood wherefore just-as for-you constancy
fingit ille contemptus, velut earum fortuna gentium minime
feigns that contempt as-if of-those by-the-fortune nations least
moveare, quae sunt a nobis bello superatae, ita nos
you-should-be-moved which are by us in-war overcome so us
quoque nihilum omnino terrebit verborum ista magnificentia,
also nothing at-all will-terrify of-words that magnificence
quae temeritatis vestrae index potius est quam fortitudinis.'
which of-recklessness your the-index rather is than of-fortitude
6 His lectis Porus ad belli studia incitabatur. Cogit
with-these read Porus to of-war the-pursuits was-roused he-gathers
ergo exercitum et quam plurimos elephantos ceteraque
therefore an-army and as very-many elephants and-other
genera bestiarum, quibus Indi commilitant; contraque eos
kinds of-beasts with-which the-Indians campaign and-against them
Macedonum et Persarum aderat multitudo. Enimvero cum
of-the-Macedonians and of-the-Persians was-present the-multitude but-indeed when
illos Pori numeros Macedones intuerentur unaque his bestias
those of-Porus the-numbers the-Macedonians beheld and-together these the-beasts
memoratas, admodum animo turbari coepere, haud dubie
mentioned very in-mind to-be-troubled they-began not doubtfully
cunctabundi ob insolentiam eiusmodi proelii, quod una
hesitating because-of the-unwontedness of-this-kind of-battle that together
esset cum hominibus barbaris et omnigenis bestiis agitandum.
it-was with men barbarian and of-all-kinds beasts to-be-waged
Id animi eorum non clam Alexandrum fuit. Nam ipse
this of-mind their not hidden-from Alexander was for he-himself
quoque unacum bestiarum ista novitate movebatur. Quaesita
also together-with of-the-beasts that novelty was-moved with-sought

ergo belli ratione, comminiscitur per astutiam, quo
therefore of-war a-method he-devises through cunning by-what
demum genere averti posset impetus bestiarum. Igitur
at-last kind to-be-turned-aside could the-onset of-the-beasts therefore
statuas aereas quam plurimas advehi secum quibusque de
statues bronze as very-many to-be-brought with-him each from
proximis locis ad locum proelii iubet. Quod ubi factum est,
the-nearest places to the-place of-battle he-orders which when done it-was
ibidem igne subiecto quam plurimo calefieri eas et igniri
there with-fire placed-under as very-much to-be-heated them and to-be-fired
festinat; erantque eae statuae post primos aciei ordines sitae
he-hastens and-were these statues behind the-first of-the-line ranks set
atque ita ante belli tempus hostibus invisitatae. Enimvero
and so before of-war the-time to-the-enemies unseen but-indeed
ubi signa bellica crepuere primique concursus partium
when the-signals of-war crashed and-the-first clashes of-the-sides
sperabantur, Indi barbari feras illas bestias prae se ire
were-expected the-Indian barbarians the-wild those beasts before them to-go
dimittunt, ita scilicet doctas, ut cum primum in adversos
send-off so namely trained that when first against the-adversaries
volavissent circaque eas proeliaturi hostes occuparentur,
they-had-flown and-around them going-to-fight the-enemies were-occupied
nihil Indis supervenientibus morae fieret, quin libera
nothing for-the-Indians arriving of-delay should-be that-not the-free
iaculandi hostis trucidandique facultas pateret. Id ubi factum
of-hurling-at the-enemy and-of-slaughtering opportunity lay-open this when done
est, praedocti Macedonum ordines primi paululum de loco,
was forewarned of-the-Macedonians the-ranks first a-little from the-place
quo institerant, repedantes ignitas statuas incursantibus bestiis
where they-had-stood stepping-back the-fired statues to-the-charging beasts
produnt. Quas cum falsa facie velut etiam candenti colore,
expose which when by-false appearance as-if also with-glowing color

impetu belli complexu et morsibus adfectarent, mox sauciae
in-the-onset of-war with-embrace and bites they-sought soon wounded
debilesque aut protinus cadere aut refugere coepere omnino
and-weakened either at-once to-fall or to-flee-back began at-all
nullum auxilii ullius emolumentum dominis adferentes.
no of-help any profit to-their-masters bringing
7 Sicque Indis ab illo ferarum auxilio destitutis secunda
and-so with-the-Indians from that of-beasts help deserted a-second
concursio fuit, ut ipsi privi inter sese virtutibus
clash was that they-themselves on-their-own among themselves by-valors
experirentur. Igitur Persae coepere sagittis Indos incessere
should-make-trial therefore the-Persians began with-arrows the-Indians to-attack
ceteroqui nudos armorum eminusque configere, neque minus
otherwise bare of-arms and-from-afar to-pierce nor less
eos equestribus proeliis quam vehementissime Macedones
them in-cavalry battles than most-vehemently the-Macedonians
fatigare. Cum quibus una cum ipse Alexander periculo
to-wear-down with whom together when he-himself Alexander from-danger
non deesset, equus ille Bucephala, quo vehebatur, Pori
not was-lacking the-horse that Bucephalas on-which he-was-carried of-Porus
dextra vulneratur, et cadit, idque Macedonibus supra
by-the-right-hand is-wounded and falls and-this to-the-Macedonians beyond
omnia, quae possunt in proeliis incommoda videri, ingratum
all-things which can in battles disadvantages to-seem unwelcome
fuit. Quare neglecto omni omnino opere bellandi equum
was wherefore with-neglected all at-all work of-warring the-horse
exanimem ipse cauda in partes suas retrahit metuitque, ne
lifeless he-himself by-the-tail to the-parts his-own drags-back and-fears lest
spolium illud Indi suum vellent, quod esset Alexandro
spoil that the-Indians their-own should-wish which would-be to-Alexander
pudibundum. Atque ita receptis suis et proelio dissoluto
shameful and so with-recovered his-men and with-battle dissolved

viginti ferme dies indutiis dantur, quibus utrimque sepeliendis
twenty about days for-truce are-given in-which on-both-sides in-burying
exurendisque his, qui apud alteros proelio desiderati fuerant,
and-cremating those who among the-others in-battle lost had-been
institere. Sed hisce quibus dixi diebus haud pauci Persarum
they-were-intent but in-these which I-said days not few of-the-Persians
in partes Pori transire Alexandro nuntiabantur. Quod cum
to the-side of-Porus to-cross to-Alexander were-reported which when
et impune fieri pervideret et consuetudinem haud
both with-impunity to-be-done he-saw and the-custom not
commode gliscere fidei negligentibus, iniit consilium, uti
suitably to-grow of-faith for-the-neglecters he-entered-on a-plan that
Porum ad solitarium ipse proelium provocaret, cetera dicens
Porus to a-single he-himself combat should-challenge the-other saying
genera bellandi fortunam exspectare potius quam virtutem aut
kinds of-warring fortune to-await rather than valor or
gloriam ducum. Enimvero sibi non indidem laudem videri
the-glory of-leaders but-indeed to-himself not thence praise to-seem
imperatores captare debere, unde subditis suis periculum
commanders to-hunt ought whence for-subjects their danger
fieret. Optimum ergo in utroque iudicatum iri, si
arose best therefore in each judged to-be-going if
suis ipsimet duces manibus experirentur. Quod si
with-their-own themselves the-leaders hands made-trial which if
Poro sederet, fortunam eiusmodi minime aspernaturum. Id
to-Porus it-sat fortune of-this-kind least going-to-spurn this
barbarus sibi libenti satis offerri profitetur adquiescitque
the-barbarian to-himself willing enough to-be-offered professes and-acquiesces
condicioni, quam Alexander fecerat, scilicet aestimatione
in-the-condition which Alexander had-made namely with-reckoning
barbarica de modo corporum mensuram virium metiens,
barbarian by the-measure of-bodies the-measure of-strength measuring

cum se proceritudine corporis et cetera magnitudinis
since himself in-tallness of-body and the-other of-size
congruentia longe distare ab exiguitate Alexandri pervideret,
agreement far to-be-distant from the-smallness of-Alexander he-saw
ipse quinque ferme cubitis evectior, cum Alexandrum
he-himself five about cubits taller since Alexander
qui visitavere vix tribus cubitis numeravissent.
those-who visited scarcely at-three cubits had-counted

8 Hac igitur adrogantiae spe cum dies pariter et locus
with-this then of-arrogance hope when the-day equally and the-place
proelio constitisset fieretque pugna regalis, primitus quidem
for-battle had-been-set and-there-was a-fight royal at-first indeed
anceps diu fortuna bellantibus videbatur, non minus Alexandro
doubtful long fortune to-the-warriors seemed not less with-Alexander
tempus incursandi rimante, quam Poro locum vulneris
the-time for-charging searching than with-Porus the-place of-a-wound
declinante. Sed cum forte apud Indos ex quadam
avoiding but when by-chance among the-Indians from a-certain
repentina conversione Pori strepitus et conclamatio exstitisset,
sudden turning of-Porus a-din and shouting had-arisen
avertissetque os, quo causam Porus illius strepitus
and-had-turned-away his-face by-which the-cause Porus of-that din
cognovisset, involat Alexander atque eius inguina telo
might-learn flies-in Alexander and his groin with-a-spear
eminus transfigit eumque prosternit. Hac indignatione Indi
from-afar pierces and-him lays-low by-this indignation the-Indians
excitati in arma prosiliunt instaurantque id proelium, quod
roused into arms leap-forth and-renew that battle which
absque vulgi periculo pactum inter reges erat.
without of-the-common-folk danger agreed between the-kings had-been
Enimvero Alexander saepe iam Indicam vim expertus non
but-indeed Alexander often already the-Indian force having-experienced not

facilem rei bellicae manu silentium quaerit et ab hoste
easy of-the-business of-war by-hand silence seeks and from the-enemy
patientiam petit paulisperque patientibus in hunc modum
patience asks and-for-a-little-while to-the-patient in this manner
loquitur: 'Non equidem video causas, o Indi, tam inconsulti
speaks not indeed do-I-see the-causes o Indians so rash
huiusce discriminis vestri, cum nihil egerit aliud nostra
of-this peril your since nothing has-done other our
inter nos proeliatio, quam uti vestro commodo consultaret.
among us fighting than that for-your advantage it-might-provide
Igitur cum omnis militantium vis ei ostentationi
therefore since all of-the-fighters the-force to-that display
proficiat, si teste imperatore suo, quod singulis sit devoti
profits if with-witness commander their what to-each be of-devoted
animi, monstraverint, quid hoc rei est, quod incassum
spirit they-have-shown what this of-the-matter is that in-vain
discrimina vestra profunditis, Pori iam testimonio facessente?'
dangers your you-pour-out of-Porus already with-the-witness departing
Ad haec dicta cum Indi se nolle Graecis 9
to these words when the-Indians themselves not-to-wish to-the-Greeks
fieri captivos dominumque Alexandrum pati vulgi
to-become captives and-as-master Alexander to-endure by-the-crowd's
murmure testarentur, secundo etiam sermone Alexander
murmur attested in-a-second also speech Alexander
monet, solverent hunc cordis sui metum exspectationemque
warns they-should-loosen this of-heart their fear and-the-expectation
curarum eiusmodi abicerent atque secluderent, et fidem
of-cares of-this-kind cast-off and shut-out and faith
rati dat iureiurando. Neque enim sibi libidinem talem
of-the-ratified gives by-oath nor for to-himself lust such
aut desiderium umquam Indici imperii adstitisse, sed enim
or desire ever of-Indian rule to-have-stood-by but indeed

omnem illam causam proelii hanc fuisse, si experimento ipso
all that cause of-battle this to-have-been if by-the-trial itself
fortitudinis suae gentes quoque ceterae didicissent, amicitiam
of-fortitude his the-nations also other had-learned friendship
suam singulos magis quam vehementiam experiri convenire.
his each rather than violence to-try to-be-fitting
Igitur irent quisque securus in sua nec ultra quicquam
therefore let-them-go each secure into their-own nor further anything
de victorum insolentia trepidarent, cum illa quoque causa
about of-the-victors the-insolence let-them-tremble since that also cause
ab indignatione victoris sese utique tueretur, quod plerique
from indignation of-the-victor himself surely protected that very-many
soleant in ultionem prioris contumeliae insequi superatos. Non
are-wont in vengeance of-former insult to-pursue the-overcome not
Indos enim culpae illius reos apud se fuisse, verum
the-Indians for of-fault that accused before himself to-have-been but
Porum, qui sat sibi poenarum, quae lex belli, monuit,
Porus who enough to-him of-punishments which the-law of-war warned
praestitisset. 'Sed ne ipsi quidem ultra iam hostis sum,' ait.
had-paid but not to-him even further now an-enemy I-am he-says
'Quin etiam hortor moneoque vos, uti regem, ut fas exigit et
nay even I-urge and-warn you that the-king as right demands and
vobis moris est, sepulturae inferatis.' Ad haec dicta Alexandri
to-you of-custom is to-burial you-bring to these words of-Alexander
non cunctanter quidem adquieverat vis Indorum. Sed enim
not hesitatingly indeed had-acquiesced the-force of-the-Indians but indeed
Alexandro non absque utili sapientia haec humanitas sederat,
for-Alexander not without useful wisdom this humanity had-sat
cum et vim Indicam saepe expertus foret et pleraque
since both the-force Indian often having-experienced he-was and very-much

praedae eorum, quae secum plurima gentis suae more Indi
of-the-booty their which with-them very-much of-nation their by-custom the-Indians
ad proelium vehunt, in suam potestatem sciret esse translapsa.
to battle carry into his power he-knew to-be fallen

XIV · THE BRAHMANS AND THE MARVELS OF INDIA

The naked Brahmans, who own nothing, answer Alexander's questions: which are more, the living or the dead; which came first, night or day; which beast is cunningest. They ask for immortality, and he answers that he too lives by the gods' law. His letter to Aristotle tells of the soft Sabaeans, an island that sinks with Philon and his companions, a giant beast, a bitter river, a pool of Sesonchosis, and the snakes and monsters that come at night to drink.

Quare domitis hostibus avectaque praeda ad Oxydracontas, quae 10
wherefore with-tamed enemies and-carried-off booty to the-Oxydracae which
gens exim colit, iter suum dirigit, non illam quidem gentem
nation next dwells journey his he-directs not that indeed nation
ut hosticam incursaturus — neque enim illis studia sunt
as hostile going-to-attack nor for to-them zeal is
armorum—, sed quod celebre esset Indos, quos gymnosophistas
of-arms but because famous it-was the-Indians whom gymnosophists
appellant, hisce in partibus versari, opum quidem omnium et
they-call these in parts to-dwell of-riches indeed of-all and
cuiusque pretii negligentes, solis vero diversoriis patientissimi,
of-every price neglectful in-alone but lodgings most-enduring
quae humi manu exhauriunt aditibus perangusta, enimvero
which in-the-ground by-hand they-dig-out in-entrances very-narrow but-indeed
subter capacius spatiata, quod id genus aedium neque pretii
beneath more-capaciously spread because that kind of-houses neither of-price
scilicet indigens et ad flagrantiam solis aestivi apricius
namely needing and against the-blaze of-the-sun of-summer sunnier

habebatur. Ii igitur cum comperissent Alexandrum ad sese
was-held they then when they-had-learned Alexander to them
contendere, primates suos, quos scilicet a sapientiae modo
to-hasten the-chiefs their whom namely by of-wisdom measure
censent, obviare adventanti iubent cum litteris huiuscemodi:
they-judge to-meet the-arriving-one they-order with a-letter of-this-kind
'Gymnosophistae Bragmanes Alexandro homini dicunt. Si
the-Gymnosophists Brahmans to-Alexander a-man say if
tendis ad nos proeliaturus, utique tibi propositum est, quid
you-head to us going-to-fight surely to-you a-purpose it-is what
nobis adferas, habes porro, quod auferas, nihil. Sin
to-us you-may-bring you-have moreover what you-may-carry-off nothing but-if
vero venis ut discas, quae a nobis scilicet sciri queant,
indeed you-come that you-may-learn what by us namely to-be-known can
nulla est invidentia. Etenim non arbitramur inter hasce
no there-is grudging for not we-think among these
scientias nostras causam discordiae positam, cum tibi amica
sciences our a-cause of-discord placed since to-you friendly
res proelium, nobis vero philosophia noscatur.' His lectis
a-thing battle to-us but philosophy is-known with-these read
Alexander pacificum iter agere decrevit; videtque homines
Alexander a-peaceful journey to-make decided and-he-sees men
reliqua nudos, sed amictu simplici superiectos, diversantesque
otherwise naked but with-cloak simple covered and-dwelling
his aedibus seu speluncis, quarum relatio supra est.
in-these houses or caves of-which the-account above is
Eorum filii coniugesque pascendis pecudibus occupabantur.
their children and-wives with-grazing cattle were-occupied
11 Ergo instituit Macedo cum hisce hactenus loqui, ac
therefore began the-Macedonian with these so-far to-speak and
primum, an uspiam huius gentis hominibus sint sepulchra.
first whether anywhere of-this nation for-the-men there-are tombs

Ad haec responsum est, idem sibi domicilium esse, quod
to this answered it-was the-same to-them the-dwelling to-be as
sepulchrum, eoque consuefieri his diversoriis, ut dum
the-tomb and-for-this to-be-accustomed to-these lodgings that while
quotidie dormiunt, desinant aliquando vigilare, exque eo
daily they-sleep they-may-cease at-some-time to-wake and-from it
sibi esse unam domum viventi pariter et mortuo. Rursus
for-them to-be one house for-the-living equally and for-the-dead again
quaerit ex alio, utrumne plures vivi an mortui putarentur.
he-asks of another whether more living or dead were-thought
Ad id responsum est, videri quidem plurimos mortuos, sed
to that answered it-was to-seem indeed very-many the-dead but
eos numerari non oportere, quoniam iam esse desiissent,
them to-be-counted not it-behooves since already to-be they-had-ceased
quippe plures pronuntiari oportere eos, quos videas, quam illos
for more to-be-declared it-behooves those whom you-see than those
scilicet, quos neque oculi ulli neque ratio conspicetur. Post
namely whom neither eyes any nor reason beholds afterward
quaerit ex alio, utrumne vita fortior an vero sit mors. Vitam
he-asks of another whether life stronger or indeed be death life
esse responsum est, quod solis quoque ferventior orientis
to-be answered it-was because of-the-sun also more-fervent of-the-rising
vigor, marcentior vero viseretur occiduus, ortumque hominis
the-vigor more-withered but is-seen the-setting and-the-rising of-man
esse, quo vivitur, contraque, quo frigeat. Et id addit,
to-be by-which one-lives and-on-the-contrary by-which one-grows-cold and this he-adds
utrum mare spatiosius anne terra. Terram esse respondent,
whether the-sea more-spacious or the-land the-land to-be they-answer
cuius mare gremio teneretur. Sciscitatur id quoque, quaenam
by-whose the-sea bosom is-held he-inquires this also which
omnium bestia callidior et astutior. Hic vero cum risu
of-all beast more-cunning and more-astute here but with laughter

hominem esse pronuntiant adduntque rationem de exemplo
man to-be they-declare and-add the-reason from the-example
sui, qui solus tot animantium milia inlexisset, ut
of-himself who alone so-many of-living-things thousands has-lured so-that
ad persequenda ea, quae aliis essent, praedae cupiditate
for pursuing those-things which to-others were booty by-greed
laborarent. Non his ut ad contumeliam dictis Alexander
they-labor not with-these as to insult said Alexander
movebatur. Enimvero addit, quid imperium sibi videretur.
was-moved but-indeed he-adds what empire to-them seemed
At illi fraudis potentiam esse respondent adiutam temporis
but they of-fraud the-power to-be answer helped by-time's
blandimento vel, si ita mavelit, iniusta audacia. Quaerit etiam,
flattery or if so he-prefers by-unjust daring he-asks also
utrumne dies an vero nox prius constituta putaretur. Nihilque
whether day or indeed night earlier established was-thought and-nothing
cunctantes noctem priore ordine posuere, cum omnia
hesitating night in-the-earlier order they-placed since all-things
quoque concepta vivendi auspicium in tenebris sortiantur,
also conceived of-living the-beginning in darkness obtain
post vero nata in lucis spatia transmigrarent.
after but born into of-light the-spaces migrate

12 Pergit denique sciscitari, cuinam mentiri hominem non
he-proceeds finally to-inquire to-whom to-lie a-man not
oporteret. Responsum est, deo, quod omnia videns ille sit
ought answered it-was to-god because all-things seeing he is
atque omnium sciens. Quaerit etiam, quasnam in homine
and of-all knowing he-asks also which in man
partes honoratiores esse existimarent. Laevas esse responsum
parts more-honored to-be they-thought the-left to-be answered
est, quod sol etiam oriens ex laevo dextrorsum curriculum
it-was because the-sun also rising from the-left rightward its-course

exsequatur; tunc quod permixtio maribus ac feminis laevarum
completes then because the-mixing for-males and females of-the-left
mage partium existimetur, et lactaturam feminam laevi uberis
more parts is-thought and going-to-suckle the-woman of-the-left breast
primum alimenta praestare, deosque laevis humeris religione
first the-nourishment to-furnish and-the-gods on-left shoulders by-religion
gestari, et reges ipsos indicia dignitatis praeferre laevas.
to-be-carried and kings themselves the-marks of-dignity to-display on-the-left
Cumque post haec et, quid sibi a rege vellent, largitum
and-when after these-things also what to-them from the-king they-wished bestowed
iri polliceretur, immortalitatem consoni poposcere. Sed id
to-be-going he-promised immortality in-unison they-demanded but this
cum rex praeter potestatem suam esse dixisset, 'cur ergo,'
when the-king beyond power his to-be had-said why then
aiunt, 'cum sis mortalis, tot tamen laboribus servis et
they-say when you-are mortal so-many yet to-labors you-are-slave and
tantis adpetentiis vinceris, quarum tibi fructus aut nullus
by-such cravings are-conquered of-which for-you the-fruit either none
aut brevis est, enimvero idem mox ad alios transiturus?'
or brief is but-indeed the-same soon to others going-to-pass
Tum Alexander 'Non haec sane nobis,' inquit, 'in manu 13
then Alexander not these truly to-us he-says in the-hand
sunt, enim deorum vivimus lege, quam homines exsequi
are for of-the-gods we-live by-the-law which men to-carry-out
sit necesse. Neque enim illi nisi navigari maria sivissent,
be necessary nor for they unless to-be-sailed the-seas had-allowed
venti quoque navigantibus prosperarent, aut virecta etiam
winds also for-those-sailing would-be-favorable or green-shoots even
moverentur, nisi ob hoc ortis flabris impellentibus cederent.
would-be-moved unless for this with-risen blasts driving they-yielded
Gigni quis neget cuncta ratione, esse ratione, qua nata
to-be-born who would-deny all-things by-reason to-be by-reason by-which born

sunt, moxque occidere interireque ratione? Nihil denique
they-are and-soon to-fall and-to-perish by-reason nothing finally
omnino frustra reperies, quin cunctis actibus sui motus et
at-all in-vain will-you-find that-not for-all acts of-its motion also
causa sit. Ut mihi quoque non utique ratio ista bellandi sit
a-cause be although to-me also not surely reason this of-warring be
suavis, sed quoniam animum meum ardor istiusmodi voluntatis
sweet but since mind my the-ardor of-this-kind of-will
incesserit, decedo ac ministerium meum puto, quidquid de
has-invaded I-yield and ministry my I-think whatever from
hoc labore profecero. Denique facessant ista de medio:
this labor I-shall-gain finally let-depart those-things from the-middle
quae iam erunt inter homines discrimina fortunarum? quae
which now will-be among men differences of-fortunes what
dispar ratio gloriae? quae diversitas dignitatum? quis voti
unequal reason of-glory what diversity of-dignities what of-wish
modus? Desinet protinus coli terra, transmitti mare,
limit will-cease at-once to-be-tilled the-earth to-be-crossed the-sea
desiderari successio, cum illa promptior sit naturae hominis
to-be-desired succession since that readier is of-the-nature of-man
admiratio non videri, quae metuas, cum meminisse non
the-admiration not to-seem what you-may-fear since to-remember not
desinas desideratorum. Etenim quanti qualesque meorum etiam
you-cease the-things-desired for how-many and-what-kind of-mine even
proeliis cecidere? quanti vero adepti desiderata? Non ex
in-battles fell how-many but have-obtained the-desired-things not from
illorum incommodo condicionem suam, sed ex ipso proventu
their disadvantage condition their but from the-very yield
beatitudinem metiuntur. Haec denique una vivendi lex est,
happiness they-measure this finally one of-living law is

velle sibi unumquemque, quod penes alterum videat,
to-wish for-himself each-one what in-the-hands-of another he-sees
ut habeat ipse quoque, quod mox transmittat ad ceteros.'
that may-have he-himself also what soon he-may-pass-on to the-others
His talibusque cum sese tunc Alexander oblectavisset, 14
with-these and-such when himself then Alexander had-amused
exim iter prorsus exsequitur arduum quidem illud et
thence the-journey straight he-pursues arduous indeed that and
laboriosissimum inviis locis asperitate naturae et colentium
most-laborious in-pathless places by-the-roughness of-nature and of-the-dwellers
vastitate. Deque labore hoc is Aristoteli scribens magistro
by-the-desolation and-about labor this he to-Aristotle writing his-master
ut vel maximum sibi testimonium dicit eisque litteris
as even greatest for-himself testimony he-speaks and-in-that letter
sententia talis fuit. 'Operae pretium est, mi magister, eorum
the-sense such was of-the-work worth it-is my master of-those
omnium, quae sint in nostris laboribus maxima, eorumque, qui
all which are in our labors greatest and-of-those which
mecum una toleraverint inopinatissima, te participare per
with-me together have-endured most-unexpected you to-share through
litteras. Igitur Indicas regiones incessimus. Nam cetera tibi
a-letter therefore Indian regions we-have-entered for the-rest to-you
ad Bragmanas usque praemiseram. His denique penetratis,
up-to the-Brahmans even I-had-sent-ahead with-these finally penetrated
Prasiacae supervenimus, quae civitas regia quaedam Indiae
upon-Prasiaca we-came which city royal certain of-India
cluit. Situs vero eius loci arduus et ad promuntorii faciem
is-called the-site but of-that place steep and to of-a-promontory the-appearance
longe porrectior; nam et mari imminet subiacenti.
far more-stretched-out for also over-the-sea it-overhangs lying-below
Enimvero quod istum colunt hominum nescias
but-indeed what that inhabit of-men you-would-not-know-whether

invisitatius an inauditius genus; hique sunt promisce mares
more-unseen or more-unheard-of a-race and-these are indiscriminately males
atque alius sexus, omnes tamen ad nostratia corpora, quibus
and other sex all yet to our bodies to-which
sunt feminae, molliores. Nam et vetus sermo eos molles
are women softer for also old talk them soft
Sabaeos appellat. Sed nihil aliud ferme ad cibum norunt praeter
Sabaeans calls but nothing other almost for food they-know except
piscium genera, quorum illis multa et facilis abundantia est.
of-fish kinds of-which for-them great and easy abundance is
Fuit igitur mihi ad eorum fabulas diligentia et interpres
there-was therefore to-me for their tales diligence and an-interpreter
inventus est, qui nobis daret cum hisce barbaris fabulari.
found was who to-us might-give with these barbarians to-converse
Cumque multus et varius sermo procederet, locum interea
and-when much and varied talk proceeded a-place meanwhile
quendam insulae monstravere — nam is etiam eminus
certain of-an-island they-showed for it even from-afar
visebatur—, quod esse dicebant veteris cuiusdam regis indidem
was-seen which to-be they-said of-old a-certain king thence
monumentum; id auro esse et pretiis refertissimum conditis.
the-monument it with-gold to-be and treasures most-stuffed stored
Cum hoc naturalem hominum vel diligentiam in nostris vel
when this natural of-men either diligence among our-men or
adpetentiam promovisset certatimque festinaremus, pars visendae
craving had-promoted and-vying we-hastened part of-seeing
eiusce insulae vel sepulchri, pars vero vel plurimi auri etiam
this island or tomb part but even of-very-much gold also
aviditate, et spe potiundi iam animis gestientibus, repente
with-greed and hope of-possessing now with-minds exulting suddenly
barbari, qui loci eius indices fuerant, dilabuntur eque
the-barbarians who of-place that the-pointers-out had-been slip-away and-from

inconspectu nostro incertum quanam maiestate evanescunt,
sight our uncertain by-what majesty vanish
relictis sane naviculis admodum parvis duabus ac decem,
with-left indeed little-boats very small two and ten
quibus vectari soliti intelligebantur. Igitur una mecum
in-which to-be-carried wont they-were-understood therefore together with-me
cum amici ad spectaculum properarent, Philon scilicet et
when friends to the-spectacle hastened Philon namely and
Hephaestion, Craterus quoque multique alii, obstitit
Hephaestion Craterus also and-many others stood-in-the-way
Philon ac periculum illud visendae novitatis non primum
Philon and the-danger that of-seeing novelty not first
a rege faciendum, verum a se modo suisque similibus,
by the-king to-be-made but by himself only and-his like
suadere persistit. Quippe amplius aliquid in hisce regionibus
to-urge persists for more something in these regions
formidandum, in quibus viderimus hominum formas de
to-be-feared in which we-had-seen of-men the-forms from
conspectu nostro facile evanuisse, neu si quid secus atque
sight our easily to-have-vanished nor if anything otherwise than
ut speraverant incommodaret, eius periculi fieret de rege
as they-had-hoped should-inconvenience of-that danger should-be from the-king
principium. Sese igitur iturum esse confirmat ac, si exploratio
the-beginning himself then going-to-go to-be he-affirms and if the-exploration
secundasset, tunc demum nos tuto posse transmittere.
succeeded then at-last we safely to-be-able to-cross
Sedet sententia persuadentis, atque ita iussimus fieri. 16
sits the-opinion of-the-persuader and so we-ordered it-to-be-done
Conscensis ergo navibus protinus ire ad insulam tendunt,
with-boarded then the-ships at-once to-go to the-island they-head
quae quamvis propter obviare oculis videretur, ad integrae
which although near to-meet the-eyes it-seemed to of-a-whole

horae tamen spatium consumpserant navigando. Tandem
hour yet the-space they-had-spent in-sailing at-last
sunt visi insulae institisse. Sed ubi gestum est, omne id
they-were seen on-the-island to-have-stood but when done is all that
solum repente una cum viris et sepulchro, quod visebatur,
ground suddenly together with the-men and the-tomb which was-seen
submersari mari et in profundo labi conspicamur.
to-be-submerged in-the-sea and into the-depth to-slip we-see
Neque enim vana formido ludebat oculos intremiscentium,
nor for vain dread mocked the-eyes of-those-trembling
enimvero illa Philonis mors et exitium eorum, qui una
but-indeed that of-Philon the-death and the-destruction of-those who together
Philonem comitati sunt, fuerat. Territi igitur detestabili
Philon accompanied had was terrified then by-the-detestable
morte sociorum indigenas barbaros rimabamur, si quid
death of-our-comrades the-native barbarians we-searched-out if anything
nobis de itinere consultarent. At vero nullus uspiam visitur,
to-us about the-route they-might-advise but indeed none anywhere is-seen
locisque desertis et inhospitalibus per octo posthinc
and-in-places deserted and inhospitable through eight thenceforth
immorati dies egimus consilio confirmando. Tum in illo
having-lingered days we-spent in-plan to-be-confirmed then on that
promuntorio, cuius supra facta est mentio, bestiam quoque
promontory of-which above made is mention a-beast also
vidimus praegrandi admodum et inopinabili magnitudine,
we-saw of-huge very and unimaginable size
quam ebdomadarion vocant, adeo immensi portenti rem,
which ebdomadarion they-call so immense of-a-portent the-thing
ut illi perfacile insistentes etiam super dorsum elephantos
that on-it very-easily standing even upon its-back elephants
cerneremus. Hac igitur spectaculi foeditate moti iter
we-saw by-this then of-the-spectacle the-foulness moved the-journey

ad Prasiacam repedamus, per quas ubique vastitates multa
to Prasiaca we-retrace through which everywhere wastes many
ferarum nomina multasque eiusmodi saevitudinis facies erat
of-beasts the-names and-many of-this-kind of-savagery the-shapes it-was
videre, serpentium quoque genera permiranda. Illic et solis
to-see of-serpents also kinds very-wonderful there both of-the-sun
lunaeque defectus comminus etiam speculati sumus et
and-of-the-moon eclipses at-close-range even we-observed have and
causam hiemis et temporum differentias arbitrati. Quo primum
the-cause of-winter and of-the-seasons the-differences judged where first
reversi, ut inspecta sunt, vos quoque participare curabimus.
returned as examined they-were you also to-share we-will-take-care
Nunc enim nobis iter per regna Darii Persasque 17
now for for-us the-journey through the-realms of-Darius and-the-Persians
nostros agitatur; quam cum omnem peragrare regionem
our is-conducted which when all to-traverse the-region
cordi habeamus, multo ubique auro multisque crateribus
at-heart we-have with-much everywhere gold and-many mixing-bowls
abundamus, non his ex auri modo materia pretiosis, verum
we-abound not these from gold's only material precious but
longe lapidum luce maioribus. Neque tamen nobis alia
far of-stones in-light greater nor yet for-us other
quoque ab hoc genere divitiarum instrumenta sunt minora.
also than this kind of-riches equipments are less
Sed hic circuitus, de quo dicimus, a portis Caspiis fieri
but this circuit about which we-speak from the-gates Caspian to-be-made
coeptus laboris aut vitae eiuscemodi. Ubi coenatum exercitui
begun of-labor or of-life of-this-kind when dined for-the-army
foret, statim signum dari classico et ad vesperam
it-was at-once the-signal to-be-given by-trumpet and toward evening
iniri iter oportebat; idque horis ferme nocturnis
to-be-entered the-journey it-behooved and-that for-hours about of-night

tribus agitari convenerat, sex vero insequentibus horis
three to-be-conducted it-had-been-agreed six but following hours
somno indulgere; rursusque exim ad horam diei quartam
to-sleep to-indulge and-again thence up-to the-hour of-day fourth
reliquum spatii transmittebamus. Sed enim viantibus non
the-remaining space we-crossed but indeed for-those-traveling not
simplex habitus neque incuriosa munitio fuerat necessaria.
simple dress nor careless protection was necessary
Peronibus quippe crura omnia pedesque muniri et
with-boots for the-shins all and-feet to-be-protected and
femoralibus uti pellinis oportebat reliquumque corpus ambire
with-breeches to-use of-skin it-behooved and-the-rest-of the-body to-encircle
loricis, quod illae omnes Persicae regiones multis
with-breastplates because those all Persian regions with-many
admodum et vehementibus infestari serpentibus dicerentur.
very and violent to-be-infested serpents were-said
18 Idque iter continuatis diebus ferme duodecim exanclavimus
and-that journey with-continued days about twelve we-toiled-through
atque ita demum ad oppidum adventamus situm in insula
and so at-last to a-town we-come situated on an-island
circumflui fluminis; ibique visitur castrum consitum undique
of-a-flowing-round river and-there is-seen a-fort planted everywhere
arundinibus, quae ad triginta cubitorum spatia supercrescerent.
with-reeds which to thirty cubits' spaces grew-over
Crassitudo vero earum supra eam, quanta est hominis
the-thickness but of-them above that as-great-as is of-a-man
crassitudo. Navigia quoque plurima amni inerant, quae mox
the-thickness ships also very-many in-the-river were which soon
curiosius intuentibus partes quaedam fissarum arundinum
curiously to-those-looking parts certain of-split reeds
noscebantur. Enim huius fluminis liquor ad potum hominis
were-known for of-this river the-water for the-drinking of-man

adversus amaritudine nimia est cum salsitate. Quaerentibus
against with-bitterness excessive is with saltiness to-us-seeking
igitur, quam poteramus, ex adcolis usum elementi
then as-much-as we-could from the-inhabitants the-use of-element
memorati aliud castrum eminus demonstratur ab stadiis
mentioned another fort from-afar is-pointed-out from stadia
ferme quattuor indidem situm; ad quod cum audacius quidam
about four thence situated to which when more-boldly some
exploraturi properassent, flumen quidem adfluum vident; sed
going-to-explore had-hastened the-river indeed flowing-by they-see but
emersi indidem hippopotami magnitudine nescias
emerged thence hippopotamuses in-size you-would-not-know-whether
an saevitia immaniores nostros, qui exploratum abierant,
or in-savagery more-monstrous our-men who to-explore had-gone
incursavere. Ac rursus ad aliam partem eadem nobis
attacked and again to another part with-the-same us
curiositate rimantibus agmen earundem bestiarum longe
curiosity searching a-column of-the-same beasts far
numerosius occursabat. Quare omni genere fugienda loca
more-numerous came-to-meet-us wherefore in-every way to-be-fled the-places
evitandumque periculum videns classico signum abitioni
and-to-be-avoided the-danger seeing by-trumpet the-signal for-departure
praecipio, quamvis tanta vis sitis eiusque desiderii homines
I-order although so-great a-force of-thirst and-its desire the-men
incessisset, ut plerique etiam a potu urinae ob
had-invaded that very-many even from the-drinking of-urine for
necessitatis vehementiam non temperarent. Igitur forte
of-necessity the-violence not refrained therefore by-chance
fortuna cum exim stagnum quoddam dapsile repperissemus
fortune when thence a-pool certain abundant we-had-found
potitique desiderato ac persuavi potu per prata virentia
and-having-obtained the-desired and very-sweet drink through meadows green

sterneremur, eminus video in quadam adiacentis tumuli
we-were-stretched from-afar I-see on a-certain of-a-neighboring mound
eminentia titulo gemmeo superscriptam hanc sententiam:
height with-a-title jeweled inscribed this sentence
'Aquationem hanc rex Seconchosis orbis universi praestiti
watering-place this the-king Sesonchosis of-the-world whole provided
cunctis Rubrum navigantibus mare.' Igitur iussi propter hoc
for-all the-Red sailing sea therefore I-ordered near this
stagnum castra constitui ignesque quam creberrimos fieri.
pool the-camp to-be-set and-fires as very-frequent to-be-made
19 Et iam noctis ferme hora tertia numerabatur inlustrisque
and now of-night about the-hour third was-counted and-bright
admodum luna nihil diurni luminis demutarat, cum subito
very the-moon nothing of-daylight's light had-changed when suddenly
conspicamur undique ex omni silva, quae circumsteterat,
we-see from-everywhere out-of all the-forest which had-stood-around
bestias quasdam ad ripam stagni potus gratia contendentes.
beasts certain to the-bank of-the-pool of-drink for-the-sake hastening
Erant eae bestiae scorpii quidem non minus proceritudine
there-were those beasts scorpions indeed not less in-length
cubitali, ammodytae etiam albi colore vel rufi, nec non cerastae
than-a-cubit ammodytae also white in-color or red and also cerastae
coloribus ut supra diversis. Quare vehementi sollicitudine
in-colors as above various wherefore by-vehement anxiety
incitati conspicantesque iam nostrorum aliquot interemptos
roused and-seeing already of-our-men some killed
fletibus undique consonantibus periculum opperiebamur.
with-weeping on-all-sides resounding the-danger we-awaited
Insequebantur enim praedictas bestias etiam quadrupedes
followed for the-aforesaid beasts also four-footed
beluae vehementes, potus scilicet consuetudine ac necessitate
monsters violent of-drink namely by-custom and necessity

illo venientes, quae quidem erant leones supra magnitudinem
thither coming which indeed were lions above the-size
taurorum, quos ex nostratibus maximos ducimus, rhinocerotes
of-bulls which of our-own greatest we-reckon rhinoceroses
etiam vel apri vel pardi, lynces quoque et tigrides scorpiurique
also or boars or leopards lynxes also and tigers and-scorpion-tails
una elephantis et bucriis; tunc taurelephantes et cum his
together-with elephants and buffaloes then bull-elephants and with these
homines senis manibus portentuosi; himantopodes etiam et
men with-six hands monstrous strap-footed also and
cylioperdices multaque formarum humanarum genera invisitata.
cylioperdices and-many of-shapes human kinds unseen

XV · THE TREES OF THE SUN AND MOON

Fires hold off the beasts, but the odontotyrannus kills twenty-six; bats and crocodiles follow, the lying guides are drowned, and snow falls. Two talking trees, the Sun's and the Moon's, foretell that he will die soon in Babylon at his own people's hands, and his mother and wife cruelly after him. He writes to Queen Candace; she sends rich gifts and has a painter take his likeness in secret. Her son Candaules, riding to avenge his wife, is caught by Alexander's guards.

Igitur excitabamur ad providentiam periculi imminentis. Atque 20
therefore we-were-roused to the-foresight of-the-danger impending and
ideo arma quidem quam properantissime capimus; mando
therefore arms indeed as most-hastily we-take I-order
vero ignes quam maximos et creberrimos fieri silvisque
but fires as greatest and most-frequent to-be-made and-into-the-forests
ipsis conflagrare facillimis immitti incendia. Quae res etsi
themselves to-burn most-easy to-be-set fires which thing although
plurimum quantum contra multitudinem bestiarum opitulari
very-much as-much-as against the-multitude of-beasts to-help

trepidantibus poterat, invitat tamen nimietate luminis plurimas
the-trembling could it-invites yet by-the-excess of-light very-many
illo contendere; idque certamen in eo usque novis vitandis
thither to-hasten and-that struggle in it even with-new to-be-avoided
periculis fuit, donec lunae cum occasu umbrata tellure
dangers was until of-the-moon with the-setting with-shadowed earth
effusisque tenebris ad consueta silvarum refugia omnes
and-with-poured-out darkness to the-accustomed of-the-forests refuges all
illae bestiae remearent. Non prius tamen memorata saevities
those beasts returned not before yet the-mentioned savagery
animantium receptui consulit, quam id animal supervenisset,
of-living-things for-retreat provides than that animal had-come-upon
quod regnum quidem tenere in hasce bestias dicitur; nomine
which the-kingdom indeed to-hold over these beasts is-said by-name
autem odontotyrannum vocant. Haec bestia facie elephantus
but odontotyrannus they-call this beast in-face an-elephant
quidem est, sed magnitudine etiam huius animantis longe
indeed is but in-size even of-this animal far
provecta, nec minor etiam saevitudine hominibus egregie
advanced nor less also in-savagery against-men outstandingly
saevientibus. Quare cum nostros incesseret ac ferme viginti
raging wherefore when our-men it-attacked and almost twenty
et sex de occursantibus viros morti dedisset, tandem tamen
and six of those-meeting-it men to-death had-given at-last yet
reliqua multitudine ignibus circumvallatur et sternitur.
by-the-remaining multitude with-fires it-is-hemmed and is-laid-low
Adhuc tamen saucius odontotyrannus cum indidem fugiens
still yet wounded the-odontotyrannus when thence fleeing
aquae fluenta inrupisset ibique exanimavisset, vix
of-the-water the-streams it-had-burst-into and-there had-expired scarcely

trecentorum hominum manus nisu extractus de flumine
of-three-hundred men a-band by-the-effort drawn-out from the-river
est. Hactenus igitur noctis illius nobis periculi finis fuit.
was so-far then of-night that for-us of-danger the-end was
Longe tamen molestius, — quo enim caveri difficilius 21
far yet more-troublesome since for to-be-guarded more-difficult
erat — quod post evenit. Tenebris enim post occasum
it-was what afterward happened with-darkness for after the-setting
lunae omnia obumbrantibus nyctalopicas viseres de arenis
of-the-moon all-things overshadowing nyctalopes you-would-see from the-sands
profundis emergere non minoris longitudinis cubitis decem;
deep to-emerge not of-less length than-cubits ten
eaeque, quo poterant, homines involant. Tunc ex iisdem
and-these where they-could on-men fly then from the-same
arenis crocodili etiam exstantes passim invadunt quadrupedia
sands crocodiles also standing-out everywhere attack the-beasts
militaria. Ad hoc alites, quibus apud nos vocabulum vespertilio
military at this birds for-which among us the-name bat
est, sed quae illic super columbarum magnitudinem, dentibus
is but which there above of-doves the-size with-teeth
tamen ad humani rictus valentiam saevae sunt, circumvolare
yet to of-a-human gape the-strength savage are to-fly-around
coepere et quibusque incautioribus aures aut nares aut
began and from-all the-more-incautious ears or noses or
digitos praesecare. Tum rhinocoraces insecutae, sed eae
fingers to-cut-off then rhinocoraces followed but they
sane neque ad homines saeviebant neque ignes temere
indeed neither against men raged nor at-the-fires rashly
advolabant. Tandem igitur restitutus diei intelligensque,
flew at-last then restored to-the-day and-understanding
in quanta discrimina proderemur ab hisce Indis, qui sese
into what-great dangers we-were-betrayed by these Indians who themselves

salutares itineri futuros esse nobis polliciti erant, eos ob
salutary for-the-journey going-to-be to-be to-us promised had them for
fraudis meritum eisdem aquis praecipites dari necarique
of-fraud the-deserving in-the-same waters headlong to-be-thrown and-to-be-killed
praecepi. Atque exim usi itinere rectiore tandem restituimur
I-ordered and thence using a-route more-direct at-last we-are-restored
viae, quae nos ad Prasiacam tuto deduceret.
to-the-road which us to Prasiaca safely might-lead

22 Igitur cum oppidum quoddam opulens sane et abundans
therefore when to-a-town certain rich indeed and abundant
omnibus refectioni humanae necessariis advenissemus,
in-all-things for-refreshment human necessary we-had-come
recipiendis viribus ibidem dies quinque transegimus. Enimvero
for-recovering strength there days five we-spent but-indeed
cum sexta iam reditui consuleremus, talis nobis obicitur
when on-the-sixth now for-return we-were-providing such to-us is-presented
admiratio. Primum quidem venti spiritus vehemens et
a-marvel first indeed of-wind a-blast vehement and
procella adeo supra consuetam magnitudinem rapax orta est,
a-storm so beyond the-accustomed size rapacious arisen has
ut non tentoria modo satis firmiter fixa convelleret, verum
that not the-tents only enough firmly fixed it-tore-up but
homines quoque stantes gradientesque prosterneret, nisi quod
men also standing and-walking it-laid-low except that
properanter sarcinis strictis ad tutiora oppidi concursamus.
hastily with-baggage tightened to the-safer-parts of-the-town we-run
Enimvero dum ista molimur, coire nubes et densitate
but-indeed while those-things we-labor-at to-gather the-clouds and by-density
nimiae crassitudinis solis lumen omne coepere subtexere
of-excessive thickness of-the-sun the-light all began to-veil
indiscretamque nobis noctem diemque confundere. Neque id
and-indistinguishable for-us night and-day to-confuse nor this

breve aut transitorium fuit. Enim diebus fere quinque pari
brief or passing was for for-days about five with-equal
facie foedatus aër in id tandem aliquando purgavit,
appearance fouled the-air into this at-last sometime cleared
ut sexta sub luce, cum interruptis nubibus sol faciem
that on-the-sixth at light when with-broken clouds the-sun its-face
mundo pristinam reddidisset, tantam vim nivium incubuisse
to-the-world former had-restored so-great a-mass of-snows to-have-lain-upon
videremus, ut supra trium cubitorum altitudinem densa multos
we-saw that above three cubits' height dense many
quidem et nostratium interfecerit, quos forte in apertioribus
indeed also of-our-men it-killed whom by-chance in more-open
locis nacta sit, plurima tamen obruerit quadrupedia, quorum
places met it-has very-many yet it-buried beasts of-which
nihilum non stantaria morte obriguisse visitares.
nothing not with-standing death to-have-stiffened you-would-see
Eaque nivium vis cum diebus ferme triginta vix tabuisset, 23
and-that of-snows mass when in-days about thirty scarcely had-melted
aequato tandem solo itinere dierum ferme quinque
with-leveled at-last ground with-a-journey of-days about five
Prasiacam adventabamus, multo quidem labore, qui strictim
to-Prasiaca we-were-approaching with-much indeed labor which briefly
dictus est, exanclato, enimvero maiore praeda
told is having-been-toiled-through but-indeed with-greater booty
totius Indiae earumque gentium, quacumque transmisimus,
of-all India and-of-those nations wherever we-crossed
convectata, nullo omnium Indorum Persarumve dubitante,
brought-together with-none of-all the-Indians or-Persians doubting
quin omnia nobis ad subiugandum facilia forent, quocumque
that all-things for-us for subjugating easy would-be wherever
animum intendissemus. At cetera nomina pretiorum aurique
the-mind we-had-directed but the-other names of-valuables and-of-gold

opulentiam ulterius non requirendam, vixdum gravibus
the-wealth further not to-be-sought scarcely for-heavy
subvectionibus consulentes, cum tanta in his, quae subiugata
transports providing since so-great in these which subjugated
sint loca, vel copia vel adfluentia reperiretur. Sic igitur animo
were places either plenty or abundance was-found thus then with-mind
laxato cum nihil iam foret, quod non fortuna ex hisce
relaxed when nothing now there-was which not fortune of these
adpetentiis explevisset, omne demum intenderam desiderium,
desires had-filled all at-last I-had-directed desire
ut, si quid esset, quod invisitatum aliis foret atque
that if anything there-was which unseen by-others was and
auditu mirabile haberetur, id sane resciscerem videremque.
to-the-hearing wonderful was-held that indeed I-might-learn and-see
24 Tum quidam viri ex oppidis circumsistentibus esse dignum
then certain men from the-towns standing-around to-be worthy
cognitu et scientia contendebant, si modo mirum homini
of-learning and knowledge contended if only wonderful to-a-man
videri posset virecta noscere et arbusta loquacia ad humanum
to-seem could green-shoots to-know and trees talkative in human
modum. Id primum ut impossibile alienissimumque natura
manner this at-first as impossible and-most-foreign to-nature
arbitratus neque credideram et renuebam. Sed persistentibus
thinking neither had-I-believed and I-refused but with-their-persisting
adserentibusque, adsensus sum tandem itineri eius terrae,
and-asserting assented I-have at-last to-the-journey of-that land
quam sol oriens visitaret. Eo ergo cum venissemus, ducor
which the-sun rising visited there then when we-had-come I-am-led
in quendam locum arboribus consitum vel amoenissimis.
into a-certain place with-trees planted even most-pleasant
Hunc illi paradisum vocitavere. Enimvero conseptum viseres
this they a-paradise called but-indeed an-enclosure you-would-see

non materiae circumiectu, verum arborum frequentia
not of-timber by-the-surrounding but of-trees by-the-throng
circumsistentium. Deorum sacrum Solis Lunaeque esse
standing-around of-the-gods sacred of-the-Sun and-of-the-Moon to-be
dicebant; nam et aedes templaque opere naturali hisce
they-said for both houses and-temples by-work natural for-these
diis ibidem intrinsecus viseres, duas vero arbores caelum
gods there within you-would-see two but trees to-the-sky
ferme proceritate intervectas, simili facie qua cupressus,
almost in-height reaching with-like appearance as the-cypress
plerumque etiam directiores, ex ea stirpe, quod genus arbores
mostly also straighter from that stock which kind of-trees
myrobalanos habent. Sed ex hisce duabus arboribus, de
myrobalans they-have but from these two trees about
quibus supra locuti sumus, marem alteram, alteram feminam
which above spoken we-have a-male the-one the-other a-female
esse contendunt. Et maris quidem arboris praesidem Solem,
to-be they-contend and of-the-male indeed tree as-guardian the-Sun
feminae vero Lunam esse altricem. Harum omnis circa
of-the-female but the-Moon to-be the-nurse of-these all around
radices convestitas viseres tergis ac pellibus sacris; sed ex
the-roots clothed you-would-see with-hides and skins sacred but of
his, quae ex maribus essent, ad marem arborem, quae vero
these which from males were at the-male tree those but
ex pecudibus femineis, ad honorem feminae sitae. Quamvis
from beasts female in honor of-the-female placed although
hominibus gentis eiusce usus ferri aerisve vel stanni omnifariam
by-the-men of-this nation the-use of-iron or-bronze or tin altogether
ignoraretur, neque esset quicquam, quod ad aedificii usum
was-unknown nor was-there anything which for of-building the-use
ex luto fingeres. Cum igitur illa terga vel spolia
out-of mud you-could-shape when then those hides or spoils

bestiarum, ex quis forent animantibus, quaererem, comperio
of-beasts from what they-were animals I-asked I-learn
leonum esse sive pardorum et huiuscemodi bestiarum, et
of-lions to-be or of-leopards and of-this-kind beasts and
usque tergis non ad honorem solum numinum uti consuetos,
even hides not for honor only of-the-deities to-use accustomed
verum etiam ad operimenta abuti homines incolentes.
but also for coverings to-misuse the-men inhabiting
25 Id tamen esse in hisce arboribus admirabile: namque
this yet to-be in these trees wonderful for
oriente sole marem illam arborem itemque cursus sui
with-rising sun male that tree and-likewise of-the-course its
meditullium possidente vel tertio occiduo loquacem fieri
the-middle occupying or at-the-third setting talkative to-become
et consultantibus respondere, idem vero nocturnis horis atque
and to-those-consulting to-answer the-same but at-nocturnal hours and
lunaribus arborem feminam. Doctus igitur ab his viris, qui
lunar the-tree female taught then by these men who
antistites loci sacerdotesque memorantur, uti mundus et
the-overseers of-the-place and-priests are-called that clean and
ab omni inreligioso contagio impollutus accederem, comites
from all irreligious contagion unpolluted I-should-approach as-companions
mihi eius aditionis adscisco amicos carissimos fidissimosque,
for-me of-that approach I-take friends dearest and-most-faithful
Parmeniona scilicet, sed et Craterum, Isyllum quoque atque
Parmenion namely but also Craterus Isyllus also and
Macheten et Thrasyleonta et Machaona una Theodecto
Machetes and Thrasyleon and Machaon together-with Theodectus
Diiphiloque, sed etiam Neocle. Monentibus igitur sacerdotibus
and-Diiphilus but also Neocles with-warning then the-priests
religione prohiberi ferrum id loci invehi, ita ut
by-religion to-be-forbidden iron to-that of-place to-be-brought so as

praedictum est facio moneoque, addo tamen cautelam
prescribed it-was I-do and-I-warn I-add yet a-precaution
eiuscemodi diligentiae, quod octoginta viros fortitudine pariter
of-this-kind of-diligence that eighty men in-fortitude equally
exploratissimos adesse circa ea loca ac nemus, quo
most-tested to-be-present around those places and the-grove into-which
ingrediebamur, quam sollicitissime iubeo, exploraturos etiam,
we-were-entering as most-anxiously I-order going-to-explore also
ecquis esset, qui forte vocem de proximo subiectaret,
whether-anyone there-was who by-chance a-voice from near should-put-forth
quam nos ex illis arboribus ferri arbitraremur.
which we from those trees to-be-borne might-think
Adhibito igitur uno ex Indis, qui interpres dictorum 26
with-employed then one of the-Indians who as-interpreter of-the-words
idoneus foret, cuius inlectu illo veneramus, iuro quam
fit was by-whose enticement thither we-had-come I-swear as
sancte poenam illum capitis non evasurum, si promissum
solemnly the-penalty him of-his-head not going-to-escape if the-promised
ex arbore responsum diffamatumque tacuisset. Unde
from the-tree answer and-divulged he-should-have-kept-silent whence
intentis ad audiendum, mox cum primum solis occasus et
to-us-intent on hearing soon when first of-the-sun the-setting and
abitio fuit, vox auditur ex arbore, sed lingua barbarica,
departure was a-voice is-heard from the-tree but in-tongue barbarian
eiusque interpretamenta habuit quisquam nobis et dissertare
and-its interpretations held anyone to-us and to-expound
audebat. Id cum obstinatius faceret cupiditateque omni
dared this when more-obstinately he-did and-with-desire all
ad significantiam vocis emissae properarem interminatus
for the-meaning of-the-voice emitted I-hastened threatening
interpreti necem, nisi sedulo mihi praedicta narrasset,
to-the-interpreter death unless carefully to-me the-foretold-things he-had-told

perterritus tandem eiusmodi esse responsum arboris fert:
terrified at-last of-this-kind to-be the-answer of-the-tree he-reports
quod enim obitu veloci et occasu iam proximo vitae meae
that for by-death swift and setting now nearest of-life my
spatia urguerentur; eamque mortem non de externis, enimvero
the-spaces were-pressed and-that death not from strangers but-indeed
de meis et proximis fore. Quae dicta cum ex natura
from my-own and closest going-to-be which sayings since from the-nature
hominis meum quoque animum attillarent ac sub ortu
of-man my also mind tickled and at the-rising
lunae rursus ex arbore femina oraculum mihi sciscitanti
of-the-moon again from the-tree female an-oracle to-me inquiring
reddi deprecarer quaerens et obsecrans, numnam matre
to-be-given I-prayed asking and beseeching whether with-my-mother
et proximis salutatis obitus mei clausulam subiturus sim,
and those-nearest greeted of-death my the-close going-to-undergo I-be
non barbara iam, sed Graecae linguae significantia lunaris
not barbarian now but of-Greek tongue in-meaning the-lunar
arbor elocuta est, mortem mihi in Babylonia esse fatalem.
tree spoken has death to-me in Babylonia to-be fated
27 Id satis triste mirumque admodum amicis adsistentibus
this enough sad and-wondrous very to-the-friends standing-by
videbatur. Ego tamen coronis atque alio religioso honore
seemed I yet with-crowns and with-other religious honor
locum donare contendens sum prohibitus a sacerdotibus,
the-place to-present striving I-was forbidden by the-priests
quod huiuscemodi munera dii indigetes abnuissent. Agebam
because of-this-kind gifts the-gods native refused I-lived
maestus et exspectatione futuri admodum territus;
sad and in-expectation of-the-future very terrified
Parmenion tamen me Philippusque in somnum ac requiem
Parmenion yet me and-Philip to sleep and rest

hortabantur. Sed id quoque cum omnifariam negitassem ac
exhorted but that also when altogether I-had-refused and
iam ferme dies insequens indilucesceret, ipsum ad sacrum
now almost the-day following was-dawning myself to the-shrine
ire contendo adtrectansque arborem quaeso percontans,
to-go I-hasten and-touching the-tree I-beg inquiring
ecquid si vitae praedicto adeo urguerer, revectari tamen
whether if of-life by-the-foretelling so I-were-pressed to-be-carried-back yet
ad Macedoniam corpus meum dii promitterent, viderene
to Macedonia body my the-gods would-promise whether-to-see
matrem atque uxorem ultra potuissem? Sed ad haec cum
my-mother and wife further I-could but to these-things when
primum ortu solis lux mundo est reddita, ex
first with-the-rising of-the-sun the-light to-the-world was restored from
vertice arboris acuta quaedam vox, sed enim discrebilis et
the-top of-the-tree sharp a-certain voice but indeed distinguishable and
intelligenda sic adpulit: 'Completa sunt,' inquit, 'tibi vitae
to-be-understood thus struck completed are it-says for-you of-life
spatia, quae debebantur, nec revehi sane ad matrem,
the-spaces which were-owed nor to-be-carried-back indeed to your-mother
ut desideras, poteris, quoniam illa mors in Babylonia sit
as you-desire will-you-be-able since that death in Babylonia is
futura; sed sedes corporis longe diversa est. Verum ubi haec
going-to-be but the-seat of-the-body far different is but when this
tibi finis adfuerit, mox matrem quoque una et coniugem
for-you end shall-be-present soon the-mother also together and the-wife
perituras esse tristiore morte non ambigas, Indis una
going-to-perish to-be by-sadder death do-not doubt with-the-Indians together
vel Persis etiam infestantibus.' His compertis animoque
or the-Persians also harassing with-these learned and-with-mind
ad necessaria confirmato, moratus dies ferme duodecim
for the-necessary-things strengthened having-stayed days about twelve

ad Prasiacam festino; et Atilaniae regionibus, quarum
to Prasiaca I-hasten and to-the-Atilanian regions of-which
peragrandis oppidis praesens intentio erat, debitam diligentiam
in-traversing towns my-present intent was due diligence
praesto. Ergo Prasiaca percursata revenio Persidam, omni
I-render therefore Prasiaca traversed I-come-back to-Persia with-all
studio properans Samiramidos quoque nunc regnum visere.
zeal hastening of-Semiramis also now the-kingdom to-see
Sed quoniam ad hanc mihi interim finem res gestae sunt,
but since to this for-me meanwhile end affairs done were
ea te scientia participare amicum fuit. Quare vale.'
in-that you knowledge to-share friendly it-was therefore farewell
28 Post hasce litteras ad Aristotelen datas pergit ire, ut
after this letter to Aristotle given he-proceeds to-go as
scripserat, ad Samiramidos regiam, quod illo se et
he-had-written to of-Semiramis the-palace because thither him both
opulentiae fama ducebat et magnificentia pervulgata imperii
of-wealth the-fame led and the-magnificence widespread of-a-rule
satis inclyti ad laborem. Quippe urbs omnis muro
enough famous for labor for the-city all with-a-wall
quam validissimo est circumsepta portarum valvis aere
as strongest is surrounded of-gates with-leaves of-bronze
vel ferro ad firmitudinem vel decorem impendio fabre
or of-iron for strength or beauty at-cost skillfully
possessis. Omne vero oppidum quadratis saxis, sed hisce
possessed all but the-town with-squared stones but these
non incuriose laevigatis congestum et cultum visere non
not carelessly polished heaped and adorned to-see not
absque admiratione visentium fuit. Enimvero regina oppido
without the-wonder of-the-onlookers was but-indeed a-queen for-the-town
erat et pulchritudine famosissima et commendabilis ex
there-was both in-beauty most-famous and commendable from

aetate, forte tunc viro vidua, quamvis mater iam trium
age by-chance then of-husband widowed although a-mother already of-three
liberorum. Sed feminae nomen Candace dicitur. Proneptis
children but of-the-woman the-name Candace is-said great-granddaughter
erat haec Samiramidos supra dictae. Ad eam igitur Alexander
was she of-Semiramis above mentioned to her then Alexander
scribit talia: 'Aegyptum adveniens ex eorum indigenis
writes such-things to-Egypt arriving from their natives
audivi illis terris et domos vestras et sepulchra esse
I-heard in-those lands both houses your and tombs to-be
defunctorum; ex quibus palam fuit dominatores esse priscos
of-the-dead from which openly it-was the-rulers to-be ancient
reges vestri Indiamque tenuisse. Nam et relatio addidit
kings your and-India to-have-held for also the-account added
Ammona quoque meum militasse una vobiscum, et
Ammon also my to-have-campaigned together with-you and
id famae adstipulatur etiam oraculi maiestas, quod editum
this report confirms also of-the-oracle the-majesty which given
iubet uno nos deo sacris obsequi. Quare religiosum est
orders with-one us god in-rites to-comply wherefore religious it-is
facere dei iussa, et id moneo suadeoque rectius tibi
to-do of-the-god the-commands and this I-warn and-urge more-rightly you
facturae, si veneris, enimvero multum peccaturae, si omittas.'
going-to-do if you-come but-indeed much going-to-sin if you-omit
Ad haec Candace scribit: 'Verius nobis oraculum est Ammonis 29
to this Candace writes truer to-us the-oracle is of-Ammon
dei neque nos in Aegyptum militare neque Indiam nostram
the-god neither us into Egypt to-campaign nor India our
hac ex causa debere commoveri, enim si quis huc audeat,
this from cause ought to-be-moved for if anyone here dares
hisce utpote hostibus occursare. Quare dei iussis parere
these as enemies to-meet wherefore of-the-god the-commands to-obey

decretum est ac verecundum. Nec nos aestimes ex colore;
decreed it-is and modest nor us judge from color
quippe cui animi liberalis species intuenda est, non satis
since by-whom the-mind generous the-appearance to-be-regarded is not enough
corporis forma praeiudicat. Id ne putes arte timoris adlatum,
of-the-body the-form prejudges this lest you-think by-art of-fear brought
octoginta nobis populos scito esse vel maximos, eosque omnis
eighty to-us peoples know to-be even very-great and-them all
agere in armis non ob iniuriam inferendam, sed inferentibus
to-live in arms not for injury to-be-inflicted but on-those-inflicting
occursuros. At vero te probo, quod ad communionem nos
going-to-meet but indeed you I-approve because to the-sharing us
sacri et obsequium voces Ammonis dei, quem maximum
of-the-rite and the-obedience you-call of-Ammon the-god whom greatest
et praesentissimum scimus. Habebis ergo tibi ex nobis
and most-present we-know you-will-have then for-yourself from us
amicitiae argumentum centum laterculos auri grandissimos,
of-friendship as-proof a-hundred little-bricks of-gold very-large
Aethiopas impubes quingentos, psittacos sex, sphingasque sex,
Ethiopians beardless five-hundred parrots six and-sphinxes six
praeterque haec Ammoni deo nostro coronam smaragdis
and-besides these-things for-Ammon god our a-crown with-emeralds
ac margaritis, etiam toreumatis pretiosiorem. His et
and pearls also than-embossed-work more-precious with-these also
loculos refertissimos cuiusque generis margaritarum atque
chests most-filled of-every kind of-pearls and
gemmarum ad decem numerum eburneosque alios loculos
gems to ten the-number and-ivory other chests
octoginta una misi usibus et deliciis tuis ferarumque
eighty together I-have-sent for-the-uses and delights your and-of-beasts
genera, quae sunt nostratia, elephantos trecentos quinquaginta,
the-kinds which are of-ours elephants three-hundred fifty

pardos sex, rhinocerotas octoginta, pantheras vero quattuor
leopards six rhinoceroses eighty panthers but four
milia, canes etiam in homines efferatissimos nonaginta,
thousand dogs also against men most-savage ninety
tauros trecentos, virgas ebeni mille atque quingentas; quae
bulls three-hundred rods of-ebony a-thousand and five-hundred which
cum primum auferenda iusseris, transmittentur. Haec ut
when first to-be-carried-off you-order will-be-sent-across these as
valebis scribasque ad nos velim, et qui te iam
you-will-fare-well and-write to us I-would-wish and whereby you now
orbis universi dominum esse gratulemur.'
of-the-world whole the-master to-be we-may-congratulate
Et ad haec quidem transferenda Alexander miserat. Ipse 30
and to these indeed to-be-transferred Alexander had-sent he-himself
vero paulo post videndae reginae studio illo profectus est.
but a-little after for-seeing the-queen in-zeal thither set-out has
Quod ubi Candace comperit, eiusmodi rem ex ingenio
which when Candace learned of-this-kind a-thing from her-wit
comminiscitur. Unum e pictoribus peritissimis ire clam obviam
she-devises one of the-painters most-skilled to-go secretly to-meet
adventanti Alexandro iubet, eumque quam conliniatissime
arriving Alexander she-orders and-him as most-accurately-outlined
efficiat ac depingat atque ad sese properiter picturam, quam
he-should-make and paint and to herself hastily the-picture which
inleverit, deferat. Id ubi factum est et pictor revenit,
he-had-smeared he-should-bring this when done was and the-painter returned
acceptam effigiem abdito quodam et secreto ponit in loco.
the-received image in-a-hidden certain and secret she-places in place
Sed insecuta est factum hoc eiusmodi fabula. Filius reginae
but followed has the-deed this of-this-kind a-tale the-son of-the-queen
Candaces, cui nomen Candaules erat, una cum equitibus
Candace to-whom the-name Candaules was together with horsemen

admodum paucis forte adcurrit ad quaedam tentoria Alexandri
very few by-chance runs-up to certain tents of-Alexander's
militum. Moti vero custodes exercitus personae novitate
soldiers moved but the-guards of-the-army by-the-person's novelty
ducemque illum et si qui cum ipso venerant, comprehendunt
and-the-leader him and if any with him had-come seize
offeruntque Ptolomaeo, cui cognomentum Soter erat; eius
and-present to-Ptolemy to-whom the-surname Soter was his
enim dignitas veluti secunda post regis ambitum videbatur.
for dignity as-if second after of-the-king the-circuit seemed
Quod igitur Alexander id horae somno per diem teneretur,
because then Alexander at-that hour by-sleep through the-day was-held
Ptolomaeus quaerit ex homine, quis esset quasve haberet
Ptolemy asks of the-man who he-was and-what he-had
causas repentini illius superventus. Ad haec Candaules opinatus
causes of-sudden that arrival to this Candaules supposing
regem Ptolomaeum sese ait esse quidem filium reginae
the-king Ptolemy himself says to-be indeed the-son of-queen
Candaces; sed enim sese una cum coniuge civilius et
Candace but indeed himself together with his-wife more-civilly and
incuriosius ad sacrificium annuum contendentem Amazonum,
more-carelessly to the-sacrifice yearly hastening of-the-Amazons
superventum a quodam Bebryciorum tyranno uxore privatum,
arrived by a-certain of-the-Bebryces tyrant of-his-wife deprived
omnes denique militum, qui una secum fuerant, interfectos.
all finally of-the-soldiers who together with-him had-been killed
Quare commodum nunc numeris congregatis hanc se
wherefore conveniently now with-numbers gathered this himself
moliri militiam, uti ultioni consuleret.
to-undertake campaign that for-vengeance he-might-provide

Told of the captured Candaules, whose wife a tyrant has seized, Alexander has Ptolemy play the king and himself the bodyguard Antigonus, and as Antigonus he wins the wife back by a night attack. Candaules takes him to his mother's palace of gold, ebony, and gems. Candace names him, shows him his own portrait, and mocks his famous cunning; she keeps his secret, above all since her younger son is married to Porus's daughter.

His compertis Ptolomaeus ad regem inrumpit eique 31
with-these learned Ptolemy to the-king bursts-in and-to-him
comperta communicat, quae quidem grata Alexandro et
the-things-learned imparts which indeed welcome to-Alexander and
ex voto accidere videbantur. Surgit igitur e lectulo
according-to wish to-happen seemed rises then from the-little-bed
et diadema protinus suum in Ptolomaei caput transfert
and the-diadem at-once his onto of-Ptolemy the-head transfers
chlamydeque augustiore vel regia circumiectum egredi iubet,
and-in-a-cloak more-august or royal wrapped to-go-out orders
tum ubi petitus a Candaule rex fuat, ad sese Antigonum
then when asked by Candaules the-king should-be to himself Antigonus
satellitem vocitare. Pro quo Antigono cum ipse Alexander
the-bodyguard to-call for which Antigonus when he-himself Alexander
Ptolomaeo se veluti satellitem obtulisset, 'Ibi,' inquit, 'cuncta
to-Ptolemy himself as a-bodyguard had-offered there he-says all
haec mihi comminus dicito atque a me consilium super
these-things to-me at-close-range tell and from me counsel about
re quaeritato.' Ita ut doctus est, Ptolomaeus protinus
the-matter seek so as instructed was Ptolemy at-once
facit. Sed cuncti videntes et Ptolomaeum cum insignibus
does but all seeing both Ptolemy with the-insignia
regiis et pro satellite Alexandrum adsistentem, summa
royal and as a-bodyguard Alexander standing-by in-highest

exspectatione pendebant, ecquid novi consilii regi
expectation hung whether-anything new of-plan to-the-king
sedisset. Namque ut egressus est habitu famulantis, protinus
had-sat for as gone-out he-has in-the-dress of-a-servant at-once
Ptolomaeus: 'Cerne,' inquit, 'Antigone, hunc Candaulem: is
Ptolemy look he-says Antigonus this Candaules he
Candaces reginae est filius, sed enim iniuriam deflet coniugis
of-Candace queen is son but indeed the-injury he-bewails of-his-wife
raptae per insolentiam regis Bebrycis. Facies igitur
seized through the-insolence of-the-king Bebrycian you-will-act then
obsequenter, si nos consilio iuves subiciasque, ecquid nunc
obligingly if us with-counsel you-help and-suggest whether now
facto opus esse arbitrere.' Ad haec Alexander: 'Dignum te
of-doing need to-be you-think to this Alexander worthy of-you
sane erit, rex,' ait, 'si armato exercitu iniuriam supplicis
truly it-will-be king he-says if with-armed army the-injury of-the-suppliant
ulciscare eximasque eius adfectus, cuius honor matri
you-avenge and-remove his afflictions whose honor to-his-mother
proficiat.' His compertis Candauli gaudium. Sed Ptolomaeus
may-profit with-these learned to-Candaules joy but Ptolemy
ad haec respondit: 'Ergo,' inquit, 'Antigone, exsequere istud,
to these answered then he-says Antigonus carry-out that
quod subiecisti, consilium atque exercitum para.' 'Faciam sane,'
which you-suggested plan and the-army prepare I-will-do truly
respondit Alexander; 'sed enim commodum est mihi, rex, ad
answered Alexander but indeed fitting is to-me king by
consilium, quod subiecero, bellum istud inferri Bebrycum
the-plan which I-shall-suggest war that to-be-brought on-the-Bebryces'
regi seu regno non die teste; neque enim animus
king or kingdom not with-day as-witness nor for the-mind
barbari improvisa formidine incitatus ab interfectione
of-the-barbarian by-unforeseen dread roused from the-killing

raptae mulieris temperabit. Erit vero frustra opem supplici
of-the-seized woman will-refrain will-be but in-vain help for-the-suppliant
procurare, si emolumentum victoriae dilabatur. Ergo si placet,
to-procure if the-profit of-victory slip-away therefore if it-pleases
nox belli tempus et superventus eiusmodi confirmetur.
night of-war the-time and the-attack of-this-kind be-confirmed
Ubi enim flammis immissis noctis obscuro turbari civitas
when for with-flames sent-in of-night in-the-dark to-be-troubled the-city
coeperit, adquiescent condicionibus nostris facillime iam
has-begun they-will-acquiesce in-conditions our most-easily already
praeventi raptaque nobis haud difficile repraesentabunt.'
forestalled and-the-seized-woman to-us not with-difficulty will-hand-back
Haec cum dixisset et Antigonus crederetur a supplice, 32
these-things when he-had-said and Antigonus was-believed by the-suppliant
procidens eius ad genua Candaules 'Quam vellem,' ait, 'tu
falling-down his at knees Candaules how I-should-wish he-says you
ille Alexander fores cum hac tua, Antigone, sapientia! non enim
that Alexander were with this your Antigonus wisdom not for
armigeri parum nobis calens industriam dedisses.'
of-an-armor-bearer too-little to-us warm industry you-would-have-given
Ergo, ut consilium fuit, inruunt nocte barbaricam civitatem
therefore as the-plan was they-rush by-night upon-the-barbarian city
et iam somno deditis superveniunt; iniectis denique flammis
and already to-sleep given come-upon with-thrown finally flames
omnia conflagrare cum septis somno nuntiarentur
all-things to-burn when to-those-hemmed by-sleep were-announced
causamque superventus haud dubie cognovissent, undique
and-the-cause of-the-attack not doubtfully they-had-learned on-all-sides
increpari classico iubet, Candaulis illum exercitum uxorem
to-be-sounded by-trumpet he-orders of-Candaules that army the-wife
esse repetentis. Quare boni consulerent, si regi uxor
to-be seeking-back wherefore good they-should-take if to-the-king the-wife

protinus redderetur; quod ni fecissent, omnis civitas direpta
at-once were-restored which unless they-had-done the-whole city plundered
hostiliter conflagraret. Id ubi civibus palam factum est,
as-by-an-enemy would-burn this when to-the-citizens openly made was
inruunt aedes tyranni aedibusque praefractis mulierem
they-rush-upon the-house of-the-tyrant and-with-the-house broken-open the-woman
protinus reddunt. Hoc gaudio Candaules cum agendis gratiis
at-once they-restore with-this joy Candaules when with-giving thanks
occuparetur eiusque facinoris summam penes Antigonum
he-was-occupied and-of-that deed the-sum with Antigonus
conlocaret, complexus eum hisce adloquitur: 'Da quaeso
he-placed embracing him with-these-words addresses grant I-beg
te mihi, Antigone,' ait, 'ad matrem usque comitatum, ut
yourself to-me Antigonus he-says to my-mother even as-escort that
pro consultis tuis a me quoque praemiis munerere.' 'Ergo',
for counsels your by me also with-rewards you-be-rewarded then
inquit Alexander, 'recte feceris, si id ipsum a rege
he-says Alexander rightly you-will-act if this very-thing from the-king
super meo nomine postularis. Nam et mihi haud mediocre
about my name you-request for both to-me not moderate
studium est et videndae civitatis tuae et reginae pariter
zeal is both of-seeing the-city your and the-queen equally
salutandae.' Monet igitur Ptolomaeum, uti petitis adnueret
of-greeting he-warns then Ptolemy that to-the-requests he-should-nod
seseque legatum ac nuntium ad Candacem ire mandaret; et
and-himself as-envoy and messenger to Candace to-go should-order and
Ptolomaeus pro iusso, ac si petenti adveniret, facit ac sic
Ptolemy according-to the-order and if to-the-asker it-came does and thus
ait: 'Et ipse sane loqui per litteras aveo cum Candace et
says and I-myself truly to-speak through letters I-long with Candace and
gratiam tibi faciam, ut desideras; eumque nobis quam primum
the-favor to-you I-will-grant as you-desire and-him to-us as first

sospitem redhibeto; hunc enim tibi ut me ipsum Alexandrum
safe return this-one for to-you as me myself Alexander
tecum missum habebis.' 'Ita sane,' Candaules ait, 'eumque tibi
with-you sent you-will-have so indeed Candaules says and-him to-you
onustum donis regalibus reddam.' Insinuat ergo traditque
laden with-gifts royal I-will-return he-suggests then and-hands-over
Candaules Alexandro vel maximam exercitus sui partem
Candaules to-Alexander even the-greatest of-army his part
impedimentaque omnia, quibus apparatus regius vehebatur.
and-the-baggage all with-which the-equipment royal was-carried
Sed enim Alexander viabundus cuncta curiosius spectans 33
but indeed Alexander traveling all-things more-curiously looking-at
animo perlustrabat, montes scilicet arduos et congesta
in-mind surveyed mountains namely steep and heaps
saxorum nivali specie candentium, quae pleraque crystalli
of-rocks with-snowy appearance gleaming which mostly of-crystal
metalla dicebantur, frigida sane sub caeli plaga et circum
metals were-called cold indeed under the-sky's region and around
omnia nubibus convestita. Enim frigus hoc fertur non obsistere
all with-clouds clothed for cold this is-said not to-oppose
ubertati. Arbores enim procerissimas virentesque et graves
fertility trees for very-tall and-green and heavy
pomis ubique mirabatur. Haec poma erant vel mala grandia
with-fruits everywhere he-wondered-at these fruits were or apples large
ad auri gratiam colorata, sed ad magnitudinem ferme, quae
to of-gold the-grace colored but to the-size almost which
apud nos est citri excrescentia. Uvae ponderis et densitatis
with us is of-the-citron growing grapes of-weight and of-density
immensae, prorsus ut singulis acinis vel improbissimi oris
immense so that single berries even of-the-most-greedy mouth
hiatibus non occurses. Granatis etiam malis suam dat
to-the-gapings not you-could-meet to-pomegranate also apples its gives

gratiam magnitudo; nam grana illis quo glandes impetu,
grace the-size for the-seeds in-them like acorns in-force
verum ignicantia, sapora tamen; ipsaque mala non minus
but fiery in-flavor yet and-the-very apples not less
pepone excrescunt, enimvero potiori; horumque pomorum
than-a-melon grow but-indeed for-the-stronger and-of-these fruits
perdifficilis occasio: ita omnia vel pleraque dracones amplexi
very-difficult the-opportunity so all-things or most serpents embracing
possident aut errabundi, tum genera lacertorum haud minus
possess or wandering then kinds of-lizards not less
ichneumonum magnitudine. Multa praeterea animantium
than-of-ichneumons in-size many besides of-animals
genera innoxiaque, sed enim facie peregrina, nostris
kinds and-harmless but indeed in-appearance foreign to-our
experimentis aliena; et simias facile viseres magnitudinem
experiences strange and apes easily you-would-see the-size
ursarum nostratium supervectas formasque varias simiarum,
of-bears our surpassing and-shapes various of-apes
quas referre difficile est hominibus non insignientem.
which to-describe difficult is to-men not distinguishing
34 Locorum vero pleraque saxis quidem aspera, sicuti dictum
of-the-places but most with-rocks indeed rough as said
est, sed quae facile praesumeres haberi et incoli posse
it-is but which easily you-would-presume to-be-held and to-be-inhabited to-be-able
numinibus. Quippe loca haec domus deorum vocant, et
by-deities for places these the-homes of-the-gods they-call and
plerumque visuntur in hisce secessibus agere dii res
mostly are-seen in these retreats to-carry-on the-gods affairs
voluptarias. Addebat quippe Candaules et vocatos hominibus
of-pleasure added for Candaules also called by-men
respondere et vultu sese, quo sint, regibus confiteri.
to-answer and in-face themselves as they-are to-kings to-reveal

‘Quare tu quoque, si voles, invitato sacrificiis haec numina;
wherefore you also if you-wish invite with-sacrifices these deities
nec erit difficile experimentum, quin te quoque sui
nor will-it-be difficult the-experiment that-not you also with-their
conspectu dignentur.’ Multa igitur eiuscemodi cum per
sight they-deign many then of-this-kind when through
omne iter vidisset audivissetque Alexander, tandem cum
all the-journey he-had-seen and-heard Alexander at-last with
Candaule ad regiam Candaces venit. Quare iam primum
Candaules to the-palace of-Candace he-came wherefore now first
fratres eius, postque et regina mater cum regiae pompae
the-brothers his and-afterward also the-queen mother with of-royal pomp
comitatu Candauli obviantes in complexus eius gratulabundi
the-retinue Candaules meeting into the-embrace his congratulating
inruere gestiebant. Sed enim praevenit iuvenis nec prius sibi
to-rush were-eager but indeed forestalled the-youth nor before for-himself
adfectus huiusce obsequia deposcit, quam Antigono gratias
of-affection this the-attentions demands than to-Antigonus thanks
super adiuto sese ac liberata coniuge confessi forent. Hunc
for helped himself and freed wife confessed they-had this-one
enim Antigonum internuntium esse regis Alexandri secumque
for Antigonus the-go-between to-be of-king Alexander and-with-himself
legatum. Tunc quaerentibus gratiae novitatem et iniuriam
the-envoy then to-them-asking of-the-thanks the-novelty and the-injury
raptae coniugis et ultionem provisi beneficii refert. Ergo
of-the-seized wife and the-vengeance of-the-foreseen kindness he-reports therefore
agunt gratias iuvenes et regina laetatur ultione pariter
give thanks the-youths and the-queen rejoices in-the-vengeance equally
temerati Candaulae et integratae nurus illibata
of-the-wronged Candaules and of-the-restored daughter-in-law with-unimpaired
laetitia. Coena denique gratulatoria, ubi id tempus, operosa et
joy a-dinner finally congratulatory when that time elaborate and

regalis adponitur. Et est videre apud illos lasciviam barbarorum,
royal is-served and it-is to-see among them the-wantonness of-barbarians
incubare pretiis, inludere pretiis, sed et vesci de pretiis.
to-brood on-treasures to-play with-treasures but also to-eat from treasures
35 Insequenti tamen die cum regina Candace ostentatione regia
on-the-following yet day when the-queen Candace with-display royal
processisset, superba admodum gemmato stemmate et gemmato
had-come-forth proud very with-jeweled crown and jeweled
diademate, statura auctior, aetate veneranda, ut Alexandro
diadem in-stature larger in-age venerable so-that for-Alexander
recordanti ad Olympiadam matrem eius aestimatio conveniret,
recalling to Olympias mother his the-estimate agreed
dedit prorsus sciri sese et opulentiam suam. Domus vero
she-gave utterly to-be-known herself and wealth her the-house but
egregio opere elaborata hisque metallis insignita erat, ut
with-outstanding work wrought and-with-these metals marked was that
intuentibus splendor ornatus pariter et celsitudo moliminis
to-those-gazing the-splendor of-adornment equally and the-height of-the-structure
undique sudo quodam et ignoto lumine coruscaret, nihil in
on-all-sides with-clear a-certain and unknown light flashed nothing in
sese dispar aut alienum possidens. Usquequaque lucebant omnia
itself unequal or foreign possessing everywhere shone all-things
veste serica, colore purpurea, intexta auro, gemmis admixta,
with-cloth silken in-color purple interwoven with-gold with-gems mixed
quae veste coepta fuerant, et perornata. Gemmarum vero
which with-cloth begun had-been and adorned of-the-gems but
regalium utrum magnitudines mirarere, an vero coloribus
royal whether the-sizes you-would-admire or indeed by-the-colors
ducerere, an fulgoribus vincerere, iudicium prae stupore
you-would-be-led or by-the-gleams you-would-be-overcome judgment for amazement
non erat. Inter aurum sane purpureaque texta vel gemmas
not there-was among the-gold truly and-purple weavings or gems

ebur multum, sed in ebore viseres artis pretia maiora. Onyx
ivory much but in the-ivory you-would-see of-art prices greater onyx
pro saxis et columnae de gemmis et earum proceritudo
instead-of stones and columns of gems and their height
ubique supra nostrates arbores, sed quae sint procerissimae,
everywhere above our trees but which are tallest
fuerat, ebeno tamen plurima interpolante: quod si sit ad
had-been with-ebony yet very-much interpolating which if it-be to
caeruli speciem vel colorem laevigatio, tamen plerumque ex ea
dark-blue's appearance or color the-polishing yet mostly from that
purpura aliud esse *** quam si saxum ebenum mentiebatur.
purple other to-be (lacuna) than if stone the-ebony feigned
Illic et effigies plurimae tum e marmore vario tum e 36
there also images very-many both from marble varied and from
metallo cuiuscunque modi renuebant numeri aestimationem,
metal of-every manner refused of-number the-reckoning
quae omnis curiosi diligentiam vinceret. Adeo multa
which every curious-man's diligence would-overcome so many
erant! Quamvis in singulis figmentis fuerit superbior
they-were although in single figures was prouder
admiratio; currus sane falcatos e porphyrite lapide, sed
the-admiration chariots indeed scythed from porphyry stone but
conliniatissime una cum animantibus et aurigis ad
most-accurately-outlined together with animals and charioteers to
veri faciem videre erat plurimos et passim ubique
of-truth the-appearance to-see it-was very-many and everywhere in-all-places
constitisse, quos et cursum agere opinarere et moveri
to-have-stood which both a-course to-drive you-would-think and to-be-moved
omnia non discrederes. Ita prae corusco fulgore oculorum
all-things not you-would-disbelieve so for flashing gleam with-the-eyes'
officio praeverso labi erat opiniones intuentium. Ast alii
duty forestalled to-slip it-was the-opinions of-the-onlookers but other

currus quadrigas elephantis iunctis habebant, eosque ebeno,
chariots four-horse-teams with-elephants yoked had and-them of-ebony
cui concolor bestia veri facilius imaginem retinebat;
to-which same-colored the-beast of-the-truth more-easily the-image kept
sed subter erant impressa pedibus elephantorum captivorum
but beneath were impressed at-the-feet of-the-elephants of-captives
corpora subcumbentium aut innexa proboscidibus suspensaque.
the-bodies lying-under or entwined with-trunks and-hung
Quae inter omnia id sane praecipuum regi operis
which among all this indeed chief to-the-king of-the-work
videbatur, quod una de gemma scalptum templum indidemque
seemed that one from gem carved a-temple and-thence
columnas cerneret interscalptas, obsessum omne vel frequens
columns he-saw carved-between beset all or crowded
horrore sacro de daemonum vultibus barbaris, qui plusne
with-awe sacred from of-demons faces barbarian which whether-more
formidinis an admirationis darent, haud erat homini discernere.
of-dread or of-admiration they-gave not was for-a-man to-discern
Inter haec et celsa illa atque ad caelum suspicanda
among these-things and lofty those and to the-sky to-be-looked-up-at
palatia interfluere Argyritum flumen et alium Pactolum
palaces to-flow-between the-Argyritus river and another the-Pactolus
fluvium mirabatur; sed utrumque alveum auro divitem et
river he-wondered-at but each channel in-gold rich and
prae nimietate auri interfluentis aquae quoque aurigantem
for the-excess of-gold flowing-through of-the-water also gold-tinged
colorem; sed eorum litus et margines insertis arboribus
the-color but their shore and banks with-inserted trees
convirescunt, quae celsae sint et odorae; cypros denique
grow-green which lofty are and fragrant cypros finally
gentiliter vocant fructu suavi et umbrosis frondibus divites.
natively they-call in-fruit sweet and in-shady leaves rich

Haec igitur cuncta cum Alexander intuitus esset, admiratione 37
these then all when Alexander beheld had with-wonder
quidem debita vincebatur. Agebat in convivio cum Candauli
indeed due he-was-overcome he-was in the-banquet with of-Candaules
sororibus. Enimvero quaesit quam blandius post matrem
the-sisters but-indeed asks as more-coaxingly after his-mother
Candaules, uti Antigonum suum pro merito gratiae
Candaules that Antigonus his-own according-to merit of-favor
regalis muneraretur, quo donatus pro fortuna tantae
royal she-reward so-that presented according-to the-fortune of-so-great
reginae ad propria protinus remearet. Conprehensum igitur
a-queen to his-own at-once he-might-return seized then
Alexandrum Candace per aulam suam omniaque regiae
Alexander Candace through the-hall her and-all of-the-palace
secreta ac penetralia circumducit, secessus quosdam ei
the-secret-places and inner-parts leads-around retreats certain to-him
aedium monstrans ex eo lapide, cuius quidem fulgor ignitus
of-the-house showing from that stone of-which indeed the-gleam fiery
est, nam lychnitem etiam vocant. Intuentibus visitur opinio
is for lychnites also they-call to-the-onlookers is-seen a-notion
quaedam indidem solis orientis. Triclinium quoque ibidem
certain thence of-the-rising sun a-dining-room also there
videt alio de saxi genere, cui cum sint igneae quaedam
he-sees another from of-stone kind on-which since there-are fiery certain
maculae vel inustiones, — haud secus haec quam si candenti
spots or burnings not otherwise these than if with-glowing
lapide sunt — flammea visitabantur quam si caelitus septem
stone they-are fiery were-seen than if from-heaven seven
astra discurrere stellasque omni studio et sereno sub tempore
stars ran-about and-the-stars with-all zeal and serene under weather
caelestem chorum agere mirere. Erat et tectum ad
the-heavenly choir to-lead you-would-wonder there-was also a-roof to

instar integrae domus marmoris pretiosi opere circumforaneo.
the-likeness of-a-whole house of-marble precious with-work portable
Namque aedes illa rotarum lapsibus subter adiuta viginti
for house that of-wheels by-the-gliding beneath helped by-twenty
elephantis ad reginae itinera movebatur eo, quod his
elephants for of-the-queen the-journeys was-moved for-this that in-these
solita regina quoque militatum pergere praedicatur.
accustomed the-queen also to-campaign to-go is-declared
38 Sed enim Alexander ne victus rudi quadam admiratione
but indeed Alexander lest conquered by-crude a-certain admiration
videretur, ampla sane, sed pro condicione opulentiae gentilis
he-should-seem ample indeed but according-to the-condition of-wealth native
atque praesentis visa sibi omnia confitetur. Quippe admirabilia
and present seen by-him all-things he-confesses for wonderful
videri potuisse tunc mage, si apud Graecos haec forent,
to-seem to-have-been-able then more if among the-Greeks these-things were
apud quos esset elaborandis rebus peregrina materia. At cum
among whom was to-be-wrought for-things foreign the-material but since
sibi tanta metallorum huiuscemodi pretia servirent, segnitiae
to-them so-great of-metals of-this-kind the-values served of-sluggishness
condemnandos fuisse, si non haberent, quibus uti ex facili
to-be-condemned to-have-been if not they-had which to-use from easy
licuisset. Et intelligit regina Candace ingenium viri
it-had-been-allowed and understands the-queen Candace the-wit of-the-man
et probat sane, sed in respondendo sic ait: 'Vera mihi
and approves indeed but in answering thus says true-things to-me
dixisti haec, Alexander mi.' Tum audito nomine obstupescens,
you-said these Alexander my then with-heard the-name stunned
'Apage,' inquit, 'o regina, hoc a me nomen, quippe ipse
away he-says o queen this from me name for I-myself
Antigonus vocor, enimvero Alexander nobis rex cluit, cuius
Antigonus am-called but-indeed Alexander to-us the-king is-called of-whom

ego nunc internuntius huc adveni.' Et regina post haec:
I now the-go-between here have-come and the-queen after this
'Esto sane,' inquit, 'Antigonus apud ceteros, mihi tamen nunc
be-it indeed she-says Antigonus with others to-me yet now
Alexander rex eris. Neque nesciens id habeo; haud differam
Alexander king you-will-be nor not-knowing this I-have not will-I-defer
probationem.' Et cum dicto adprehendens in penita
the-proof and with the-word grasping-him into the-inner-parts
perducit olimque provisam imaginem ostendit. 'Agnoscisne,'
she-leads and-long-before provided the-image shows do-you-recognize
ait, 'Alexandri illius, quem mentiri non potes, faciem? Sed
she-says of-Alexander that whom to-feign not you-can the-face but
quidnam intremuisti tam trepide quidve turbaris ex vultu?
why have-you-trembled so anxiously or-why are-you-troubled from face
Non ille tu Persarum potens es? non Indiae dominus?
not that-one you of-the-Persians powerful are not of-India master
non qui iam orientem omnem trophaeum tuum feceris,
not who already the-east all a-trophy your have-made
Parthis et Medis imperitans? An vero te pudet sine
over-the-Parthians and the-Medes ruling or indeed you shames-it without
militia vel expeditione in manus feminae devenisse? Quare
campaign or expedition into the-hands of-a-woman to-have-come wherefore
conice, quaeso, quid te iuvarit tua illa famosa prudentia,
guess I-beg what you has-helped your that famous prudence
cum nunc Candacem tui videris sollertiorem. Quod igitur
since now Candace than-you you-see more-skillful what then
huc attinet, adrogantiam nimiae prudentiae iam deponito.'
here pertains the-arrogance of-excessive prudence now lay-down
Haec illa dicente nec vultu constare Alexander, quin 39
these-things with-her saying nor in-face to-stay-steady Alexander nay
etiam infrendere dentibus videbatur. Et regina subridens:
even to-gnash with-teeth seemed and the-queen smiling

‘Quid te iuvat,’ inquit, ‘haec tua tacita indignatio sic
what you helps-it she-says this your silent indignation so
saevientem vel, si mavelis, insanientem?’ Ad haec ille ‘Una
raging or if you-prefer raving to this he one-thing
mihi — nam sane profitendum est —’ ait, ‘vel maxima
to-me for truly to-be-confessed it-is he-says even greatest
indignatio est, quod mihi gladius meus huc comes non sit.’
indignation is that to-me sword my here companion not is
‘Et cuinam usui,’ regina respondit, ‘gladium tibi nunc
and for-what use the-queen answered a-sword for-yourself now
requisisses?’ At ille: ‘Quod enim in huiuscemodi tempore
would-you-have-sought but he what for in this-kind-of time
atque rebus regale admodum munus foret, interfecta te
and affairs royal very a-gift would-be with-killed you
comitem me praemissae morti praestitisse, ne quid sit
as-companion me to-the-sent-ahead death to-have-shown lest anything be
foedius, quod praeteritas nostras glorias obumbraverit.’
fouler which past our glories should-have-overshadowed
‘Accipio,’ inquit Candace, ‘professionem dignam viro et
I-accept she-says Candace a-profession worthy of-a-man and
animo sane regali; sed metum hunc abicias velim, et
of-a-mind truly royal but fear this cast-off I-would-wish and
magnitudinem gratiae tuae beneficiique considerans dignam
the-greatness of-favor your and-kindness considering a-worthy
vicissitudinem spera. Quod enim filio Candauli meo in
return hope-for what for to-son Candaules my in
Bebryciorum ultione praestitisti, id tibi ego in tua salute
of-the-Bebryces the-vengeance you-rendered that to-you I in your safety
praestabo; atque apud gentiles barbaros meos fidem veri
will-render and among native barbarians my the-certainty of-the-truth
clam habeo, quippe cum palam sit a caede tui homines
secret I-hold since when plain it-be from slaughter of-you men

natura saeviores haud facile temperaturos, si qui ad fidem
by-nature more-savage not easily going-to-refrain if any to the-truth
venerint, praesertim cum tu etiam Pori sis interfector, cuius
should-come especially since you also of-Porus are the-killer whose
filiam scito iunioris mei filii coniugio copulatam. Quare
daughter know of-the-younger my son in-marriage joined wherefore
esto Antigonus apud illos, cum mihi soli Alexander habeare.'
be Antigonus among them while to-me alone Alexander you-are-held

XVII · SESONCHOSIS, THE AMAZONS, AND THE RAINS

Candace's younger son wants vengeance for Porus; the false Antigonus promises to lure Alexander to him, and Candace sends him off with gifts. Among the gods he meets Sesonchosis, who will not tell him how long he will live. The Amazons describe their river-bound land and agree to crown him yearly and send horsewomen. Storms wear down the army on the way to Prasiaca; hearing of its king's power and elephants, he sacrifices, skirts its border, and seizes its cities.

Et cum hisce dictis egreditur atque ad Candaulem sic 40
and with these words she-goes-out and to Candaules thus
ait: 'Fili Candaule, tuque Margie nurus suavissima,
says son Candaules and-you Margia daughter-in-law sweetest
gaudeo admodum, quod in tempore fuit vestro Alexandri
I-rejoice greatly that in time it-was for-you of-Alexander
regis auxilium repperisse; ceteroqui vobis vidua iam et
the-king the-help to-have-found otherwise to-you a-widow already and
lugubris hic sederem. Dignum igitur fortuna nostra erit
mourning here I-would-sit worthy then of-fortune our it-will-be
internuntium Alexandri donatum muneribus hinc remitti.'
the-go-between of-Alexander presented with-gifts hence to-be-sent-back
Sed ad haec iunior Candaces filius Charagos nomine: 'Quam
but at this the-younger of-Candace son Charagos by-name how

vellem,' inquit, 'o mater, nostrae quoque iniuriae meminisse!
I-should-wish he-says o mother our also injury to-remember
Neque enim clam te, illum quem opitulatum salutariter
nor for hidden-from you him whom having-helped savingly
dicas fratri meo, mei quoque soceri interfectorem
you-say to-brother my my also father-in-law's the-killer
exstitisse. Erit igitur memoriter ac iuste etiam indignantis,
to-have-been it-will-be then mindfully and justly also of-one-indignant
si vel in hoc Alexandri internuntio eius ulciscamur iniuriam.'
if even on this of-Alexander go-between his we-avenge the-injury
Sed ad haec regina Candace: 'Neque,' inquit, 'o nate, mihi
but to this the-queen Candace nor she-says o child to-me
ad Alexandrum istud iniuriae facit et perfacile damnum est
against Alexander this of-injury does and very-easy loss it-is
regibus uno milite caruisse. Tunc legationis ius et foedus
for-kings one soldier to-have-lacked then of-embassy the-right and the-covenant
perpetuum internuntiorum in nobis claudicare non sinam.' Ad
perpetual of-go-betweens in us to-limp not I-will-allow to
haec Candaules etiam excipit: 'Neque sane ad ista, quae
this Candaules also takes-up nor truly to those-things which
iusta sunt, a nobis quoque aberit Antigono defensatio;
just are from us also will-be-absent for-Antigonus defense
neque enim ingenuae conscientiae est, a quo tibi salutem
nor for of-free-born conscience it-is by whom to-you safety
datam tuisque fatearis, eius iniustum exitium prodidisse.'
given and-to-yours you-confess his unjust destruction to-have-betrayed
Sed enim fortior iuvenis: 'Numquid ergo mavis, Candaule,
but indeed the-braver youth surely then do-you-prefer Candaules
super hoc Antigoni praemio bello nos decernere? Utrum enim
about this of-Antigonus reward in-war us to-decide which for
iustius sit, vide, ultionem suis an vero vicem gratiae
more-just be see vengeance for-one's-own or indeed the-return of-favor

praestitisse?' Ibat adolescentior fervor et vis cum impetu animi
to-have-rendered went the-youthful fervor and force with the-impulse of-spirit
regalis et ex pari utriusque gliscens indignatio asperabatur
royal and from equal of-each growing indignation was-roughened
metuebatque mater, ecquid aetas illa temere consultaret.
and-feared the-mother whether age that rashly would-decide
Seducto igitur Alexandro: 'Nunc,' inquit, 'tempus est tuae 41
with-drawn-aside then Alexander now she-says the-time is of-your
celebratae prudentiae; reperiendum enim consilii genus, quo
celebrated prudence to-be-found for of-counsel a-kind by-which
filiis causa civilis proelii dilabatur.' Bono animo esse
from-the-sons the-cause of-civil battle may-slip-away of-good spirit to-be
reginam Alexander iubet. Quare reversus ad iuvenes 'Neque
the-queen Alexander bids wherefore having-returned to the-youths nor
me sane,' ait, 'minae istae mortis magnopere terrebunt
me truly he-says threats these of-death greatly will-terrify
nec regi meo damnosa satis videbitur ista iactura. Quot
nor to-king my damaging enough will-seem this loss how-many
enim satellitum milia et quantus animantium numerus
for of-bodyguards thousands and how-great of-living-things the-number
hoc regi obsequium meliusque hoc praestare non poterit?
this to-the-king service and-better this to-render not will-be-able
Enimvero ego cessi Candaces gratiae vesterque iam fuam,
but-indeed I have-yielded to-Candace's favor and-yours now I-may-be
si quidem ita nobis ad fidem sederit, uti ex praedicatione
if indeed so to-us for good-faith it-sits that from the-proclamation
vestri, praesertim hisce liberalitatis indiciis facile Alexandrum
of-you especially by-these of-generosity signs easily Alexander
ductem huc ad vos sponte pervenire, praesertim adeo
I-may-lead here to you of-his-own-accord to-come especially so
immodice habendi cupidum atque opibus inhiantem; qui cum
excessively of-having greedy and for-riches gaping who when

perexiguo comitatu vestrae se fidei commiserit, haud
with-very-small retinue to-your himself good-faith he-has-entrusted not
magni faciam, quid de eius exitio consultetis, modo ut
much will-I-make what about his destruction you-decide only that
vos gratiae memores remuneraturosque in posterum mihi vos
you of-favor mindful and-going-to-reward in the-future to-me you
sedulo promittatis.' Sedet sponsio adolescentis et Candace
earnestly promise sits the-pledge of-the-youth and Candace
protinus inventi prudentiam demirabatur. Rursusque secreto:
at-once of-the-device the-prudence admired and-again in-secret
'Utinam, Alexander mi, te quoque velles ad numerum mihi
would-that Alexander my you also you-wished to the-number for-me
addere filiorum! Quis enim dubitet tunc demum fore
to-add of-sons who for would-doubt then at-last going-to-be
Candacem orbis universi reginam, si talis quoque mater
Candace of-the-world whole the-queen if such also the-mother
filii putaretur? Ego iam credo non te plus ferro vel proeliis
of-a-son were-thought I now believe not you more by-sword or by-battles
quam hac tua tam celebri prudentia gentibus praestitisse.
than by-this your so famous prudence the-nations to-have-surpassed
Confirmo igitur tibi rursus eandem illam fidem sponsionis
I-confirm then to-you again the-same that faith of-promise
meae neque te, ut res est, noscendum cuipiam profitebor.'
my nor you as the-thing is to-be-known to-anyone will-I-profess
42 Ergo post paucos admodum dies digredienti dat secretius
therefore after few very days to-him-departing she-gives more-secretly
munera: coronam auream adamantibus coruscantem prorsus
gifts a-crown golden with-diamonds flashing utterly
ac si regiam, thoracam varium ex unionibus beryllisque,
as if royal a-breastplate varied of pearls and-beryls
chlamydem etiam purpuream intextamque auro, aliaque
a-cloak also purple and-interwoven with-gold and-other

praeterea cum testimonio publico, quae ad satellitem
besides with testimony public which to a-bodyguard
pertinerent, iubetque hominem deduci eo et per
pertained and-orders the-man to-be-escorted thither and through
satrapas vicissimque profectum repedare, quo venerat. Ubi
the-satraps and-in-turn set-out to-retrace whence he-had-come when
igitur ad id loci Alexander venit, quas Candaules ei
then to that of-place Alexander came which Candaules to-him
deorum domus esse confessus est, sperat posse illic sibi
of-the-gods the-homes to-be confessed has he-hopes to-be-possible there for-himself
cum diis immortalibus verba fieri; ex praesentium
with gods immortal words to-be-made from of-the-present-things
copia opipare sacrificatus ibidem convivatusque adhibet
the-plenty sumptuously having-sacrificed there and-having-feasted he-employs
etiam ex comitibus quam paucissimos. Interea intervenire
also of his-companions as very-few meanwhile to-come-between
quasdam formarum effigies videt tenui quidem, sed corusco
certain of-forms images he-sees thin indeed but flashing
sub lumine, ut si conventu nebuloso vera primum
under light as if in-a-gathering cloudy the-true-features at-first
occurrentium confundantur, tum etiam circumsistentia tecta
of-those-coming are-confused then also the-surrounding roofs
undique consplendescere, et cum his una crescit turba
on-all-sides to-shine and with these together grows the-crowd
formarum et murmur praesentium usurpatur et fit prorsus
of-forms and the-murmur of-those-present is-heard and becomes utterly
unum diis hominibusque convivium. Hic animo confusus
one for-gods and-men banquet here in-mind confused
reverentia debita Alexander trepidare; quippe intuenti videre
by-reverence due Alexander to-tremble for to-one-gazing to-see
iam clarius erat flammas quasdam ex oculis deorum
now more-clearly it-was flames certain from the-eyes of-the-gods

discumbentium promicantes prodique effigies, quas haud
reclining flashing and-to-be-revealed images which not
dubie divinas esse vel brutissimus sentiat. Unus ergo
doubtfully divine to-be even the-most-brutish would-perceive one therefore
tandem ex his: 'Have,' inquit, 'Alexander mi.' Tunc cum rex
at-last of them hail he-says Alexander my then when the-king
venerationem debitam reddidisset quaesissetque, quis esset, qui
the-veneration due had-rendered and-had-asked who he-was who
se foret hac salutatione dignatus: 'Ego,' inquit, 'Sesonchosis
him had with-this greeting deigned I he-says Sesonchosis
ille sum; sed enim, ut vides, adscitus convivio caelitum
that am but indeed as you-see admitted to-the-banquet of-the-heaven-dwellers
ago una cum diis, quod profecto te quoque procul dubio
I-live together with the-gods which surely you also far-from doubt
iam manebit.' Ad haec Alexander cum ratum spei
now will-await to this Alexander when the-ratification of-hope
istius requisisset, Sesonchosis rursus: 'Iure,' inquit, 'ista
that he-had-asked Sesonchosis again rightly he-says these-things
tibi sperare convenit, qui inter cetera laboris et gloriae
for-you to-hope befits who among the-rest of-labor and glory
eius quoque urbis auctor exstiteris, quae rebus humanis
of-that also city author have-stood-forth which in-affairs human
magnificentia pariter antistet et gloria. Quare abito introrsus,
in-magnificence equally excels and in-glory wherefore go-away inward
ut summi quoque potentiam numinis coram salutes.'
that of-the-highest also the-power of-divinity in-person you-may-greet
43 Tum audacior rex ingressus sacri loci penita
then bolder the-king having-entered of-the-sacred place the-inner-parts
maiestatis effigiem videt et fulgore aethereo renitentem,
of-majesty the-image sees and with-gleam ethereal shining
enimvero sedentarium talemque prorsus, qualem apud
but-indeed seated and-such utterly as at

Rhacotin adoratum a sese summum deum praesidem
Rhacotis worshiped by himself the-highest god guardian
Sarapim meminisset. Ibi ergo cum augustissimum numen
Sarapis he-remembered there then when the-most-august divinity
Alexander salutasset agnitionemque confessus esset olim
Alexander had-saluted and-the-recognition confessed had once
visitati dei, rursus Sesonchosis sic exorsus: 'Numnam,' inquit,
of-the-visited god again Sesonchosis thus began surely-not he-says
'tibi, Alexander, mirum est in tam longinquo dei huius
to-you Alexander wonderful it-is in so distant of-the-god this
praesentiam visam esse? sed idem ubique totus ac praesens
the-presence seen to-have-been but the-same everywhere whole and present
est', ait. 'Quod enim caeli ambitus ubique praestiterit
he-is he-says what for of-the-sky the-circuit everywhere has-furnished
homini, id huius quoque numinis vis, quae numquam
to-man that of-this also divinity the-force which never
frustra veluti per absentiam requiritur.' Tum Alexander
in-vain as-if through absence is-sought then Alexander
occasionem veri audiendi ratus protinus sciscitatur,
the-occasion of-the-truth to-be-heard thinking at-once inquires
quantum sibi ad vitae spatia polliceretur. Sed Sesonchosis
how-much to-him for of-life the-spaces he-would-promise but Sesonchosis
'Et ante iam dictum est,' inquit, 'tibi, nihil homini
also before already said it-is he-says to-you nothing to-man
commodare praescientiam, quam requiris. Quippe viventi
to-avail the-foreknowledge which you-seek for to-the-living
de vitae termino ratum dicere nihil aliud est quam longum
about of-life the-end ratified to-say nothing other is than long
maerorem ei et perpetem contulisse; spem vero vivendi
grief to-him and perpetual to-have-brought the-hope but of-living
perinde fieri longissimam, si praesentibus perfruare. Quod
likewise to-become longest if the-present-things you-enjoy what

ergo tuum est ac beatitudini tuae proficit, urbs tellusque,
then yours is and to-happiness your profits the-city and-land
quam delegisti, erit orbis inlustrior, eoque tibi nunc
which you-chose will-be than-the-world more-illustrious and-thereby to-you now
et in posterum una erit omnium veneratio; deus denique
and in the-future at-once will-be of-all the-veneration a-god finally
praesidebit. His etiam laeteris, si hominem demutaveris.'
will-preside in-these also rejoice if man you-will-have-changed
Post hoc responsum et sacrum Alexander haud difficile
after this answer and the-rite Alexander not with-difficulty
ad exercitum venit Candaces corona et insignibus comptus.
to the-army comes with-Candace's crown and insignia adorned
44 Eximque ad Amazonas ire festinat, ad quas praemittit litteras in
and-thence to the-Amazons to-go he-hastens to whom he-sends-ahead a-letter in
hunc modum scriptas: 'Victorias nostras et in Darium bella
this manner written victories our and against Darius the-wars
eximque in alios, in quoscumque militavimus, glorias
and-thence against others against whomever we-have-campaigned the-glories
haud dubito vobis famae ipsius magnificentiam commendasse.
not do-I-doubt to-you of-rumor itself the-magnificence to-have-commended
Nam et Pori fortunam et iter nostrum in Oxydracontas
for both of-Porus the-fortune and journey our against the-Oxydracae
ac Bragmanas digne taceri non arbitror; in hoc nomina
and the-Brahmans worthily to-be-kept-silent not I-think in this the-names
gymnosophistarum etiam per clementiam laudatiora, quippe
of-the-gymnosophists also through clemency more-praised since
quos siverim agere in pace ac suis legibus moribusque
whom I-have-allowed to-live in peace and with-their laws and-customs
donaverim. Quod si vobis haud displicet, accipite nos isto
have-presented but if to-you not it-displeases receive us thither
venientes et, quod est amicitiae munus, diis sacrificate pro
coming and what is of-friendship the-duty to-the-gods sacrifice for

nobis iam, quippe vobis aderimus. At vos velim obviare
us now for to-you we-shall-be-present but you I-would-wish to-meet
nobis animo gratante, cum ad amicitiam iter istud, non
us with-mind rejoicing since to friendship journey that not
ad periculum sit futurum.' Ad haec Amazones respondere:
to danger is going-to-be to this the-Amazons answered
'Vel fiduciae munus est vel libertatis, omnia tibi, rex, scribere, 45
either of-confidence the-duty it-is or of-freedom all-things to-you king to-write
quae penes nos sint, non quod fidem scriptis deroget ulla
which with us are not because credit from-the-writings takes any
suspicio, sed ut plenius noscas, ecquid operis pretii sit
suspicion but that more-fully you-may-know whether of-the-work price be
his, quicunque hostili fervore in nos cupiant militare.
for-those whoever with-hostile fervor against us desire to-campaign
Commune quippe humanitatis studium esse arbitramur, in
the-common for of-humanity zeal to-be we-think for
quaeque dubia ausuros nihil prius quam emolumentum
each doubtful going-to-dare nothing before than the-profit
laboris intueri oportere. Scito igitur primum colere nos
of-the-labor to-look-at it-behooves know then first to-inhabit us
interamnanum, Amazonico flumine locum omnem, quo
between-rivers with-the-Amazonian river the-place all where
consistimus, ambiente, eo fluenti circiter spatio, ut una
we-stand surrounding by-that flowing about space so-that one
sit aditicula, eaque vix adcolis nota, qua septum
be little-entrance and-it scarcely to-the-inhabitants known by-which the-enclosure
fluminis vel inrumpi oporteat vel emergi, eiusque alvei
of-the-river either to-be-broken-into it-behooves or to-be-emerged and-of-its channel
tanta est difficultas, quanta nos a quibusvis periculis
so-great is the-difficulty as-great-as us from any dangers
tueatur. Hoc igitur tantillo in loco ducenta milia virginum
would-protect this then so-small in place two-hundred thousand of-maidens

coimus, nullo omnino mari sexu interpolatae. Enimvero sicubi
we-assemble by-no at-all male sex interpolated but-indeed if-ever
nobis ad naturam est consulendum, annuum sacrum est,
for-us for nature it-is to-be-provided a-yearly rite there-is
quod hippophonia vocitamus. Eius sacri causa ad mares
which hippophonia we-call of-that rite for-the-sake to males
nostros, qui ultra amnem extrinsecus perpalantur, omnes
our who beyond the-river outside wander all
ferme transimus atque illic per dies triginta inter haec,
almost we-cross and there for days thirty among these-things
quae diis aguntur, ubi fuerit ad lubentiam, nubimus.
which for-the-gods are-done when it-has-been to pleasure we-marry
Nuptias vero cum maribus derelinquimus pactis et legibus,
the-marriages but with males we-leave with-pacts and laws
ut quaeque exim ad sexum hunc editae fuant, eaedem post
that each thence to sex this born may-be the-same after
septennium in exercitum dimittantur. Sed ubi venerint,
seven-years into the-army are-sent but when they-have-come
erudiuntur equis et peltis, donec armis idoneae fuerint.
they-are-trained with-horses and light-shields until for-arms fit they-have-been
Igitur nobis quocumque militandum, et viginti milibus
therefore for-us wherever it-is-to-be-campaigned and with-twenty thousand
nostrum domi et in patria praetendentibus et ceteris
of-us at-home and in the-homeland guarding also by-the-others
arma sumuntur; redeuntibusque mos est honorem pro
arms are-taken and-for-those-returning the-custom is honor for
vulneribus numerari. Ea nobis stipendia sunt, haec provectio;
wounds to-be-counted these for-us pay are this promotion
tantumque quis nostrum honore dives est, quantum cicatricibus
and-so-much each of-us in-honor rich is as-much-as by-scars
insignitior. Quippe et corona aurea redimitae salutamur
more-marked for both with-a-crown golden wreathed we-are-saluted

atque adoramur a ceteris et publicis conviviis adhibemur
and are-worshiped by the-others and to-public banquets are-admitted
et cuncta, quae sint nobis ad obsequium, deferuntur. Quod
and all-things which are for-us for obedience are-brought but
si in bello mortem, quam voti erit, nobilis virgo strenue
if in war death which of-wish will-be a-noble maiden vigorously
oppetet, et functae divini honores adhibentur et adfinitati
meets also to-the-departed divine honors are-applied and to-the-kin
functarum largae pecuniae honoresque numerantur. Ceteroqui
of-the-departed generous moneys and-honors are-counted otherwise
nobis aurum non est neque argentum, nisi quod sit in
for-us gold not is nor silver except what be in
insignibus militaribus. Haec illa sunt, in quibus impenduntur
insignia military these those are on which are-spent
nostra discrimina, et in quae omnia periclitandum est,
our dangers and for which all-things to-be-risked it-is
quicumque Amazonas bello deposcent. Cuius eventum non
whoever the-Amazons in-war shall-demand of-which the-outcome not
satis arbitramur utrique de pari. Quippe ubi Amazonibus
enough we-think for-both from equal for when to-the-Amazons
suis auctor generis nostri Mars faverit, mares a feminis
his the-author of-race our Mars has-favored males by females
caesi victique maiore cum dedecore oppetent vel dilabentur.
slain and-conquered greater with disgrace will-die or will-scatter
Ubi vero cum maribus steterit belli fortuna, pudenda res
when but with males has-stood of-war the-fortune a-shameful thing
est, si quid hic sexus superatis feminis glorietur. Haec tibi
it-is if anything this sex with-overcome women boasts these to-you
igitur, rex, responsa de nobis sunt, quarum si fiduciam
then king answers about us are of-which if the-confidence
probas, obsequium etiam non aspernabere, siquidem te
you-approve the-obedience also not you-will-scorn since you

coronamus corona aurea annua, quae sit ponderis, quanto
we-crown with-a-crown golden yearly which be of-weight as-great-as
tu iusseris. Super his, quod mavelis, scribito; nos enim, si
you shall-order about these what you-prefer write we for if
secus sederit, praeter amnem in acie deprehendes.'
otherwise it-sits beside the-river in battle-line you-will-find-us
46 Hisce rex lectis delectatus admodum sic respondit: 'Qui
with-these the-king read delighted greatly thus answered those-who
terrae ambitum diligentius mensi sunt, huius mundi
of-the-earth the-circuit more-carefully measured have of-this world
magnitudinem universi trifariam divisere easque partes Asiam
the-size whole three-ways have-divided and-those parts Asia
vel Europam vel etiam Libyam nominavere. In hisce igitur
or Europe or also Libya have-named in these then
partibus universis trophaea quoque nostra consistunt, et
parts all trophies also our stand and
est pudendum, si in quibus nulla omnium obstiterit
it-is shameful if in which no of-all has-stood-in-the-way
difficultas, a cognitione vestri veluti sub metus infamia
difficulty from the-acquaintance of-you as-if under of-fear the-infamy
declinemus. Quare vestrae sit facultatis, si quid de bello
we-should-turn-aside wherefore of-your be power if anything about war
consultetis. Ceteroqui obsequium atque amicitiam diligentibus
you-decide otherwise obedience and friendship to-those-loving
vicissitudo nostri non displicebit. Neque vero resistentibus
the-return of-ours not will-displease nor indeed to-those-resisting
exitium gentis et patriae neque cedentibus amica
the-destruction of-nation and of-homeland nor to-those-yielding friendly
humanitas differetur. Progressae igitur, utra sub lege
humanity will-be-deferred having-advanced then whichever under law
vultis, praeter amnem ad nos venite omnemque multitudinem
you-wish beside the-river to us come and-all multitude

vestram illic in ordines ponite. Quod ubi fuerit ex
your there into ranks place which when it-has-been-done according-to
forma huiusce praecepti, ego vobis Ammona patrem meum
the-form of-this precept I to-you Ammon father my
atque Iunonem, Minervam etiam victricem iuro, nihil amplius
and Juno Minerva also victorious swear nothing more
a vobis exactu iri, quam si quid pro viribus
from you exacted to-be-going than if anything according-to strength
offeratis. Mittite sane ad commilitium mihi strenuas quasque
you-offer send indeed to fellowship-in-arms for-me vigorous all
equites, quantas vultis, quibus singulis remuneratio erit minae
horsewomen as-many-as you-wish to-whom each the-remuneration will-be minas
auri quinque praeter cetera, quae ad hanc magnificentiam
of-gold five besides the-other-things which to this magnificence
congruent. Enimvero istae, quas miseritis, ubi annuum nobis
agree but-indeed those whom you-will-have-sent when the-yearly to-us
obsequium emensae sint, in propria remittentur, uti pro
service completed they-have into their-own will-be-sent-back so-that for
hisce vicarias destinetis. Super his igitur, ut vobis commodum
these substitutes you-may-assign about these then as for-you convenient
est, consultate.' Igitur Amazones motae rescribunt: Et dare
it-is consult therefore the-Amazons moved write-back both to-give
se regi veniendi, quam cupiat, facultatem inspiciendique
themselves to-the-king of-coming as he-desires the-opportunity and-of-inspecting
terras suas, et coronare se eum annuis talentis sex;
lands their and to-crown themselves him with-yearly talents six
quingentas etiam equites destinasse armatas et strenuas, ut
five-hundred also horsewomen to-have-assigned armed and vigorous as
poposcerit, quae per annos scilicet permutentur. Quod
he-shall-have-demanded which through the-years namely are-to-be-exchanged but
si qua ex hisce ad sexum suum cesserit, eam se petere
if any of these to sex his-own yield her themselves to-ask

ibidem desidere inque eius locum supplementum de gente
there to-stay and-in her place a-supplement from the-nation
postulari. Quippe Amazonibus certum esse parere viro
to-be-demanded for for-the-Amazons settled to-be to-obey a-man
absenti, cui cessisse omnium hominum genera didicissent.
absent to-whom to-have-yielded of-all men the-kinds they-had-learned
47 His acceptis Alexander iter in Prasiacam inde
with-these received Alexander the-journey toward Prasiaca thence
pervertit, quae quidem eius militi peregrinatio laboris admodum
turns which indeed for-his soldiery a-wandering of-labor very
et plurimi periculi fuit. Nam aestatis ferme iam medio
and of-very-much danger was for of-summer almost already in-the-middle
repentini imbres fluxere adeo vehementes atque continui, uti non
sudden rains flowed so violent and continuous that not
solum vis animantium deperiret et, quaecumque usui sunt ad
only the-mass of-animals perished and whatever for-use is for
militiam, putrefierent, verum ipsis etiam per indigentiam
soldiering rotted but to-themselves also through the-lack
calciamentorum pedum plurima pernicies inferretur, quippe ubi
of-shoes of-the-feet very-much ruin was-brought for when
nudo vestigio per loca aspera humidaque perpeti labore
with-bare footstep through places rough and-wet with-continual labor
traherentur. Neque vero id sub isdem imbribus adeo molestum,
they-were-dragged nor indeed this under the-same rains so troublesome
quam redeuntibus in naturam temporis solibus fuit, quamvis
as with-returning to the-nature of-the-season suns was although
intemperie illa et tonitruum plurimum et iactus fulminum
in-intemperance that both of-thunders very-much and the-casts of-thunderbolts
crebros experti essent. Nam et voces incertas resonantes
frequent experienced they-had for also voices uncertain resounding
audierant et portentuosa plurima eiuscemodi experti erant.
they-had-heard and portentous very-many of-this-kind experienced they-had

Ubi vero iam ad Prasiacam adventabant Hypanimque
when but now to Prasiaca they-were-approaching and-the-Hypanis
flumen, quod dispescit huiusmodi conlimitia, transierant,
river which divides of-this-kind borders had-crossed
comperit ibidem super magnitudine eius gentis ac regis
he-learns there about the-greatness of-that nation and of-the-king
potentia, qui Prasiacae potiretur. Quippe ista Prasiaca propter
the-power who of-Prasiaca possessed for that Prasiaca near
oceanum sita, quo de reliqua hominum turba semotior,
the-ocean situated by-which from the-rest-of of-men the-crowd more-remote
hoc ad multitudinem quoque largius vivit. Addebat
by-this in multitude also more-abundantly lives added
tamen fama tot elephantorum etiam milia esse regi,
yet the-report so-many of-elephants also thousands to-be to-the-king
quot apud alios plerumque super hominibus mentiatur.
as-many-as among others mostly about men is-falsely-told
His igitur compertis Alexander limitem huiuscemodi loci
with-these then learned Alexander the-border of-this-kind place
sensim legens civitates eius invadere ac dicioni suae vendicare
gradually skirting the-cities its to-invade and to-sway his to-claim
non negligit et sacrificia diis immortalibus facit.
not neglects and sacrifices to-the-gods immortal makes

XVIII · LAST LETTERS, OMENS, AND DEATH

He writes to Olympias of Hercules' pillars, the Amazons, the Red Sea, the headless men, the Sun's island, and Xerxes' treasures. As he leaves Babylonia, a woman bears a monster, half man and half beasts, which foretells strife after his death. Antipater poisons him at a banquet; a serpent and an eagle cross the darkened sky, and he dies. The oracle sends his body to Egypt; it lies at Alexandria, and his will divides the empire.

48 Quae cum maxime persequeretur, ab Aristotele epistolam
which when most he-was-pursuing from Aristotle a-letter
sumit scriptam in hunc modum. ‘Per mihi difficile est eligere
he-takes written in this manner very for-me difficult it-is to-choose
vel laudare, Alexander mi, ex hisce omnibus aliquid, quae te
or to-praise Alexander my from these all anything which you
in ista militia gessisse cognovi, eamque mihi esse sententiam
in that campaign to-have-done I-learned and-that to-me to-be the-opinion
Iovem testem facio Neptunumque. Quare diis primum
Jupiter witness I-make and-Neptune wherefore to-the-gods first
immortalibus deabusque ago gratias competentes, quod
immortal and-goddesses I-give thanks fitting that
emenso tibi hasce periculi difficultates gratulationem potius
having-traversed to-you these of-danger difficulties congratulation rather
quam solatium scribo, quippe quem sciam non bellorum modo
than consolation I-write since whom I-know not of-wars only
discrimina evasisse, verum temporum quoque et caeli
the-perils to-have-escaped but of-seasons also and of-the-sky
difficultatibus non cessisse. Ex quibus colligere admodum
to-the-difficulties not to-have-yielded from which to-gather very
facile est, ambigendum, utrumne te prudentiae viribus an
easy it-is to-be-doubted whether you of-prudence for-the-strength or
tolerantiae fortitudinisque magis praedicem. Certe illud tibi
of-endurance and-of-fortitude more I-should-proclaim certainly that to-you
iam Homericum adest, quod illic sapientissimus gloriatur:
now Homeric is-present which there the-wisest boasts

Multigenasque urbes hominum moresque notavi.
and-of-many-kinds cities of-men and-manners I-noted

Quis enim praedicationis finis istud capit, triginta ferme
what for of-proclamation end that takes thirty almost
vix annos emensum te orientis omnis occidentisque
scarcely years having-traversed you of-the-east all and-of-the-west
dominari? Bactra te vidit, Aethiopia salutavit, Scythae
to-rule Bactra you saw Ethiopia greeted the-Scythians
tremuerunt, quodque uno ille versu percucurrit,
trembled and-what in-one he verse ran-through

quique novum cernunt Hyperiona, quique cadentem.
and-who the-new see Hyperion and-who the-setting

Neque enim quemquam non aut caesum audivimus aut
nor for anyone not either slain have-we-heard or
supplicantem.' Haec quidem Aristoteles.
supplicating these-things indeed Aristotle
At vero Alexander collecto exercitu iter ad Babyloniam 49
but indeed Alexander with-gathered army the-journey to Babylonia
convertit, in qua susceptus honoratissime et sacrificia
turned in which received most-honorably both sacrifices
diis immortalibus repraesentat et certamen gymnasticum
to-the-gods immortal he-presents and a-contest gymnastic
concelebrat. Atque inde iam pacificum iter coeptans hisce
celebrates and thence now a-peaceful journey beginning in-this
litteris ad Olympiadam matrem suam scribit. 'Super his
letter to Olympias mother his he-writes about these
quidem, quas in principiis egerimus ad Asiam usque
indeed which in the-beginnings we-did up-to Asia even
expeditiones, omnia tibi nota sunt, mater mi. Aequum tamen
the-campaigns all to-you known are mother my fair yet
fuit et de insequentibus te facere certiorem. Profectus ergo
it-was also about the-following you to-make more-certain having-set-out then

a Babylone una cum his, quos magis strenuos in exercitu
from Babylon together with those whom more vigorous in the-army
habebam, quae quidem collecta sunt centum milia, in
I-had which indeed gathered are a-hundred thousand toward
ulteriora regionum animum intendi pervenique usque ad
the-farther-parts of-the-regions my-mind I-directed and-I-came up to
Herculis stelas non minus itinere dierum ferme nonaginta
of-Hercules the-pillars not less with-a-journey of-days about ninety
quinque, fama de Hercule sic loquente, quod hasce metas
five with-rumor about Hercules thus speaking that these boundaries
peregrinationis suae fixerit deus ille, qui et duas stelas, id
of-wandering his fixed the-god that who also two pillars that
est titulos sui quosdam ibidem dereliquit, quorum unus ex
is titles of-himself certain there left of-which one of
auro, alter vero argenteus habebatur. Sed enim altitudo eorum
gold the-other but silver was-held but indeed the-height of-them
est titulorum cubitis ferme quindecim, crassitudo vero in
is of-the-titles in-cubits about fifteen the-thickness but in
cubitis duobus. Hanc molem metalli quoniam non facile erat
cubits two this mass of-metal since not easy it-was
credere solido auro esse, periculum eius rei facere non omisi.
to-believe of-solid gold to-be a-trial of-that thing to-make not I-omitted
Quare moratus ibidem diebus aliquantis reficiendo scilicet
wherefore having-stayed there days some for-refreshing namely
militi sacrificatusque deo Herculi titulum illum aureum,
the-soldiery and-having-sacrificed to-the-god Hercules title that golden
qua potui, rimatus sum foramine per omnem crassitudinem
as-far-as I-could probed I-have with-a-hole through all the-thickness
elaborato, neque claudicare fidem crassitudinis eius inveni.
worked nor to-limp the-credit of-thickness its I-found

Sed cum cavernam illam replere religiosum mihi videretur,
but when the-cavity that to-refill religious to-me seemed
ad supplementum eius quingentis auri talentis opus fuit.
for the-filling its of-five-hundred of-gold talents need there-was
Hinc ergo per deserta redeuntes multa praerupta eiusmodi
hence then through deserts returning many precipitous of-this-kind
incidimus loca, quae obsessa crassioribus nubibus nebulosisve
we-fell-upon places which besieged by-thicker clouds or-foggy
omnem omnino adspectum homini sustulerant ac diei. Septem
all at-all sight from-man had-taken and of-day seven
denique dierum itinere per has tenebras exanclato
finally of-days with-a-journey through these darknesses toiled-through
tandem Thermodonti supervenimus flumini haud cuiquam
at-last upon-the-Thermodon we-came a-river not to-any
secundo ex magnitudine, sed enim per plana et opipara loca
second in size but indeed through plain and lavish places
magno agmine pervaganti. Propter hunc Thermodonta genus
with-great stream wandering near this Thermodon the-race
Amazonum colit, mulieres magnitudine corporis pariter ac
of-Amazons dwells women in-size of-body equally and
pulchritudine cetera hominum genera supervectae, amictae vero,
in-beauty the-other of-men races surpassing clothed but
ut in picturis est visere unimammas, et omnis hisce ferme
as in paintings it-is to-see one-breasted and all for-these almost
amictus est arma vel ferrum. Igitur cum haud procul his
clothing is arms or iron therefore when not far from-them
ageremus, ipsarum quidem potiri haud facile erat, utrumque
we-lived of-them indeed to-get-hold-of not easy it-was each
nostrum a congressu magnitudine fluminis dispescente. Sed
of-us from meeting by-the-size of-the-river dividing but
praeter illius agmen bestiae quoque nonnullae asperitatesque
beyond that stream beasts also some and-roughnesses

impedimento erant. At enim comperto illae, quod ceterae
for-hindrance were but indeed learned they that the-other
quoque Amazones de nostra amicitia coeptassent, ipsae
also Amazons about our friendship had-begun they-themselves
etiam periculi causam donis a nobis et obsequiis redemerunt.
also of-danger the-cause with-gifts from us and services redeemed
51 Itemque indidem ad Rubrum mare venimus, quorum locorum
and-likewise thence to the-Red sea we-came of-which places
dextra quidem perasperis inviisque montibus recta est, laeva
the-right indeed with-very-rough and-pathless mountains straight is the-left
vero mari Rubro latius fusa. Illic tamen factis
but by-the-sea Red more-widely spread there yet with-performed
Neptuno sacris immolatisque equis ritu praesenti die
to-Neptune rites and-with-sacrificed horses in-the-rite present on-the-day
secuta alio, quam veneramus, itinere repedamus; fuitque
following by-another than we-had-come route we-go-back and-it-was
operae pretium illas quoque nosse regiones. Multa enim
of-the-work worth those also to-know regions many for
hominum genera et invisitata sunt nobis cognita, quorum
of-men kinds and unseen were to-us made-known of-which
vel maxime nobis admirationi fuit videntibus homines absque
even most to-us for-wonder was seeing men without
capitibus corporatos. Namque his hominibus oculi pectoribus
heads embodied for for-these men eyes in-the-breasts
inhaerentes, atque os omne ceteraque oris in
clinging and the-mouth all and-the-other-parts of-the-face in
illa parte corporis situm plurimum mirabamur. Illic et
that part of-the-body placed very-much we-wondered there also
Troglodytas offendimus, qui subter terram domiciliis scalptis
the-Troglodytes we-came-upon who under the-earth with-dwellings carved
ac fossis ad serpentium instar secessus sibi et habitacula
and dug in serpents' manner retreats for-themselves and dwellings

laboravere. Quod ergo exim eminus visere esset tellurem
wrought since then thence from-afar to-see it-was a-land
quandam sitam velut in medio mari, aestimato longius
certain situated as-if in the-middle sea judged farther
quam unius diei navigatione separatam, eo navigatione
than of-one day's sailing separated thither by-sailing
contendimus. Repperimus in illa insula civitatem, quae Solis
we-hastened we-found in that island a-city which of-the-Sun
esse diceretur, ambitus spatio non minus sexaginta stadiis
to-be was-said of-circuit in-space not less than-sixty stadia
circumscriptam. Sed enim e medio civitatis constructo
circumscribed but indeed from the-middle of-the-city built
quodam et congesto in loco currus aureus visebatur una
certain and heaped-up in place a-chariot golden was-seen together
scilicet equis atque insessore aureo laboratus. Is omnis
namely with-horses and with-rider golden wrought this all
labor de auri materia et smaragdi fuit. Mira tamen
work of gold's material and emerald was wonderful yet
opificinae maiestas nec ulli in orbe terrarum operi facile
of-the-workshop the-majesty nor to-any in the-world of-lands work easily
contendenda. Enimvero isti regioni cum adesset sacerdos
to-be-compared but-indeed to-that region when was-present a-priest
Aethiops, eo praeeunte Soli religiosius operatus sum.
Ethiopian with-him leading-the-way to-the-Sun more-devoutly sacrificed I-have
Ac sic revertentes locorumne an temporis tenebras profundas 52
and thus returning of-places or of-time darknesses deep
offendimus. Unde cum ratio ipsa suasisset ibidem mansitare
we-came-upon whence when reason itself had-persuaded there to-stay
et reficiendis nostris et rursus sacrificiis persolvendis deo
both for-refreshing our-men and again for-sacrifices to-be-paid to-the-god
Soli, quod nullum omnino ignem, ex quo luminis foret
Sun because no at-all fire from which of-light there-might-be

copia, inveniremus, abscedere indidem confirmavimus. Tum
supply we-found to-depart thence we-resolved then
vero divinum quoddam auxilium demorantibus praevenientes
indeed divine a-certain help to-the-lingering going-ahead
nobis quasdam effigies numinum cernere fuit cum
of-us certain images of-deities to-see it-was with
luminibus lampadarum, quas a materia argenti eminus
the-lights of-lamps which from material of-silver from-afar
aestimabamus, atque ita victi ductique Tanaim usque
we-judged and so conquered and-led to-the-Tanais even
fluvium supervenimus. Is Tanais e septemtrionis partibus
river we-came this Tanais from the-north parts
in Caspium mare profluens Asiam fertur Europamque
into the-Caspian sea flowing Asia is-said and-Europe
discernere. Laeva igitur eius itinere permenso ad
to-divide on-the-left then of-it with-the-journey traversed to
Xerxis regna pervenimus, quae post habita Cyri sunt
of-Xerxes the-realms we-came which afterward held of-Cyrus were
ac nominata, ibique multa opum regiarum ac divitias
and named and-there much of-riches royal and wealth
offendimus. Nam et aedem quandam ad speciem Graeci
we-came-upon for both a-house certain to the-appearance of-Greek
operis illic magnificentissimam viseres inque ea aede etiam
work there most-magnificent you-would-see and-in that house also
responsa dare memoratum regem sciscitantibus celebrant. Et
answers to-give the-mentioned king to-those-inquiring they-celebrate and
situm ibidem in templo viseres varium opus, tropheum
placed there in the-temple you-would-see a-varied work a-trophy
aureum dependens aedificii de culmine, adhaerebatque illi
golden hanging of-the-building from the-top and-clung to-that
tropheo orbis quidam ad modum vertiginis caelitis, superque
trophy a-globe certain in the-manner of-the-turning heavenly and-above

orbem simulacrum columbae sessitabat, quod ubi responsa
the-globe an-image of-a-dove sat which when answers
rex diceret, humanis vocibus sciscitanti loqui ferretur.
the-king spoke with-human voices to-the-inquirer to-speak was-said
Id tropheum cum auferre indidem mihi cupiditas foret,
this trophy when to-carry-off thence to-me desire was
uti ad vos et ad nostram Graeciam mitteretur, idem qui
that to you and to our Greece it-might-be-sent the-same who
aderant, contenderunt rem sacram esse neque contemnendo
were-present contended the-thing sacred to-be nor with-contemptible
periculo invadari a quopiam posse. Multa igitur alia
danger to-be-invaded by anyone to-be-able many then other
quoque, quae miraremur, offendimus, inter quae cratera
also which we-might-wonder-at we-came-upon among which a-mixing-bowl
etiam argenteum capacitatis ad amphoras usque trecentas et
also silver of-capacity to amphoras even three-hundred and
sexaginta. Eius capacitatis est mensuratio comperta nobis hoc
sixty of-its capacity is the-measurement found by-us in-this
modo: dies sacer cum ∗∗∗ convivium etiam celebre exhibebat,
manner a-day sacred when (lacuna) a-banquet also crowded displayed
ad quod convivium tot amphoris repletum esse vas
at which banquet with-so-many amphoras filled to-be the-vessel
constat. Enimvero vas istud inscalptum erat atque caelatum
it-is-agreed but-indeed vessel that carved was and engraved
navalibus proeliis, quae Xerxes apud Peloponnesum militaverat.
with-naval battles which Xerxes at the-Peloponnese had-fought
Erat inter illa caelamina et sella regalis scalpta insertaque 53
there-was among those carvings also a-seat royal carved and-inserted
operi ex auro, stellata lapidibus et ex pretio insignis.
in-the-work of gold starred with-stones and from value outstanding
Impendebat autem etiam sellam istam vertigo quaedam ad
hung-over but also the-seat that a-sphere certain to

modum mundi figurata, quam ipsam quoque responsa sub
the-manner of-the-world figured which itself also answers under
praesentiam regii spiritus dare omnes pariter adserebant.
the-presence of-the-royal spirit to-give all equally asserted
Propter vero eam est sita lyrae facies ex arte eiusmodi,
beside but it is placed of-a-lyre the-likeness from art of-this-kind
ut nihil demutet ab ea lyra, quae sit canora; sic ista etiam
that nothing it-differs from that lyre which is tuneful thus that also
ad canendum uti solent; nam et sponte plerumque
for singing to-use they-are-wont for also of-its-own-accord mostly
spiritu tactam canere hanc lyram noverant. Et iuxtim
by-a-breath touched to-sing this lyre they-knew and close-by
viseres veluti thecam poculorum sedecim cubitis erectam,
you-would-see as-if a-case of-cups with-sixteen cubits raised
supraque eam thecam congestam effigiem altitudinis per
and-above that case heaped an-image of-height through
cubita octoginta una cum gradibus octoginta. Ibi demum et
cubits eighty together with steps eighty there at-last also
fons fictus est, et aquila aurea supersistebat adeo effigiata
a-fountain fashioned is and an-eagle golden stood-above so imaged
daedale, ut pansis alis omnem illius operis ambitum tegeret.
skillfully that with-spread wings all of-that work the-circuit it-covered
Namque et arbores scalptae et myrti quaedam ramosae ibidem
for both trees carved and myrtles certain branching there
notabantur, omnes istae de auro. Multa praeterea illic fuere, quae
were-noted all those of gold many besides there were which
quoniam neque abundantiae suae neque magnitudinis pretiive
since neither of-abundance its nor of-size or-value
facile offenderint fidem, censeo praetermittenda. Nunc vale.'
easily would-strike credit I-judge to-be-passed-over now farewell

His scriptis cum a Babylonia iret Alexander, mirum 54
with-these written when from Babylonia went Alexander a-wondrous
portentum atque evidens ad exitum fuit. Nuntiata quippe
portent and clear toward his-end was announced for
est mulier foetum eiusmodi peperisse, cuius prioris
it-was a-woman an-offspring of-this-kind to-have-borne whose of-the-front
corporis pars pube tenus ad hominem congruebat,
body the-part to-the-groin even to a-man agreed
enimvero quae insecuta corporis, erant omnia beluina,
but-indeed which followed of-the-body were all-things beastly
prorsusque qualem Scyllam homines fabulantur, nisi hoc uno
and-utterly such-as Scylla men tell-of except in-this one
deverterat: non enim caninis capitibus lupinisve, enim leoninis
it-had-differed not for with-dogs' heads or-wolves' indeed of-lions
atque pardorum, suum etiam vel ursorum omnem inguinis
and of-leopards of-swine also or of-bears all of-the-groin
ambitum texerat, spirantibus etiam bestiis, sed pars
the-circuit it-had-covered with-breathing also beasts but the-part
superna humanaque emortua iam et colore atro cum desitu
upper and-human dead already and in-color black with the-ceasing
spiritus visebatur. Id monstri ubi mulier, quae foeta
of-breath was-seen this of-the-monster when the-woman who pregnant
fuerat, enixa est, statim ipsa invectum ad regem detulit
had-been delivered was at-once she-herself carried to the-king brought
Alexandroque habere mirum, quod ostenderet, praeiudicavit.
and-to-Alexander to-have a-wonder which she-might-show she-anticipated
Igitur ingressus, qui regi miraculum nuntiaret, offendit
therefore having-entered one-who to-the-king the-marvel might-announce finds
eum in cubiculo meridiano somno tunc deditum. Sed ad
him in the-bedroom in-midday sleep then given but at
strepitum inrumpentis cum expergitus foret audissetque
the-din of-one-bursting-in when awakened he-was and-had-heard

causam, mulierem induci iubet. Ingressa igitur statim
the-cause the-woman to-be-brought-in he-orders having-entered then at-once
facessere universos e praesenti mulier edicit, ipsa vero
to-withdraw all from the-presence the-woman proclaims she-herself but
revelat nudatque, quod vexerat, profiteturque se peperisse.
uncovers and-bares what she-had-carried and-professes herself to-have-borne-it
55 Ergo ad miraculum visionis eiusmodi iubet statim Alexander
therefore at the-wonder of-sight of-this-kind orders at-once Alexander
prodigiorum interpretes convenire ac profiteri, ecquid eiusmodi
of-prodigies the-interpreters to-assemble and to-declare what of-this-kind
novitas minaretur, interminaturque quam sancte, nisi ex fide
novelty threatened and-he-threatens as solemnly unless in good-faith
dixerint. Unus igitur e praesentibus magno cum gemitu
they-speak one then of those-present great with groaning
regi separato, 'Eheu,' inquit, 'malorum omnium, eheu, mi
to-the-king drawn-aside alas he-says of-evils all alas my
rex! non enim iam bonis neque inter vivos homines
king not for now among-the-good nor among living men
ultra nominabere.' Sed cur ista sentiret interpres, cum
further will-you-be-named but why these-things he-felt the-interpreter when
rex diligentius quaereret, haec addit: 'O quid enim,' inquit,
the-king more-carefully asked this he-adds o what for he-says
'o vir summe, quidquid ex homine foetus hic habet, ad te
o man highest whatever of man the-offspring this has to you
pertinet, quod vero est subter atque beluile, quicumque tibi
pertains what but is below and beastly whoever to-you
subditi sunt et subiecti. Si igitur ea pars, quae superna est,
subject are and subjected if then that part which upper is
viveret et motaretur, sicuti haec, quae infra sunt, faciunt, tu
lived and moved as these which below are do you
sane obtineres ac dominarere cunctorum. Sed quoniam secus
indeed would-hold and would-lord-over all but since otherwise

est, in contrarium intelligendum, nisi quod hi quoque ipsi
it-is to the-contrary it-is-to-be-understood except that these also themselves
dissidebunt neque congruent; vides enim dispares formas
will-disagree nor will-agree you-see for unequal forms
neque inter se amicas ac prorsus beluile saevientes. Atque
nor among themselves friendly and utterly beastly raging and
hi quidem inter se omnes te oppetente dissentient
these indeed among themselves all with-you dying will-disagree
dimicabuntque.' His dictis interpres exierat aversurus
and-will-fight with-these said the-interpreter had-gone-out going-to-avert
scilicet, si qua posset, et exusturus religiosius portenti illius
namely if in-any-way he-could and going-to-burn more-devoutly of-portent that
minas. Alexander vero animo consternatus cum gemitu sic ait:
the-threats Alexander but in-mind dismayed with groaning thus says
'Pro bone Iupiter, quam bona res est ignoratio metuendorum!'
o good Jupiter how good a-thing is ignorance of-things-to-be-feared
Sed hactenus illa animi commotio fuit. Ceteroqui viriliter
but so-far that of-mind agitation was otherwise manfully
et decore omnem exspectatae mortis impetum opperiebatur,
and becomingly all of-expected death the-onset he-awaited
quippe qui praeter cetera eo quoque se solaretur,
since who besides the-other-things by-this also himself he-consoled
quod divinis honoribus haud procul foret.
that from-divine honors not far he-was
Ergo occasio illi moriendi talis fuit. Mater eius ad 56
therefore the-occasion for-him of-dying such was mother his to
eum scripserat super Antipatri et Divinopatris simultatibus
him had-written about of-Antipater and of-Divinopater the-quarrels
petebatque, ut ob id ipsum ad Epirum ire contenderet.
and-asked that for that very-thing to Epirus to-go he-should-hasten
Sed enim Alexander cum id virorum iurgium in suum
but indeed Alexander when that of-the-men quarrel into his

iudicium deduci vellet, statuit Antipatrum ad sese venire
judgment to-be-brought he-wished decided Antipater to him to-come
ex Macedonia alio in locum eius substituto. Quod ubi
from Macedonia with-another in place his substituted which when
factum est, venenum Antipater elaborat curiosum admodum
done was a-poison Antipater works-up elaborate very
efficaxque idque per ministrum regi dari in convivio
and-effective and-it through an-attendant to-the-king to-be-given at a-banquet
exegit poto. Igitur rex mox lectulo datur ac diebus
he-exacted in-a-drink then the-king soon to-the-bed is-given and for-days
complusculis cum illa pernicie conluctatus tandem causam
a-good-many with that ruin having-wrestled at-last the-cause
eiusdem periculi esse ab Antipatro cognovit. Id insecuta est
of-the-same danger to-be from Antipater he-learned this followed has
quaedam veluti indignationis caelitis ostentatio. Nebula quippe
a-certain as-if of-indignation heavenly a-display a-cloud for
admodum crassa foedaque interfusa omni aëri sudo die
very thick and-foul poured-through all the-air on-a-clear day
cuncta in tenebras verterat. Tum repente e nubibus draconis
all-things into darkness had-turned then suddenly from the-clouds of-a-serpent
effigies ignitissima caelitus labitur mare usque unaque cum
an-image most-fiery from-heaven glides to-the-sea even and-together with
illo praestantis aquilae species volabat. Quod ubi factum
it of-an-outstanding eagle the-likeness flew which when done
est, Iovis quoque Babylonii simulacrum motari coepit. Et
was of-Jupiter also of-Babylon the-image to-be-moved began and
hisce factis rursus draco una cum aquila sua ad caeli
with-these done again the-serpent together with the-eagle its to of-the-sky
convexa remeavit, aquila sane vehens stellae cuiusdam fulgidum
the-vaults returned the-eagle indeed carrying of-a-star certain a-gleaming
globum. Quod ubi homines visitavere, veluti praenuntiante
globe which when men saw as-if with-foretelling

divinitate, quod gerebatur, Alexander quoque spiritu protinus
divinity what was-being-done Alexander also of-breath at-once
vacuatur ac moritur. Persis tamen multa contentio
is-emptied and dies for-the-Persians yet much contention
erat cupientibus regem in regno Persico sepelire proque
there-was desiring the-king in kingdom Persian to-bury and-as
deo Mithra religionibus consecrare. Enimvero Macedones ad
god Mithras with-rites to-consecrate but-indeed the-Macedonians to
Macedoniam corpus indidem ferri et solo patrio
Macedonia the-body thence to-be-carried and in-the-soil of-his-fathers
sepulchrisque maiorum inferendum putant. Tum Ptolomaeus,
and-the-tombs of-the-ancestors to-be-brought think then Ptolemy
quod enim sciret apud Babylona Iovis oraculum esse
because for he-knew at Babylon of-Jupiter an-oracle to-be
veridicum, in eius dei sententiam differt, perinde uti
truthful into of-that god the-opinion defers-it just as
iusserit, consulturus. Deusque interrogatus sic ait:
he-should-order going-to-consult and-the-god asked thus says

Accipe, quae regis sedes cultusque dicetur.
receive what of-the-king the-seat and-worship will-be-called
Urbs colitur Nili propter umbrosa fluenta,
a-city is-dwelt-in of-the-Nile beside the-shady streams
aequoris in gremio, cereali dives anona,
of-the-plain in the-bosom with-grain rich in-provision
nomine Amazonidos quae dicitur inclyta Memphis.
by-name of-the-Amazon which is-called famous Memphis
Hic sibi templa dari sacrata sede recepto
here for-himself temples to-be-given with-sacred seat received
iussit cornigero genitus sub honore Lyaei.
has-ordered from-the-horned born under the-honor of-Lyaeus

57 Dato igitur hoc responso nullus omnium refragatus est,
with-given then this answer none of-all objected has
quin ita fieret, ut deus iusserat. Igitur in Aegyptum
that so it-should-be-done as the-god had-ordered therefore into Egypt
corpus Alexandri ferebatur feretro quidem regaliter exornato,
the-body of-Alexander was-carried on-a-bier indeed royally adorned
tumultuario vero conditorio e plumbi materia, quoque
improvised but with-a-coffin from of-lead material so-that
esset unguinibus atque pigmentis, quae servandis corporibus
it-might-be with-ointments and pigments which for-preserving bodies
sunt, tutius permanere. Vectus igitur pompa vehiculoque
are more-safely to-last carried then with-pomp and-vehicle
regali ubi ad Pelusium advehi nuntiatus est, omnes eiusce
royal when to Pelusium to-be-brought announced was all of-that
regionis proceres ac sacerdotes una cum diis ac religionibus
region the-leaders and priests together with gods and religious-rites
suis obviam processere, iuniorem Sesonchosim venerati. Vulcani
their to-meet came-forth a-younger Sesonchosis venerating of-Vulcan
quoque eum appellatione salutabant, quod hunc prae ceteros
also him with-the-name they-greeted because this-one above the-others
deum illa pars arbitraretur orientis. Enimvero exim ex
god that part thought of-the-east but-indeed thence according-to
sententia numinum prophetes docet non apud Memphim sacrum
the-opinion of-the-deities a-prophet teaches not at Memphis the-sacred
corpus, verum Alexandriam pervehi oportere, quod illi loco
body but to-Alexandria to-be-carried it-behooves because to-that place
et auctor conditus fuerit et tutela vel maxima perpetuo
both founder founded was and guardianship even greatest perpetually
futura nosceretur. Perinde enim inexpugnabilem locum illum
going-to-be was-known equally for unconquerable place that
praesagiis nosci, ut ipse quoque indefessae virtutis est
by-presages to-be-known as he-himself also of-tireless valor was

habitus. Erigitur ergo aedes quam maximo opere ad instar
held is-erected therefore a-house as with-greatest work to the-likeness
templi, quod etiam nunc Alexandri nominatur. Quo ubi
of-a-temple which also now of-Alexander is-named to-which when
primum consecratas reliquias intulere, visum Ptolomaeo
first the-consecrated remains they-brought it-seemed-good to-Ptolemy
est testamentum quoque, quod scripserat moriens, publice
is the-will also which he-had-written dying publicly
recitari, idque lectum est ferme ad hanc sententiam scriptum:
to-be-read-out and-this read was almost in this sense written
'Alexander, rex Macedonum, dicit. Primum mando iubeoque 58
Alexander king of-the-Macedonians says first I-command and-order
Arrhidaeum, Philippi filium, interim regni mei fieri
Arrhidaeus of-Philip the-son meanwhile of-kingdom my to-become
successorem. Sed enim si fuerit mihi filius e Roxane,
successor but indeed if there-be to-me a-son from Roxane
huic nomen et regnum nostrum pariter concedendum.
to-this-one the-name and kingdom our equally to-be-granted
Quod si e Roxane puella edetur, sit Macedonum optio,
but if from Roxane a-girl is-born let-be of-the-Macedonians the-choice
quemnam sibi regem ipsi substituant. Optatus porro
whom to-themselves as-king they-themselves substitute chosen further
constitutusque rex Argiadum regiam veteremque principatum
and-appointed the-king of-the-Argeads the-palace and-the-old principate
servare debebit. Hisce Macedones consueta dependent.
to-preserve will-be-bound to-these the-Macedonians the-customary-things shall-pay
Olympiadi autem, matri meae, si ita volet, licebit
to-Olympias but mother my if so she-wishes it-will-be-allowed
Rhodi degere vel in eo, quem malebit loco, accipienti cuncta
at-Rhodes to-live or in that which she-prefers place receiving all
haec, quae me superstite consequebatur. Praefectum
these-things which with-me surviving she-obtained the-prefect

autem Macedoniae Craterum fieri mando eique Philippi
but of-Macedonia Craterus to-be-made I-order and-to-him of-Philip
filiam coniugari. Philonam etiam iubeo satrapiae praeesse
the-daughter to-be-married Philo also I-order over-the-satrapy to-preside
Hellesponticae universae uxoremque ei fieri Olciae
of-the-Hellespont whole and-the-wife for-him to-be-made of-Olcias
sororem. Cappadociam quoque vel Paphlagoniam Eumeni
the-sister Cappadocia also or Paphlagonia to-Eumenes
regendam permitti placet. Eos vero, qui in insulis sunt,
to-be-ruled to-be-allowed it-pleases those but who on the-islands are
liberos suique iuris esse praecipio. Antigonus Cariae
free and-of-their-own right to-be I-order Antigonus over-Caria
praesit, Casanderque Boeotiae, eisque omnibus praeesse
let-preside and-Cassander over-Boeotia and-over-them all to-preside
Antipatrum oportebit. Uton Syriae rector esto. Babyloniae
Antipater it-will-behoove Uton of-Syria ruler let-be of-Babylonia
vero et adiacentium regionum praeficio Seleucum. Phoenicen
but and of-the-adjacent regions I-set-over Seleucus Phoenicia
ac Syriam Coelen Meleagro regendam permitti decrevi,
and Syria Coele to-Meleager to-be-ruled to-be-allowed I-have-decreed
Aegyptum Perdiccae, Libyam Ptolomaeo, cui etiam
Egypt to-Perdiccas Libya to-Ptolemy to-whom also
Cleopatram coniugari oportebit, sororem meam. Regionum
Cleopatra to-be-married it-will-behoove sister my of-the-regions
porro, quae supra Babyloniam sunt, curam Phanocrati permitti
further which above Babylonia are the-care to-Phanocrates to-be-allowed
praecepi eique uxorem Roxanen Bactrianam dari.
I-have-ordered and-to-him as-wife Roxane the-Bactrian to-be-given
59 His igitur omnibus mando repositorium corpori meo fieri
to-these then all I-order a-repository for-body my to-be-made
auri magnorum talentorum sex. Quisque autem Macedonum
of-gold of-great talents six whoever but of-the-Macedonians

Thessalorumve provectior sit aetate atque ad solum genitale
or-Thessalians more-advanced be in-age and to his-soil native
voluerit ire, his fieri facultatem, quibus singulis tria
shall-wish to-go for-these to-be-made the-means to-whom to-each three
milia drachmarum adnumerari conveniet. Argos autem
thousand drachmas to-be-counted-out it-will-be-fitting to-Argos but
mitti arma, quibus ipse usus sum, et auri signati
to-be-sent the-arms which I-myself used have and of-gold coined
drachmas quinquaginta eaque Herculi consecrari volo.
drachmas fifty and-those to-Hercules to-be-consecrated I-wish
Delphos quoque mitti praecepi, eboris quod in aula mea
to-Delphi also to-be-sent I-have-ordered of-ivory which in hall my
fuit, draconumque terga et pateras aureas tredecim, primitias
was and-of-serpents the-backs and saucers golden thirteen the-first-fruits
scilicet operum nostrorum. Milesiis etiam ad reformationem
namely of-works our to-the-Milesians also for the-restoration
oppidi sui dari praecipio auri signati drachmas centum
of-town their to-be-given I-order of-gold coined drachmas a-hundred
et quinquaginta tantumdemque auri materiae. Volo autem
and fifty and-as-much of-gold material I-wish moreover
Perdiccam, quem Aegypto imperatorem atque Alexandriae esse
Perdiccas whom over-Egypt commander and at-Alexandria to-be
iussi, sic uti imperio mandato, ne nomen meum ex oppido
I-ordered thus to-use the-command entrusted lest name my from the-town
transferatur, quae quidem etiam maximi deorum Sarapis
be-transferred which indeed also of-the-greatest of-the-gods Sarapis
est sententia. Fieri porro annuum oppidi sacerdotem, qui
is the-opinion to-be-made further a-yearly of-the-town priest who
sacerdos Alexandri nominetur, eique insignia dari placet
the-priest of-Alexander be-named and-to-him the-insignia to-be-given it-pleases
coronam auream et purpureum amictum. Is ubi functus
a-crown golden and a-purple cloak he when completed

fuerit sacerdotio, omni reliquo munere vel inquietudine sit
he-has the-priesthood from-all remaining duty or disturbance let-him-be
solutus. Sed quisque id sacerdotium nanciscitur, sit et
freed but whoever that priesthood obtains let-him-be both
genere nobilis et existimatione, uti sibi dignitas una cum
in-birth noble and in-reputation that for-himself the-dignity together with
posteris et ista proficiat. Indicae regionis eiusque tractus,
his-descendants also that may-profit of-the-Indian region and-its tract
qui ad Hydaspim fluvium pergit, Taxiaden mando esse
which to the-Hydaspes river goes Taxiades I-order to-be
praefectum. Adiacentium vero regionum Apoctronum, Roxanes
prefect of-the-adjacent but regions Apoctronus of-Roxane
patruum, uxoris meae, rectorem constitui placet. Racusiam
the-uncle of-wife my ruler to-be-appointed it-pleases Racusia
vero regionem et Bactrianam et Susianam Philippo remitto,
but the-region and Bactria and Susiana to-Philip I-grant
Hyrcaniam Artaphernae, Persida Peucestae. Illyriae vero
Hyrcania to-Artaphernes Persia to-Peucestas over-Illyria but
praeficio Olciam, cui quidem ex Asia dari oportebit
I-set Olcias to-whom indeed from Asia to-be-given it-will-behoove
quingentos equos et auri drachmarum tria milia, e quibus
five-hundred horses and of-gold drachmas three thousand from which
templum constituat, eique templo simulacrum Herculis
a-temple he-may-establish and-in-that temple an-image of-Hercules
et Ammonis consecretur, Minervae etiam et Olympiadis,
and of-Ammon be-consecrated of-Minerva also and of-Olympias
matris meae, nec non etiam Philippi. Omnes etiam curatores
mother my and also also of-Philip all also the-curators
imperii imagines consecrent et signa constituant, aurea
of-the-empire images should-consecrate and statues should-set-up golden
quidem apud Delphos, ceteris vero in locis materiae diversae.
indeed at Delphi in-the-other but in places of-material different

Constitui autem effigies oportebit Perdiccae, Alexandri,
to-be-set-up moreover the-images it-will-behoove of-Perdiccas of-Alexander
Ammonis, Minervae, Olympiadis, Herculis, Philippi, quae
of-Ammon of-Minerva of-Olympias of-Hercules of-Philip which
omnes divinis honoribus consecrabuntur.' Et haec quidem
all with-divine honors will-be-consecrated and this indeed
summa voluntatis Alexandri est accepta.
the-sum of-the-will of-Alexander is received
Vixit autem annos triginta et tres. Sed imperium iniit 60
he-lived moreover years thirty and three but the-rule he-entered
annum agens octavum decimum. Omnes autem difficultates
year passing eighth tenth all but difficulties
eius usque ad annos viginti et quinque fuere; reliqua in
his up to years twenty and five were the-rest in
pace transegit. Gentes barbaras dicioni suae subiecit numero
peace he-spent nations barbarian to-sway his he-subjected in-number
viginti et duas, Graecas vero sedecim. Victor totiens, quotiens
twenty and two Greek but sixteen victor so-often as-often
bellator, nullo proelio invulneratus. Sed civitates condidit
a-warrior in-no battle unwounded but cities he-founded
duodecim, omnes nomine suo scilicet nuncupatas, quae sunt
twelve all by-name his namely called which are
hae: Alexandria, quae condita est nomine Bucephalae equi,
these Alexandria which founded was in-the-name of-Bucephalas the-horse
Alexandria montuosa, Alexandria apud Porum, Alexandria in
Alexandria the-mountainous Alexandria by Porus Alexandria in
Scythia, Alexandria Babylonis, Alexandria apud Massagetas,
Scythia Alexandria of-Babylon Alexandria among the-Massagetae
Alexandria apud Aegyptum, Alexandria apud Origala, Alexandria
Alexandria at Egypt Alexandria at Origala Alexandria
apud Granicum, Alexandria apud Tigridem fluvium, Alexandria
at the-Granicus Alexandria at the-Tigris river Alexandria

apud Troadam, Alexandria apud Sanctum, cui quinque
at the-Troad Alexandria at Sanctus to-which of-the-five
primorum, ut dictum est, elementorum idcirco sunt data
first as said it-is letters for-this-reason are given
nomina, ut in hisce elementorum nominibus legeretur:
names that in these of-the-letters names might-be-read
Alexander Imperator Genus Iovis Condidit. Obitus tamen
Alexander Emperor Race of-Jupiter Founded-it of-the-death yet
eius diem etiam nunc Alexandriae sacratissimum habent.
his the-day also now at-Alexandria most-sacred they-hold

Historia Apollonii Regis Tyri

Apollonius of Tyre

King Antiochus takes his own daughter and keeps suitors away with a riddle, beheading those who fail. Apollonius, prince of Tyre, solves it; Antiochus gives him thirty days and sends Thaliarchus to kill him. Apollonius flees by sea with grain and gold. At Tarsus, old Hellenicus warns him that he is proscribed; Apollonius ends the city's famine, sells the grain at cost, and Tarsus raises his statue. Sailing on, he is wrecked in a storm.

In ciuitate Antiochia rex fuit quidam nomine Antiochus, 1
in the-city Antioch a-king there-was certain by-name Antiochus
a quo ipsa ciuitas nomen accepit Antiochia. Hic habuit
from whom itself the-city its-name received Antioch he had
ex amissa coniuge unam filiam, uirginem speciosissimam,
from a-lost wife one daughter a-maiden most-beautiful
in qua nihil rerum natura exerrauerat, nisi quod mortalem
in whom nothing of-things nature had-erred except that mortal
statuerat. Quae dum ad nubilem peruenisset aetatem et
it-had-made she when to marriageable had-come age and
species et formonsitas cresceret, multi eam in matrimonium
her-looks and beauty grew many her in marriage
petebant et cum magna dotis pollicitatione currebant. Et
were-seeking and with great of-dowry promise were-running and
cum pater deliberaret, cui potentissimo filiam suam in
when the-father was-deliberating to-which most-powerful-man daughter his in
matrimonium daret, cogente iniqua cupiditate flamma
marriage he-should-give with-compelling wicked desire by-the-flame
concupiscentiae incidit in amorem filiae suae et coepit
of-lust he-fell into love of-daughter his and began
eam aliter diligere quam patrem oportebat. Qui cum luctatur
her otherwise to-love than a-father it-befitted who when he-struggles
cum furore, pugnat cum pudore, uincitur amore: excidit
with madness he-fights with shame he-is-conquered by-love fell-away

illi pietas, oblitus est se esse patrem et induit
from-him piety forgotten he-has himself to-be a-father and he-put-on
coniugem. Et cum sui pectoris uulnus ferre non posset,
the-husband and when of-his breast the-wound to-bear not he-could
quadam die prima luce uigilans inrumpit cubiculum filiae
on-a-certain day at-first light waking he-bursts-into the-bedroom of-daughter
suae, famulos longe excedere iussit quasi cum filia sua
his the-servants far to-withdraw he-ordered as-if with daughter his
secretum conloquium habiturus, et stimulante furore libidinis
a-secret conversation going-to-have and with-goading madness of-lust
diu repugnanti filiae suae nodum uirginitatis eripuit,
long from-resisting daughter his the-knot of-virginity he-tore-away
perfectoque scelere euasit cubiculum. Puella uero stans
and-with-accomplished crime he-left the-bedroom the-girl but standing
dum miratur scelesti patris impietatem, fluentem sanguinem
while she-wonders-at of-wicked father the-impiety the-flowing blood
cupit celare: sed guttae sanguinis in pauimentum ceciderunt.
wishes to-hide but drops of-blood onto the-floor fell
2 Subito nutrix eius introiuit cubiculum. Ut uidit puellam
suddenly the-nurse her entered the-bedroom when she-saw the-girl
flebili uultu, asperso pauimento sanguine, roseo rubore
with-tearful face with-sprinkled floor with-blood with-rosy blush
perfusam ait 'quid sibi uult iste turbatus animus?' Puella
suffused she-says what for-itself wants this troubled spirit the-girl
ait 'cara nutrix, modo hoc in cubiculo duo nobilia perierunt
says dear nurse just-now this in the-bedroom two noble have-perished
nomina.' Nutrix ignorans ait 'domina, quare hoc dicis?'
names the-nurse not-knowing says mistress why this do-you-say
Puella ait 'ante legitimam mearum nuptiarum diem saeuo
the-girl says before the-lawful of-my wedding day by-savage
scelere uiolatam uides.' Nutrix ut haec audiuit atque uidit,
crime violated you-see the-nurse when these-things heard and saw

exhorruit atque ait ‘quis tanta fretus audacia uirginis
shuddered and says who with-such relying-on daring of-the-maiden
reginae maculauit torum?’ Puella ait ‘impietas fecit scelus.’
queen has-stained the-bed the-girl says impiety has-done the-crime
Nutrix ait ‘cur ergo non indicas patri?’ Puella ait ‘et ubi est
the-nurse says why then not do-you-tell your-father the-girl says and where is
pater?’ et ait ‘cara nutrix, si intellegis quod factum est:
the-father and she-says dear nurse if you-understand what done has-been
periit in me nomen patris. Itaque ne hoc scelus genitoris
has-perished in me the-name of-father therefore lest this crime of-father
mei patefaciam et haec macula gentibus innotescat, mortis
my I-should-reveal and this stain to-the-nations become-known of-death
remedium mihi placet.’ Nutrix ut audiuit puellam mortis
the-remedy to-me is-pleasing the-nurse when heard the-girl of-death
remedium quaerere, uix eam blando sermonis conloquio
the-remedy to-seek scarcely her by-soothing of-speech conversation
reuocat, ut a praepositae mortis immanitate excederet,
she-recalls that from of-the-proposed death the-monstrousness she-might-withdraw
et inuitam patris sui uoluntati satisfacere cohortatur.
and unwilling of-father her to-the-will to-satisfy she-urges
Qui cum simulata mente ostendebat se ciuibus suis 3
who when with-feigned mind showed himself to-citizens his
pium genitorem, intra domesticos uero parietes maritum
a-dutiful father within the-household but walls a-husband
se filiae gloriabatur. Et ut semper impio toro
himself to-his-daughter boasted and that always the-impious bed
frueretur, ad expellendos nuptiarum petitores nouum
he-might-enjoy for driving-away of-marriage the-suitors a-new
nequitiae genus excogitauit. Quaestiones proponebat dicens
of-wickedness kind he-devised riddles he-set-forth saying
‘quicumque uestrum quaestionis meae propositae solutionem
whoever of-you of-question my set the-solution

inuenerit, accipiet filiam meam in matrimonium, qui autem
finds will-receive daughter my in marriage who but
non inuenerit, decollabitur.' Itaque plurimi undique reges,
not finds will-be-beheaded and-so very-many from-everywhere kings
undique patriae principes propter incredibilem puellae
from-everywhere of-their-country princes because-of the-incredible of-the-girl
speciem contempta morte properabant. Et si quis forte
beauty with-scorned death were-hastening and if anyone perhaps
prudentia litterarum quaestionis solutionem inuenisset, quasi
by-skill of-letters of-the-question the-solution had-found as-if
nihil dixisset, decollabatur et caput eius super portae
nothing he-had-said was-beheaded and head his above of-the-gate
fastigium suspendebatur, ut aduenientes, imaginem mortis
the-top was-hung that arriving-men the-image of-death
uidentes, conturbarentur, ne ad talem conditionem accederent.
seeing might-be-dismayed lest to such a-condition they-should-come
4 Et cum has crudelitates rex Antiochus exerceret, interposito
and while these cruelties king Antiochus was-practicing with-intervening
breui temporis spatio quidam adulescens locuples ualde
short of-time space a-certain young-man rich very
genere Tyrius patriae suae princeps nomine Apollonius
by-birth Tyrian of-country his the-prince by-name Apollonius
fidus habundantia litterarum nauigans attingit Antiochiam
trusting in-abundance of-letters sailing reaches Antioch
ingressusque ad regem ita eum salutauit 'haue, domine
and-having-entered to the-king thus him greeted hail lord
rex Antioche!' et ait 'quod pater pius es, ad uota tua
king Antiochus and said because a-father dutiful you-are to wishes your
festinus ueni; gener regio genere ortus, peto filiam
hastening I-have-come a-son-in-law of-royal stock sprung I-seek daughter
tuam in matrimonium.' Rex ut audiuit quod audire
your in marriage the-king when heard what to-hear

nolebat, irato uultu respiciens iuuenem sic ait ad eum
he-did-not-want with-angry face looking-at the-youth thus says to him
'iuuenis, nosti nuptiarum condicionem?' At ille ait 'noui
young-man do-you-know of-the-marriage the-condition but he says I-know
et ad portae fastigium uidi.' Indignatus rex ait 'audi
and at of-the-gate the-top I-saw indignant the-king says hear
ergo quaestionem: scelere uehor, maternam carnem uescor,
then the-question by-crime I-am-carried on-mother's flesh I-feed
quaero fratrem meum meae matris filium uxoris meae
I-seek brother my of-my mother the-son of-wife my
uirum nec inuenio.' Iuuenis accepta quaestione paululum
the-husband nor do-I-find the-youth with-received question a-little
discessit a rege; quam cum sapienter scrutaretur, fauente
withdrew from the-king which when wisely he-examined with-favoring
deo inuenit quaestionis solutionem ingressusque ad regem
god he-found of-the-question the-solution and-having-entered to the-king
sic ait: 'domine rex, proposuisti mihi quaestionem; audi
thus says lord king you-set-forth to-me a-question hear
ergo solutionem. Quod dixisti: scelere uehor, non es
then the-solution what you-said by-crime I-am-carried not you-have
mentitus: te respice. Et quod dixisti: maternam carnem
lied yourself look-at and what you-said on-mother's flesh
uescor, nec et hoc mentitus es: filiam tuam intuere.'
I-feed nor also this lied you-have daughter your look-at
Rex ut uidit iuuenem quaestionis solutionem inuenisse, 5
the-king when saw the-youth of-the-question the-solution to-have-found
timens ne scelus suum patefieret, irato uultu eum respiciens
fearing lest crime his be-revealed with-angry face him looking-at
sic ait ad eum: 'Longe es, iuuenis, a quaestionis
thus says to him far you-are young-man from of-the-question
solutione, erras, nihil uerum dicis. Decollari quidem mereris,
the-solution you-err nothing true you-say to-be-beheaded indeed you-deserve

sed habebis triginta dierum spatium: recogita tecum.
but you-will-have thirty of-days space reconsider with-yourself
Et dum reuersus fueris et quaestionis meae propositae
and when returned you-shall-have and of-question my set
solutionem inueneris, accipies filiam meam in matrimonium:
the-solution you-find you-will-receive daughter my in marriage
sin alias, legem agnosces.' Iuuenis conturbatum habebat
but-if otherwise the-law you-will-recognize the-youth troubled had
animum, paratamque habens nauem accepto commeatu
mind and-ready having a-ship with-received provision
ascendit, tendit ad patriam suam Tyrum et aperto
embarked heads for homeland his Tyre and with-opened
scrinio codicum suorum inquirit omnes quaestiones actorum
case of-books his searches all the-questions of-authors
omniumque paene philosophorum disputationes omniumque
and-of-all nearly philosophers the-disputations and-of-all
etiam Chaldaeorum. Et dum aliud non inuenisset nisi
also of-the-Chaldaeans and when other-thing not he-had-found except
quod cogitauerat, ad semet ipsum locutus est dicens 'quid
what he-had-thought to himself very spoken he-has saying what
agis, Apolloni? quaestionem regis soluisti, filiam eius
are-you-doing Apollonius the-question of-the-king you-solved daughter his
non accepisti! ideo dilatatus es, ut neceris.'
not you-received for-this delayed you-have-been that you-may-be-killed
6 Et post discessum adulescentis uocat ad se Antiochus rex
and after the-departure of-the-young-man calls to himself Antiochus the-king
dispensatorem suum fidelissimum nomine Thaliarchum et dicit
steward his most-faithful by-name Thaliarchus and says
ei: 'Thaliarche, secretorum meorum fidelissime minister, scias
to-him Thaliarchus of-secrets my most-faithful minister know
quia Tyrius Apollonius inuenit quaestionis meae solutionem.
that Tyrian Apollonius has-found of-question my the-solution

Ascende ergo confestim nauem ad persequendum iuuenem, et
board then at-once a-ship for pursuing the-youth and
cum ueneris Tyrum in patriam eius, inquire inimicum eius,
when you-come to-Tyre into homeland his seek-out an-enemy his
qui eum aut ferro aut ueneno interimat. Reuersus cum
who him either by-sword or by-poison may-kill returned when
fueris, libertatem accipies.' Thaliarchus uero hoc audito
you-shall-have freedom you-will-receive Thaliarchus and with-this heard
adsumens pecuniam simulque uenenum nauem inuectus
taking-up money and-at-the-same-time poison onto-the-ship carried
est. Peruenit innocens tandem Apollonius prior ad patriam
was arrived the-innocent at-last Apollonius first to homeland
suam et introiuit. Continuo iussit sibi ut homo locuples
his and entered at-once ordered for-himself as a-man rich
nauem praeparari atque ita onerari praecepit naues frumento.
a-ship to-be-prepared and thus to-be-loaded ordered the-ships with-grain
Ipse quoque Apollonius cum paucis comitantibus fidelissimis
himself also Apollonius with few accompanying most-faithful
seruis nauem occulte ascendit deferens secum multum
slaves the-ship secretly boarded carrying with-himself much
pondus auri atque argenti sed et uestem copiosissimam, et
weight of-gold and of-silver but also clothing most-plentiful and
hora noctis silentissima tertia tradidit se alto pelago.
at-the-hour of-night most-silent third committed himself to-the-deep sea
Alia uero die in ciuitate sua quaeritur a ciuibus suis ad 7
on-another but day in city his he-is-sought by citizens his for
salutandum et non inuentus est. Fit tremor ingens,
greeting and not found he-was there-arises a-trembling huge
quod princeps amatissimus nusquam comparet; sonat planctus
because the-prince most-beloved nowhere appears sounds a-lament
ingens per totam ciuitatem. Tantus namque amor ciuium
huge through the-whole city so-great for the-love of-citizens

suorum erga eum erat, ut per multa tempora tonsores
his toward him was that for many times the-barbers
priuarentur, publica spectacula tollerentur, balnea clauderentur,
were-deprived public shows were-taken-away baths were-closed
non templa neque tabernas quisquam ingrederetur. Et cum
not temples nor shops anyone entered and while
haec Tyri aguntur, superuenit Thaliarchus dispensator, qui
these-things at-Tyre are-done arrives Thaliarchus the-steward who
a rege Antiocho missus fuerat ad necandum iuuenem. Qui ut
by king Antiochus sent had-been for killing the-youth who when
uidit omnia clausa, ait cuidam puero 'indica mihi si ualeas,
saw all-things closed says to-a-certain boy tell me if you-are-well
quae est haec causa, quod ciuitas ista in luctu moratur?'
what is this cause that city this in mourning lingers
Cui puer ait 'o hominem inprobum et stultum! scit et
to-whom the-boy says o man wicked and stupid he-knows and
interrogat! quis est enim qui nesciat, ideo hanc ciuitatem
asks who is for who does-not-know for-this-reason this city
in luctu esse, quia princeps huius patriae nomine Apollonius
in mourning to-be because the-prince of-this country by-name Apollonius
reuersus ab Antiochia subito nusquam conparuit?' Tunc
returned from Antioch suddenly nowhere has-appeared then
Thaliarchus dispensator regis hoc audito gaudio plenus
Thaliarchus the-steward of-the-king with-this heard with-joy full
rediit ad nauem et tertia nauigationis die attigit Antiochiam
returned to the-ship and on-the-third of-the-voyage day reached Antioch
ingressusque ad regem ait 'domine rex, laetare et gaude, quia
and-having-entered to the-king says lord king rejoice and be-glad because
iuuenis ille Tyrius Apollonius timens regni tui uires
young-man that Tyrian Apollonius fearing of-kingdom your the-strength
subito nusquam conparuit.' Rex ait 'fugere quidem potest, sed
suddenly nowhere has-appeared the-king says to-flee indeed he-can but

effugere non potest.' Continuo huiusmodi edictum proposuit:
to-escape not he-can at-once of-this-kind an-edict he-posted
'quicumque mihi Tyrium Apollonium, contemptorem regni
whoever to-me Tyrian Apollonius the-despiser of-kingdom
mei, uiuum exhibuerit, accipiet auri talenta quinquaginta,
my alive produces will-receive of-gold talents fifty
qui uero caput eius attulerit, accipiet centum.' Hoc
who but head his brings will-receive a-hundred with-this
edicto proposito non tantum eius inimici sed etiam amici
edict posted not only his enemies but also friends
eius cupiditate ducebantur et ad indagandum properabant.
his by-greed were-led and for tracking hastened
Quaeritur Apollonius per mare per terram per montes
is-sought Apollonius through sea through land through mountains
per siluas per uniuersas indagines, et non inueniebatur.
through forests through all searches and not he-was-found
Tunc iussit rex classes nauium praeparari ad persequendum 8
then ordered the-king fleets of-ships to-be-prepared for pursuing
iuuenem. Sed moras facientibus his qui classes nauium
the-youth but with-delays making those who fleets of-ships
praeparabant, deuenit Apollonius ciuitatem Tarsiam et
were-preparing came Apollonius to-the-city Tarsus and
deambulans iuxta litus uisus est a quodam Hellenico
walking beside the-shore seen he-was by a-certain Hellenicus
nomine ciue suo, qui ibidem superuenerat ipsa
by-name a-citizen his-own who in-the-same-place had-come-up that-very
hora, et accedens ad eum Hellenicus ait 'haue, rex Apolloni.'
hour and approaching to him Hellenicus says hail king Apollonius
At ille salutatus fecit quod potentes facere consuerunt:
but he greeted did what the-powerful to-do are-accustomed
spreuit hominem plebeium. Tunc senex indignatus iterato
he-spurned the-man plebeian then the-old-man indignant again

salutauit eum Hellenicus et ait ‘haue, inquam, Apolloni,
greeted him Hellenicus and says hail I-say Apollonius
resaluta et noli despicere paupertatem nostram honestis
greet-back and do-not despise poverty our with-honorable
moribus decoratam. Si enim scis, cauendum tibi est,
manners adorned if for you-know to-be-guarded-against for-you it-is
si autem nescis, admonendus es. Audi, forsitan quod
if but you-do-not-know to-be-warned you-are hear perhaps what
nescis: quia proscriptus es.’ Apollonius ait ‘patriae
you-do-not-know that proscribed you-are Apollonius says of-the-country
principem quis proscripsit?’ Hellenicus ait ‘rex Antiochus.’
the-prince who has-proscribed Hellenicus says king Antiochus
Apollonius ait ‘qua ex causa?’ Hellenicus ait ‘quia quod
Apollonius says what for reason Hellenicus says because what
pater est esse uoluisti.’ Apollonius ait ‘et quanti me
the-father is to-be you-wished Apollonius says and for-how-much me
proscripsit?’ Hellenicus respondit: ‘ut quicumque te uiuum
has-he-proscribed Hellenicus answered that whoever you alive
exhibuerit, auri talenta accipiat quinquaginta; qui uero caput
produces of-gold talents should-receive fifty who but head
tuum absciderit, accipiet centum. Ideoque moneo te: fuge,
your cuts-off will-receive a-hundred and-therefore I-warn you flee
praesidium manda.’ Haec cum dixisset Hellenicus, discessit.
protection arrange these-things when he-had-said Hellenicus departed
Tunc iussit Apollonius reuocari ad se senem et ait
then ordered Apollonius to-be-called-back to himself the-old-man and says
ad eum: ‘rem fecisti optimam, ut me instrueres.’ Et
to him a-thing you-have-done best that me you-should-inform and
iussit ei proferri centum talenta auri et ait ‘accipe,
ordered to-him to-be-brought-out a-hundred talents of-gold and says take
gratissimi exempli pauperrime, quia mereris, et puta, te
of-most-welcome example most-poor-man because you-deserve-it and think you

mihi caput a ceruicibus amputasse et gaudium regi
from-me the-head from the-neck to-have-cut-off and joy to-the-king
pertulisse. Et ecce habes pretium centum talenta auri et
to-have-carried and behold you-have the-price a-hundred talents of-gold and
puras manus a sanguine innocentis.' Cui Hellenicus
clean hands from the-blood of-an-innocent-man to-whom Hellenicus
ait 'absit, domine, ut ego huius rei causa praemium
says far-be-it lord that I of-this thing for-the-sake a-reward
accipiam. Apud bonos enim homines amicitiae praemio non
should-receive among good for men friendships by-reward not
comparantur, sed innocentia.' Et uale dicens ei discessit.
are-bought but by-innocence and farewell saying to-him departed
Post haec Apollonius dum deambularet in eodem loco supra 9
after these-things Apollonius while walked in the-same place upon
litore, occurrit ei alius homo nomine Stranguillio. Accessit ad
the-shore meets him another man by-name Stranguillio approached to
eum protinus et ait 'haue, mi carissime Stranguillio.' Et ille
him at-once and says hail my dearest Stranguillio and he
dixit 'haue, domine Apolloni. Quid itaque in his locis turbata
said hail lord Apollonius why then in these places with-troubled
mente uersaris?' Apollonius ait 'proscriptum uides.'
mind are-you-going-about Apollonius says proscribed you-see
Stranguillio ait 'et quis te proscripsit?' Apollonius ait 'rex
Stranguillio says and who you has-proscribed Apollonius says king
Antiochus.' Stranguillio ait 'qua ex causa?' Apollonius ait 'quia
Antiochus Stranguillio says what for reason Apollonius says because
filiam eius, immo ut uerum dixerim coniugem in matrimonium
daughter his nay that the-truth I-may-say wife in marriage
petiui. Sed si fieri potest, in patria uestra uolo latere.'
I-sought but if to-be-done it-can in country your I-wish to-lie-hidden
Stranguillio ait 'domine Apolloni, ciuitas nostra paupera est
Stranguillio says lord Apollonius city our poor is

et nobilitatem tuam ferre non potest. Praeterea duram famem
and nobility your to-bear not can besides harsh famine
saeuamque sterilitatem patimur annonae, nec est iam ulla
and-savage barrenness we-suffer of-the-grain-supply nor is now any
spes ciuibus nostris salutis, sed crudelissima mors potius ante
hope for-citizens our of-safety but most-cruel death rather before
oculos nostros uersatur.' Apollonius autem ad Stranguillionem
eyes our hovers Apollonius but to Stranguillio
ait 'age ergo deo gratias, quod me profugum finibus uestris
says give then to-god thanks that me a-fugitive to-borders your
applicuit. Dabo itaque ciuitati uestrae centum milia frumenti
has-brought I-will-give therefore to-city your a-hundred thousand of-grain
modiorum, si fugam meam celaueritis.' Stranguillio ut audiuit,
of-measures if flight my you-hide Stranguillio when heard
prostrauit se pedibus Apollonii dicens 'domine Apolloni, si
prostrated himself at-the-feet of-Apollonius saying lord Apollonius if
ciuitati esurienti subueneris, non solum fugam tuam celabunt,
to-the-city hungry you-help not only flight your they-will-hide
sed etiam si necesse fuerit pro salute tua dimicabunt.'
but also if necessary it-is for safety your they-will-fight
10 Cumque haec dixisset, perrexerunt in ciuitatem, et
and-when these-things he-had-said they-went into the-city and
ascendens Apollonius tribunal in foro cunctis ciuibus
mounting Apollonius the-platform in the-forum to-all citizens
et maioribus eiusdem ciuitatis dixit 'Ciues Tarsis, quos
and elders of-the-same city said citizens of-Tarsus whom
annonae penuria turbat et opprimit, ego Apollonius Tyrius
of-grain the-shortage troubles and oppresses I Apollonius the-Tyrian
releuabo. Credo enim uos huius beneficii memores fugam
will-relieve I-believe for you of-this kindness mindful flight
meam celaturos. Scitote enim, me legibus Antiochi regis
my going-to-hide know for me by-the-laws of-Antiochus king

esse fugatum; sed uestra felicitate faciente hucusque ad uos
to-be put-to-flight but with-your good-fortune causing-it hither to you
sum delatus. Dabo itaque uobis centum milia frumenti
I-have been-brought I-will-give therefore to-you a-hundred thousand of-grain
modiorum eo pretio, quo sum in patria mea eos
of-measures at-that price at-which I-have in country my them
mercatus: octo aereis singulos modios.' Ciues uero Tarsis,
bought for-eight bronze-coins each measure the-citizens and of-Tarsus
qui singulos modios singulis aureis mercabantur, exhilarati
who each measure for-single gold-pieces were-buying cheered
facti adclamationibus gratias agebant certatim accipientes
made with-acclamations thanks were-giving vying receiving
frumentum. Apollonius autem, ne deposita regia dignitate
the-grain Apollonius but lest with-laid-aside royal dignity
mercatoris uideretur adsumere nomen magis quam donatoris,
of-a-merchant he-seem to-assume the-name rather than of-a-giver
pretium quod acceperat utilitati eiusdem ciuitatis redonauit.
the-price which he-had-received for-the-benefit of-the-same city gave-back
Ciues uero his tantis eius beneficiis cumulati optant ei
the-citizens and by-these so-great his kindnesses heaped choose for-him
statuam statuere ex aere et eam conlocauerunt in biga in
a-statue to-set-up from bronze and it placed in a-chariot in
foro stante, in dextra manu fruges tenentem, sinistro pede
the-forum standing in the-right hand grain holding with-left foot
modium calcantem et in basi haec scripserunt: TARSIA
a-measure treading and on the-base these-words they-wrote the-Tarsian
CIUITAS APOLLONIO TYRIO DONUM DEDIT EO
city to-Apollonius the-Tyrian as-a-gift gave for-this
QUOD STERILITATEM SUAM ET FAMEM SEDAUERAT.
that barrenness its and famine he-had-stilled

11 Interpositis deinde mensibus paucis, hortante Stranguillione
with-intervening then months few with-urging Stranguillio
et Dionysiade coniuge eius et premente fortuna ad
and Dionysias wife his and with-pressing fortune to
Pentapolitanas Cyrenaeorum terras adfirmabatur nauigare, ut
the-Pentapolitan of-the-Cyrenaeans lands he-was-resolved to-sail that
ibi latere posset. Deducitur itaque Apollonius cum
there to-lie-hidden he-might-be-able he-is-escorted then Apollonius with
ingenti honore ad nauem et uale dicens hominibus ascendit
huge honor to the-ship and farewell saying to-the-people boarded
ratem. Qui dum per aliquot dies totidemque noctes uentis
the-vessel who while for some days and-as-many nights with-winds
prosperis nauigaret, subito intra duas horas diei mutata est
favorable sailed suddenly within two hours of-day changed has
pelagi fides, in quo pacto litus Tarsium reliquit.
of-the-sea the-faith in what agreement the-shore Tarsian it-left

Nam paucis horis perierunt carbasa uentis.
for in-few hours perished the-sails by-the-winds
Concitat et totum se effundit pontus ***
stirs and whole itself pours-out the-sea (lacuna)
*** rutilans inluminat orbem.
(lacuna) glowing lights-up the-world

Et obscurato sereno lumine caeli
and with-darkened clear light of-the-sky
Aeolus imbriferis spirans turbata procellis
Aeolus with-rain-bearing breathing troubled gales
corripit arua, Notus Libyco pariterque mouetur
seizes the-fields Notus Libyan and-equally is-moved
∗∗∗ caligine ratis
(lacuna) in-the-murk of-the-vessel
scinditur omne latus pelagique uolumine murmurat.
is-split every side and-of-the-sea with-the-roll it-murmurs
Grando nubes zephyri fretum et inmania nimbi
hail clouds zephyrs strait and huge rainstorms
flamina dant uenti, mugitu mors sedula terret
blasts give the-winds with-bellowing death busy terrifies
ereptusque sibi remis non inuenit undas.
and-snatched-away from-himself with-oars not finds the-waves
Hinc Notus, hinc Boreas, hinc horridus Africus instat.
here Notus here Boreas here bristling Africus presses
Ipse tridente suo Neptunus spargit harenas.
himself with-trident his Neptune scatters the-sands
Triton terribili cornu cantabat in undis.
Triton with-terrible horn was-playing in the-waves
Arbor fracta ruit, antemnam corripit unda.
the-mast broken falls the-yard seizes the-wave
Tunc sibi quisque rapit tabulas mortemque moratur.
then for-himself each snatches planks and-death delays

Cast up naked at Cyrene, Apollonius is clothed by a poor fisherman, wins King Archistrates' favor at ball, and is invited to dinner. The princess Archistratis hears his story, sees him outplay her on the lyre, and gives him gold and slaves. She asks for him as her teacher and, sick with love, feigns an illness. Three noble suitors ask for her; she writes to her father that she will have only the shipwrecked man, and the king gives her to him.

12 In tali caligine tempestatis perierunt uniuersi. Apollonius solus
in such murk of-the-storm perished all Apollonius alone
beneficio tabulae in Pentapolitanorum litora gubernatus
by-the-kindness of-a-plank onto of-the-Pentapolitans the-shores steered
parcente fortuna et deo uolente proicitur fatigatus in
with-sparing fortune and with-god willing is-thrown-up exhausted into
Cyrenen regionem. Et dum euomit undas quas potauerat,
the-Cyrenean region and while he-vomits-up the-waves which he-had-drunk
intuens mare tranquillum, quod paulo ante turbidum senserat,
gazing-at the-sea calm which a-little before turbulent he-had-felt
respiciens fluctus sic ait 'o Neptune, praedator maris,
looking-back-at the-billows thus he-says o Neptune plunderer of-the-sea
fraudator hominum, innocentium deceptor, tabularum latro,
cheat of-men innocent deceiver of-planks robber
Antiocho rege crudelior, utinam animam abstulisses meam!
than-Antiochus king more-cruel would-that the-life you-had-taken my
Cui me solum reliquisti egenum et miserum et impie
to-whom me alone have-you-left needy and wretched and impiously
naufragum? Facilius rex crudelissimus persequetur! Quo
shipwrecked more-easily the-king most-cruel will-pursue where
itaque pergam? quam partem petam? quis ignotus ignoto
then shall-I-go what part shall-I-seek who unknown to-one-unknown
auxilium dabit?' Haec dum loquitur, animaduertit uenientem
help will-give these-things while he-speaks he-notices coming

contra se quendam robustum senem arte piscatoris
toward himself a-certain sturdy old-man by-the-craft of-a-fisherman
sordido tribunario coopertum. Cogente necessitate prostrauit
in-a-dirty cloak covered with-compelling necessity he-prostrated
se illi ad pedes et profusis lacrimis ait 'miserere,
himself to-him at the-feet and with-poured-forth tears says pity
quicumque es! succurre nudo naufrago non humilibus
whoever you-are help a-naked shipwrecked-man not of-the-lowly
genito. Et ut scias, cui miserearis: ego sum Tyrius
born and that you-may-know whom you-pity I am Tyrian
Apollonius, patriae meae princeps. Audi nunc trophaeum
Apollonius of-country my the-prince hear now the-trophy
calamitatis meae, qui modo genibus tuis prouolutus deprecor
of-calamity my who just-now at-knees your groveling beg-for
uitam.' Piscator ut uidit prima specie iuuenem pedibus suis
life the-fisherman when he-saw at-first sight the-youth at-feet his
prostratum, misericordia motus leuauit eum et tenuit manum
prostrate by-pity moved raised him and held hand
eius et duxit infra tectum paupertatis suae et posuit
his and led-him beneath the-roof of-poverty his and set-out
epulas quas potuit. Et ut plenius pietati suae satisfaceret,
food which he-could and that more-fully to-piety his he-might-do-justice
exuit se tribunario et in duas partes scidit aequales
he-stripped himself of-the-cloak and into two parts tore-it equal
deditque unam iuueni dicens 'tolle quod habeo et uade in
and-gave one to-the-youth saying take what I-have and go into
ciuitatem; ibi forsitan inuenies, qui misereatur tibi; si non
the-city there perhaps you-will-find one-who may-take-pity on-you if not
inueneris, huc reuertere. Paupertas quaecumque est sufficiet
you-find here return poverty whatever it-is will-suffice
nobis; mecum piscaberis. Illud tamen admoneo, ut si quando
for-us with-me you-will-fish this yet I-advise that if ever

deo fauente dignitati tuae redditus fueris, et tu respicias
with-god favoring to-dignity your restored you-are also you look-back-on
paupertatem tribunarii mei.' Apollonius ait 'nisi meminero,
the-poverty of-cloak my Apollonius says unless I-remember-it
iterum naufragium patiar nec tui similem inueniam!'
again shipwreck may-I-suffer nor your like may-I-find
13 Et haec dicens per demonstratam sibi uiam iter
and these-things saying along the-shown to-him way the-journey
carpens portam ciuitatis intrauit. Et dum cogitat, unde
taking the-gate of-the-city he-entered and while he-ponders whence
auxilium uitae peteret, uidit puerum nudum per plateam
help for-life he-might-seek he-saw a-boy naked through the-square
currentem, oleo unctum, praecinctum sabano, ferentem
running with-oil anointed girt with-a-linen-cloth carrying
lusus iuuenales ad gymnasium pertinentes, maxima uoce
games youthful to the-gymnasium belonging with-greatest voice
dicentem 'audite ciues, audite peregrini, liberi et ingenui:
saying hear citizens hear strangers free and freeborn
gymnasium patet.' Apollonius hoc audito exuit se
the-gymnasium is-open Apollonius with-this heard stripped himself
tribunario et ingreditur lauacrum, utitur liquore palladio,
of-the-cloak and enters the-bath uses the-liquid of-Pallas
et dum exercentes singulos intuetur, parem sibi quaerens
and while the-exercisers one-by-one he-watches an-equal to-himself seeking
non inuenit. Subito Archistrates rex totius illius regionis
not he-finds suddenly Archistrates the-king of-all that region
cum turba famulorum ingressus dum cum suis pilae lusum
with a-crowd of-servants having-entered while with his-men of-ball the-game
exerceret, uolente deo miscuit se Apollonius regi et
he-was-playing with-god willing mixed himself Apollonius with-the-king and
decurrentem sustulit pilam et subtili uelocitate percussam
the-running-down he-caught ball and with-fine speed struck

ludenti regi remisit remissamque rursus uelocius repercussit
to-the-playing king sent-it-back and-sent-back again more-swiftly struck-back
nec cadere passus est. Notauit sibi rex uelocitatem
nor to-fall allowed-it he-has noted for-himself the-king the-speed
iuuenis, et quia sciebat se in pilae lusu neminem parem
of-the-youth and because he-knew that-he in of-ball the-game no-one equal
habere, ad suos ait 'famuli, recedite; hic enim iuuenis
to-have to his-men he-says servants withdraw this for youth
ut suspicor mihi comparandus est.' Apollonius ut audiuit
as I-suspect with-me to-be-compared is Apollonius when he-heard
se laudari, constanter accessit ad regem et docta manu
himself to-be-praised steadily approached to the-king and with-skilled hand
ceroma fricauit eum tanta subtilitate, ut de sene
with-wax-ointment rubbed him with-such fineness that from an-old-man
iuuenem redderet. Deinde in solio gratissime fouit
a-young-man he-made then in the-bathing-seat most-pleasingly he-warmed-him
et exeunti manum officiosam dedit et discessit.
and to-him-going-out a-hand dutiful he-gave and departed
Rex ad amicos post discessum iuuenis ait 'iuro uobis per 14
the-king to friends after the-departure of-the-youth says I-swear to-you by
communem salutem, melius me numquam lauasse quam
common welfare better me never to-have-bathed than
hodie beneficio nescio cuius adolescentis' et respiciens
today by-the-kindness of-I-know-not whose young-man and looking-at
unum de famulis ait 'iuuenis ille qui mihi officium fecit uide
one of servants says young-man that who for-me the-service did see
quis est.' Ille secutus iuuenem uidit eum tribunario sordido
who he-is he following the-youth saw him in-a-cloak dirty
coopertum. Reuersus ad regem ait 'iuuenis ille naufragus
covered having-returned to the-king says young-man that a-shipwrecked-man
est.' Rex ait 'unde scis?' Famulus ait 'illo tacente habitus
is the-king says whence do-you-know the-servant says with-him silent his-dress

indicat.' Rex ait 'uade celerius et dic illi: rogat te rex,
shows-it the-king says go quicker and say to-him asks you the-king
ut uenias ad cenam.' Apollonius ut audiuit, adquieuit et
that you-come to dinner Apollonius when he-heard assented and
ducente famulo peruenit ad regem. Famulus prior ingressus
with-leading the-servant he-came to the-king the-servant first having-entered
ait regi 'naufragus adest, sed abiecto habitu introire
says to-the-king the-shipwrecked-man is-here but with-cast-off dress to-enter
confunditur.' Statim rex iussit eum uestibus dignis indui
he-is-ashamed at-once the-king ordered him with-clothes worthy to-be-dressed
et ingredi ad cenam. Ingressus Apollonius triclinium contra
and to-come-in to dinner having-entered Apollonius the-dining-room opposite
regem adsignato loco discubuit. Infertur gustatio, deinde
the-king in-an-assigned place reclined is-brought-in the-first-course then
cena regalis. Apollonius cunctis epulantibus non epulabatur,
a-dinner royal Apollonius with-all feasting not was-feasting
sed aurum argentum uestes mensas ministeria regalia dum
but gold silver clothes tables services royal while
flens cum dolore considerat, quidam senex inuidus iuxta
weeping with grief he-considers a-certain old-man envious beside
regem discumbens uidit iuuenem curiose singula respicientem
the-king reclining saw the-youth closely each-thing looking-at
et ait regi 'bone rex, ecce homo cui tu benignitatem
and says to-the-king good king behold a-man to-whom you the-kindness
animae tuae ostendisti, fortunae tuae inuidet.' Rex ait 'male
of-soul your have-shown fortune your envies the-king says ill
suspicaris; nam iuuenis iste mihi non inuidet, sed plura se
you-suspect for youth this me not envies but more-things himself
perdidisse testatur.' Et hilari uultu respiciens Apollonium
to-have-lost bears-witness and with-cheerful face looking-at Apollonius
ait 'iuuenis, epulare nobiscum et meliora de deo spera!'
says young-man feast with-us and better-things from god hope

Et dum hortatur iuuenem, subito introiuit filia regis, 15
and while he-urges the-youth suddenly entered the-daughter of-the-king
adulta uirgo, et dedit osculum patri, deinde discumbentibus
a-grown maiden and gave a-kiss to-her-father then to-the-reclining
amicis. Quae dum singulos osculatur, peruenit ad naufragum.
friends she while each she-kisses came to the-shipwrecked-man
Rediit ad patrem et ait 'bone rex et pater optime, quis
she-returned to her-father and says good king and father best who
est iste iuuenis, qui contra te honorabili loco discumbit et
is this young-man who opposite you in-an-honorable place reclines and
flebili uultu nescio quid dolet?' Rex ait 'nata dulcis,
with-tearful face I-know-not what grieves the-king says daughter sweet
iuuenis ille naufragus est et in gymnasio mihi officium
young-man that shipwrecked is and in the-gymnasium for-me a-service
gratissimum fecit. Propterea ad cenam illum rogaui. Quis
most-pleasing did therefore to dinner him I-invited who
autem aut unde sit, nescio. Sed si scire uis, interroga
but or whence he-is I-do-not-know but if to-know you-wish ask
illum; decet enim te omnia nosse. Forsitan dum cognoueris,
him it-befits for you all-things to-know perhaps when you-learn
misereberis illi.' Hortante patre puella uenit ad iuuenem
you-will-pity him with-urging father the-girl came to the-youth
et uerecundo sermone ait 'licet taciturnitas tua sit tristior,
and with-modest speech says although silence your is rather-sad
generositas tamen nobilitatem ostendit. Si uero tibi molestum
noble-bearing yet nobility shows if but to-you troublesome
non est, indica mihi nomen et casus tuos.' Apollonius ait
not it-is tell me the-name and misfortunes your Apollonius says
'si necessitatis nomen quaeris: in mari perdidi; si nobilitatis:
if of-necessity the-name you-seek in the-sea I-lost-it if of-nobility
Tarso reliqui.' Puella ait 'apertius indica mihi, ut intellegam.'
at-Tarsus I-left-it the-girl says more-openly tell me that I-may-understand

16 Tunc ille uniuersos casus suos exposuit finitoque
then he all misfortunes his set-forth and-with-finished
sermonis conloquio fundere lacrimas coepit. Quem ut uidit
of-speech conversation to-pour-forth tears he-began whom when saw
rex flentem, respiciens filiam ait ‘nata dulcis, peccasti.
the-king weeping looking-at daughter says daughter sweet you-have-sinned
Dum uis nomen et casus adolescentis scire, ueteres
while you-wish the-name and misfortunes of-the-young-man to-know old
ei renouasti dolores. Peto itaque, domina, ut quicquid
for-him you-have-renewed griefs I-beg therefore mistress that whatever
uis iuueni dones.’ Puella ut uidit sibi a patre ultro
you-wish to-the-youth you-give the-girl when saw to-herself by her-father freely
permissum quod ipsa praestare uolebat, respiciens iuuenem
allowed what she-herself to-offer wished looking-at the-youth
ait ‘Apolloni, noster es; depone maerorem; quia patris mei
says Apollonius ours you-are lay-aside grief for of-father my
indulgentia permittit, locupletabo te.’ Apollonius cum gemitu
the-indulgence permits I-will-enrich you Apollonius with groaning
et uerecundia gratias egit. Rex gauisus tanta filiae suae
and modesty thanks gave the-king rejoicing at-such of-daughter his
benignitate ait ‘nata dulcissima, salutem habeas. Defer lyram
kindness says daughter sweetest health may-you-have bring the-lyre
et aufer iuueni lacrimas et exhilara conuiuium.’ Puella
and take-away from-the-youth tears and cheer the-feast the-girl
iussit sibi lyram adferri et, ubi accepit eam, nimia
ordered for-herself the-lyre to-be-brought and when she-received it with-exceeding
dulcedine chordarum miscuit sonum. Omnes laudare coeperunt
sweetness of-strings she-mingled the-sound all to-praise began
et dicere ‘non potest melius! non potest dulcius!’ Apollonius
and to-say not can-be better not can-be sweeter Apollonius
tacebat. Rex ait ‘Apolloni, foedam rem facis. Omnes filiam
was-silent the-king says Apollonius a-foul thing you-do all daughter

meam in arte musica laudant; tu solus tacendo uituperas.'
my in art musical praise you alone by-keeping-silent find-fault
Apollonius ait 'bone rex, si permittis, dicam quod sentio. Filia
Apollonius says good king if you-permit I-will-say what I-feel daughter
tua in artem musicam incidit, sed non didicit. Denique iube
your into the-art musical has-fallen but not has-learned-it finally order
mihi tradi lyram, et scies quod nescis.' Rex
to-me to-be-handed the-lyre and you-will-know what you-do-not-know the-king
Archistrates ait 'Apolloni, intellego te in omnibus locupletem.'
Archistrates says Apollonius I-understand you in all-things rich
Et iussit ei tradi lyram. Egressus foras Apollonius
and ordered to-him to-be-handed the-lyre having-gone out Apollonius
induit statum, corona caput decorauit et accipiens lyram
put-on the-costume with-a-garland his-head adorned and taking the-lyre
introiuit triclinium et ita stetit, ut omnes non Apollonium
entered the-dining-room and thus stood that all not Apollonius
sed Apollinem aestimarent. Atque ita silentio facto
but Apollo thought-him and so with-silence made

arripuit plectrum animumque accommodat arti;
he-seized the-plectrum and-his-mind applies to-the-art
cum chordis miscetur uox cantu modulata.
with the-strings is-mingled the-voice in-song tuned

Discumbentes una cum rege magna uoce clamoris laudare
the-reclining-guests together with the-king with-great voice of-shouting to-praise
coeperunt. Post haec deponens lyram induit statum
began after these-things laying-down the-lyre he-put-on the-costume
comicum et inauditas actiones expressit, deinde tragicum:
comic and unheard-of actions he-expressed then the-tragic
nihilo minus mirabiliter placet.
no less marvelously pleases

17 Puella ut audiuit iuuenem omnium artium studiorumque
the-girl when she-heard the-youth of-all arts and-studies
cumulatum, incidit in amorem. Finito conuiuio puella
heaped-full fell into love with-finished feast the-girl
respiciens patrem ait 'care genitor, permiseras mihi paulo
looking-at her-father says dear father you-had-allowed me a-little
ante, ut quicquid uoluissem de tuo, Apollonio darem.'
before that whatever I-wished from your-goods to-Apollonius I-should-give
Rex ait 'et permisi et permitto.' Puella intuens Apollonium
the-king says both I-allowed and I-allow the-girl gazing-at Apollonius
ait 'Apolloni magister, accipe ex indulgentia patris mei
says Apollonius master receive from the-indulgence of-father my
auri talenta ducenta, argenti pondus quadraginta et uestem
of-gold talents two-hundred of-silver weight forty and clothing
copiosam et seruos uiginti.' Et ait ad famulos 'adferte
plentiful and slaves twenty and she-says to the-servants bring
praesentibus amicis, quae Apollonio promisi, et in triclinio
with-present friends what to-Apollonius I-promised and in the-dining-room
ponite.' Iussu reginae inlata sunt omnia. Laudant omnes
place-them by-the-order of-the-queen brought-in were all-things praise all
liberalitatem puellae. Peracto conuiuio leuauerunt se
the-generosity of-the-girl with-finished feast raised themselves
omnes et uale dicentes regi et reginae discesserunt. Ipse
all and farewell saying to-the-king and to-the-queen departed himself
quoque Apollonius ait 'bone rex miserorum misericors et tu
also Apollonius says good king of-the-wretched pitier and you
regina amatrix studiorum, ualete.' Et respiciens famulos, quos
queen lover of-studies farewell and looking-at the-servants whom
sibi puella donauerat, ait 'tollite, famuli, haec quae mihi
to-him the-girl had-given says take servants these-things which to-me
regina donauit, et eamus hospitaliaque requiramus.' Puella
the-queen has-given and let-us-go and-lodgings let-us-seek the-girl

timens ne amatum non uidens torqueretur, respiciens patrem
fearing lest the-beloved not seeing she-be-tormented looking-at her-father
ait 'bone rex et pater optime, placetne tibi ut Apollonius
says good king and father best does-it-please you that Apollonius
hodie a nobis ditatus abscedat, et quod illi donasti a
today by us enriched depart and what to-him you-gave by
malis hominibus rapiatur?' Rex ait 'bene dicis, domina' et
wicked men be-plundered the-king says well you-say mistress and
confestim iubet ei adsignari zaetam, ubi digne quiesceret.
at-once orders to-him to-be-assigned a-room where worthily he-might-rest
Sed puella Archistratis ab amore incensa inquietam habuit 18
but the-girl Archistratis by love inflamed restless had
noctem:
a-night

figit in pectore uulnus
she-fixes in her-breast the-wound
uerborum cantusque memor.
of-his-words and-of-song mindful

Quaerit Apollonium et non sustinet amorem. Prima luce
she-seeks Apollonius and not she-bears the-love at-first light
uigilat, inrumpit cubiculum patris, sedet super torum. Pater
she-wakes bursts-into the-bedroom of-her-father sits on the-couch the-father
uidens filiam ait 'nata dulcis, quid est hoc quod praeter
seeing daughter says daughter sweet what is this that against
consuetudinem tuam mane uigilasti?' Puella ait 'hesterna
custom your early you-have-woken the-girl says yesterday's
studia me excitauerunt. Peto itaque, pater carissime, ut me
studies me have-roused I-beg therefore father dearest that me
hospiti nostro studiorum percipiendorum gratia tradas.'
to-guest our of-studies to-be-learned for-the-sake you-hand-over

Rex gaudio plenus iussit ad se iuuenem uocari. Cui
the-king with-joy full ordered to himself the-youth to-be-called to-whom
ait ‘Apolloni, studiorum tuorum felicitatem filia mea a te
he-says Apollonius of-studies your the-felicity daughter my from you
discere concupiuit; itaque desiderio natae meae si parueris,
to-learn has-longed therefore to-the-desire of-daughter my if you-obey
iuro tibi per regni mei uires, quia tibi, quicquid tibi
I-swear to-you by of-kingdom my the-strength that to-you whatever from-you
mare abstulit, ego in terris restituam.’ Apollonius hoc
the-sea took-away I on land will-restore Apollonius with-this
audito docet puellam sicut ipse didicerat. Interposito pauci
heard teaches the-girl as he-himself had-learned with-intervening of-a-little
temporis spatio, cum non posset puella ulla ratione amoris
time space when not could the-girl by-any means of-love
sui uulnus tolerare, simulata infirmitate coepit iacere. Rex
her the-wound bear with-feigned illness she-began to-lie-abed the-king
ut uidit filiam suam subitaneam ualetudinem incurrisse,
when saw daughter his a-sudden sickness to-have-fallen-into
sollicite adhibuit medicos. At illi temptant uenas, tangunt
anxiously applied doctors but they try the-veins they-touch
singulas partes corporis: aegritudinis nullam causam inueniunt.
each part of-the-body of-the-sickness no cause they-find

19 Post paucos dies rex tenens manum Apollonii forum ciuitatis
after few days the-king holding the-hand of-Apollonius the-forum of-the-city
ingreditur et dum cum eo deambulabat, iuuenes nobilissimi
enters and while with him he-walked young-men most-noble
tres, qui per longum tempus filiam eius in matrimonium
three who for long time daughter his in marriage
petierunt, regem una uoce pariter salutauerunt. Quos ut
had-sought the-king with-one voice together greeted whom when
uidit rex, subridens ait ‘quid est quod una uoce pariter
saw the-king smiling says what is-it that with-one voice together

salutastis?' Unus ex illis ait 'petentibus nobis filiam tuam in
you-have-greeted one of them says with-seeking us daughter your in
matrimonium, saepius differendo crucias. Propter quod hodie
marriage often by-putting-off you-torment-us because-of which today
simul uenimus. Ciues tui sumus, locupletes, bonis natalibus
together we-have-come citizens your we-are rich of-good births
geniti. Itaque de tribus elige unum, quem uis habere
born therefore from three choose one whom you-wish to-have
generum.' Rex ait 'non apto tempore interpellastis. Filia
as-son-in-law the-king says not at-a-fitting time you-have-interrupted daughter
enim mea studio uacat et pro amore studiorum imbecillis
for my to-study is-free and for love of-studies weak
iacet. Sed ne uidear uos saepius differre, scribite in codicellis
lies-abed but lest I-seem you too-often to-put-off write on tablets
nomina uestra et dotis quantitatem; mittam filiae meae,
names your and of-dowry the-amount I-will-send to-daughter my
ut ipsa eligat, quem uoluerit.' Scripserunt illi nomina sua
that she-herself may-choose whom she-wishes wrote they names their
et dotis quantitatem. Rex accepit codicellos et anulo suo
and of-dowry the-amount the-king received the-tablets and with-ring his
signauit et dat Apollonio dicens 'sine contumelia tua, hos
sealed-them and gives-them to-Apollonius saying without insult to-you these
codicellos perfer discipulae tuae: hic enim locus te desiderat.'
tablets carry to-pupil your here for place you requires
Apollonius acceptis codicellis petiit domum regiam. Introiuit 20
Apollonius with-received tablets made-for the-house royal he-entered
cubiculum. Puella ut uidit amores suos, ait 'quid est,
the-bedroom the-girl when saw loves her says what is-it
magister, quod singularis cubiculum introisti?' Apollonius
master that alone the-bedroom you-have-entered Apollonius
ait 'domina nondum mulier et mala, sume hos codicellos,
says mistress not-yet a-woman and bad take these tablets

quos tibi pater tuus misit, et lege.' Puella accepit et
which to-you father your has-sent and read the-girl received and
legit trium nomina petitorum, sed nomen eius non legit
read of-three the-names of-the-suitors but the-name of-him not she-read
quem uolebat. Perlectis codicellis respiciens Apollonium
whom she-wanted with-read-through tablets looking-at Apollonius
ait 'magister, tibi non dolet, quod ego nubo?' Apollonius
says master to-you not does-it-grieve that I marry Apollonius
ait 'immo gratulor, quod habundantia studiorum percepta
says nay I-congratulate-you that with-abundance of-studies acquired
me uolente nubis.' Puella ait 'si amares, doleres.'
with-me willing you-marry the-girl says if you-loved you-would-grieve
Haec dicens instante amoris audacia sui scripsit et signatos
these-things saying with-urging of-love the-daring her she-wrote and sealed
codicellos iuueni tradidit. Pertulit Apollonius in forum
tablets to-the-youth handed-over carried Apollonius into the-forum
et tradidit regi. Scripserat autem sic 'Bone rex et pater
and handed-it to-the-king had-written but thus good king and father
optime, quoniam clementiae tuae indulgentia permittit mihi,
best since of-clemency your the-indulgence permits me
ut dicam, quem uolo: illum uolo coniugem naufragum,
that I-say whom I-want him I-want as-husband the-shipwrecked-man
a fortuna deceptum. Et si miraris, pater, quod pudica
by fortune deceived and if you-wonder father that a-chaste
uirgo tam inpudenter scripserim: quia prae pudore indicare
maiden so shamelessly I-have-written because for shame to-tell-it
non potui, per ceram mandaui, quae ruborem non habet.'
not I-could through the-wax I-sent-it which blush not has
21 Rex perlectis codicellis ignorans quem naufragum
the-king with-read-through tablets not-knowing whom shipwrecked-man
diceret, respiciens tres iuuenes ait 'quis uestrum naufragium
she-meant looking-at the-three young-men says which of-you shipwreck

fecit?' Unus ex his Ardaleo nomine ait 'ego.' Alius ait
has-suffered one of them Ardaleo by-name says I another says
'tace, morbus te consumat! mecum litteras didicisti, portam
be-silent may-disease you consume with-me letters you-learned the-gate
ciuitatis numquam existi: quando naufragium fecisti?'
of-the-city never you-went-out-of when shipwreck did-you-suffer
Rex cum non inuenisset, quis eorum naufragium fecisset,
the-king when not he-had-found which of-them shipwreck had-suffered
respiciens Apollonium ait 'tolle codicellos et lege. Potest enim
looking-at Apollonius says take the-tablets and read it-can for
fieri ut, quod ego non intellego, tu intellegas qui interfuisti.'
happen that what I not understand you may-understand who were-present
Apollonius acceptis codicellis uelociter percurrit et, ut
Apollonius with-received tablets swiftly ran-through-them and when
sensit se amari, erubuit. Rex comprehendit Apollonii
he-perceived himself to-be-loved blushed the-king grasps of-Apollonius
manum et paululum quidem ab illis iuuenibus secedens ait
the-hand and a-little indeed from those young-men withdrawing says
'Apolloni, inuenisti naufragum?' Apollonius ait 'bone rex,
Apollonius have-you-found the-shipwrecked-man Apollonius says good king
si permittis, inueni.' Et his dictis uidens rex faciem
if you-permit I-have-found and with-these said seeing the-king the-face
eius roseo rubore perfusam intellexit dictum et ait 'gaudeo
his with-rosy blush suffused understood the-saying and says I-rejoice
plenius, quod filia mea concupiuit te; et meum uotum est.
more-fully that daughter my has-desired you and my wish it-is
Nihil enim in huiusmodi negotio sine deo agi potest.'
nothing for in of-this-kind business without god to-be-done can
Et respiciens tres iuuenes illos ait 'certe dixi uobis, cum
and looking-at the-three young-men those he-says surely I-told you when
nubendi tempus fuerit, mittam ad uos' et dimisit eos a se.
of-marrying the-time shall-be I-will-send to you and dismissed them from himself

They marry. News comes that Antiochus is dead; they sail, and at sea she gives birth and seems to die. The helmsman refuses a corpse, and Apollonius sets her adrift in a sealed coffin. At Ephesus a physician's pupil revives her, and she becomes a priestess of Diana. He leaves Tharsia in Tarsus with Stranguillio and Dionysias. Her dying nurse tells her her birth; when Tharsia is praised above her own daughter, Dionysias orders the bailiff Theophilus to kill her.

22 Ipse autem comprehendit manum iam non hospitis sed
he-himself but grasps the-hand now not of-a-guest but
generi sui. Intrauit in domum regiam et relicto Apollonio
of-son-in-law his he-entered into the-house royal and with-left Apollonius
intrauit rex solus ad filiam suam et ait 'nata dulcis, quem
entered the-king alone to daughter his and says daughter sweet whom
tibi coniugem elegisti?' Puella prostrauit se pedibus
for-yourself as-husband have-you-chosen the-girl prostrated herself at-the-feet
patris et ait 'pater piissime, quia cupis audire desiderium
of-her-father and says father most-loving since you-desire to-hear the-desire
filiae tuae: amo naufragum a fortuna deceptum; sed
of-daughter your I-love the-shipwrecked-man by fortune deceived but
ne teneam pietatem tuam ambiguitate sermonum: Apollonium
lest I-hold love your with-ambiguity of-words Apollonius
Tyrium praeceptorem meum; cui si me non dederis,
the-Tyrian teacher my to-whom if me not you-give
amisisti filiam.' Rex non sustinens filiae suae lacrimas
you-have-lost your-daughter the-king not bearing of-daughter his the-tears
motus pietate ait 'et ego, dulcis filia, amando factus sum
moved by-love says and I sweet daughter by-loving made I-have-been
pater.' Et exiens foras respiciens Apollonium dixit 'magister
a-father and going-out out-of-doors looking-at Apollonius said master
Apolloni, quia scrutaui filiam meam, quid eius animus
Apollonius since I-have-searched daughter my what her mind

desideret nuptiarum causa, cum lacrimis mihi adiurans ait
desires of-marriage for-the-sake with tears to-me swearing she-says
"iuraueras magistro meo Apollonio, quia, si desideriis meis
you-had-sworn to-master my Apollonius that if to-wishes my
paruisset, dares ei quicquid mare abstulit. Modo enim
he-had-obeyed you-would-give to-him whatever the-sea took-away now for
quia paruit tuis obsequiis, abii post eum uoluntate et
since he-has-obeyed your commands I-have-gone after him in-will and
doctrina. Aurum argentum uestes mancipia aut possessiones
learning gold silver clothes slaves or possessions
non quaerit, nisi regnum quod se putauerat perdidisse tuo
not she-seeks except the-kingdom which he had-thought to-have-lost by-your
sacramento per meam coniunctionem ei tradas." peto
oath through my marriage to-him you-should-hand-over I-beg
ergo, ne nuptias filiae meae fastidio habeas.' Apollonius
then lest the-marriage of-daughter my in-disdain you-hold Apollonius
ait 'quod a deo est, si tua uoluntas est, impleatur.'
says what from god is if your will it-is let-it-be-fulfilled
Ad quem rex ait 'diem ergo nuptiarum sine mora 23
to whom the-king says the-day then of-the-wedding without delay
statuam.' Postera die uocantur amici, uicinarum urbium
I-will-fix on-the-next day are-called friends of-neighboring cities
potestates. Quibus considentibus ait 'amici, quare uos
the-powers with-whom sitting-together he-says friends why you
in unum conuocauerim, discite. Sciatis uelle filiam meam
into one I-have-called-together learn know-ye to-wish daughter my
nubere Apollonio praeceptori suo. Peto ut omnium laetitia
to-marry Apollonius teacher her I-ask that of-all the-joy
sit, quia filia mea uirum prudentem sortita est.' Et
be because daughter my a-man prudent obtained has and
haec dicens diem nuptiarum indicit. Muneratur domus
these-things saying the-day of-the-wedding he-proclaims is-furnished the-house

amplissima, conuiuia prolixa tenduntur, celebrantur nuptiae
most-ample feasts lavish are-spread are-celebrated the-wedding
regia dignitate. Ingens inter coniuges amor, mirus affectus,
with-royal dignity huge between the-spouses love wonderful affection
incomparabilis dilectio, inaudita laetitia.
incomparable fondness unheard-of joy
24 Interpositis autem diebus aliquot et mensibus, cum iam puella
with-intervening but days some and months when now the-girl
haberet uentriculum formatum, sexto mense aestiuo tempore
had a-little-belly formed in-the-sixth month in-summer time
dum exspatiantur in litore, uident nauem speciosissimam, et
while they-stroll on the-shore they-see a-ship most-beautiful and
dum eam mirantur et laetantur, cognouit eam Apollonius
while it they-admire and rejoice recognized it Apollonius
esse de patria sua et conuersus ad gubernatorem ait
to-be from homeland his and turning to the-helmsman says
'dic si ualeas, unde uenis?' Gubernator ait 'a Tyro.'
tell if you-are-well whence you-come the-helmsman says from Tyre
Apollonius ait 'patriam meam nominasti.' Gubernator ait
Apollonius says homeland my you-have-named the-helmsman says
'ergo Tyrius es?' Apollonius ait 'ut dicis.' Gubernator
then a-Tyrian you-are Apollonius says as you-say the-helmsman
ait 'noueras aliquem patriae illius principem Apollonium
says did-you-know any of-country that the-prince Apollonius
nomine?' Apollonius ait 'ac si me ipsum.' Gubernator ait
by-name Apollonius says as if me myself the-helmsman says
'sicubi illum uideris, dic illi laetetur et gaudeat. Rex
wherever him you-see tell him let-him-rejoice and be-glad king
enim Antiochus fulmine percussus arsit cum filia sua;
for Antiochus by-lightning struck burned with daughter his
opes autem et regnum Antiochiae Apollonio reseruantur.'
the-wealth but and kingdom of-Antioch for-Apollonius are-kept

Apollonius ut audiuit, gaudio plenus respiciens coniugem
Apollonius when he-heard with-joy full looking-at wife
suam ait 'domina, quod aliquando naufrago credidisti,
his says mistress what once to-the-shipwrecked-man you-trusted
modo comproba. Peto itaque, cara coniunx, ut permittas
now prove-it I-beg therefore dear wife that you-allow
mihi proficisci ad regnum accipiendum.' Puella ut audiuit,
me to-set-out for the-kingdom to-be-received the-girl when she-heard
profusis lacrimis ait 'care coniunx, si in aliquo longo
with-poured-forth tears says dear husband if on some long
itinere esses, ad partum meum festinare deberes; nunc
journey you-were to childbirth my to-hasten you-would-have-to now
autem cum sis praesens, disponis me relinquere? sed si hoc
but since you-are present you-arrange me to-leave but if this
iubes, pariter nauigemus!' Et ueniens ad patrem ait 'care
you-command together let-us-sail and coming to her-father she-says dear
genitor, laetare et gaude; rex enim saeuissimus Antiochus
father rejoice and be-glad the-king for most-savage Antiochus
periit cum concumbente nata sua. Deus percussit eum
has-perished with lying-with-him daughter his god struck him
fulmine, opes autem regiae et diadema coniugi meo
with-lightning the-wealth but royal and the-diadem for-husband my
reseruantur. Permitte mihi nauigare cum uiro meo. Et ut
are-kept allow me to-sail with husband my and that
libentius mihi permittas: unam dimittis, recipies duas.'
more-willingly me you-allow one you-send-away you-will-receive two
Rex hilaratus iussit nauem produci in litore et 25
the-king cheered ordered the-ship to-be-drawn-out on the-shore and
omnibus bonis impleri, praeterea nutricem suam Lycoridem
with-all good-things to-be-filled besides nurse her Lycoris
et obstetricem peritissimam propter partum eius simul
and a-midwife most-skilled because-of childbirth her together

nauigare praecepit. Et data profectoria deduxit eos
to-sail he-ordered and with-given provision-for-the-journey he-escorted them
ad litus, osculatur filiam et generum et uentum prosperum
to the-shore kisses daughter and son-in-law and a-wind favorable
optat. Et ascendentes nauem cum multa familia multoque
wishes and boarding the-ship with much household and-much
apparatu alto uento nauigant. Qui dum per aliquot
equipment with-high wind they-sail they while for some
dies uariis uentorum flatibus detinentur, septimo mense
days by-various of-winds blasts are-held-back in-the-seventh month
cogente Lucina enixa est puellam, sed secundis
with-compelling Lucina brought-forth has a-girl but with-the-afterbirth
sursum redeuntibus coagulato sanguine conclusoque spiritu
upward returning with-clotted blood and-with-shut-off breath
defunctae repraesentauit effigiem. Subito exclamat familia,
of-a-dead-woman she-presented the-likeness suddenly cries-out the-household
currit Apollonius et uidit coniugem suam exanimem iacentem.
runs Apollonius and saw wife his lifeless lying
Abscindit a pectore uestes unguibus, primas adolescentiae
he-tears from his-breast his-clothes with-his-nails the-first of-youth
genas discerpit et lacrimas fundens iactauit se super
cheeks he-rends and tears pouring threw himself upon
pectus et ait ‘cara coniunx Archistratis et unica filia
her-breast and says dear wife Archistratis and only daughter
regis, quid respondebo regi patri tuo, qui me naufragum
of-the-king what shall-I-answer to-the-king father your who me shipwrecked
suscepit?’ Et cum haec et his similia deflens diceret,
took-in and when these-things and these like lamenting he-said
introiuit ad eum gubernator et ait ‘domine, tu quidem
came-in to him the-helmsman and says lord you indeed
pie facis, sed nauis mortuum non feret. Iube ergo corpus
dutifully act but the-ship a-dead-body not will-bear order then the-body

in pelago mitti.' Apollonius indignatus ait 'quid narras,
into the-sea to-be-cast Apollonius indignant says what are-you-saying
pessime hominum? Placet tibi, ut hoc corpus in pelago
worst of-men does-it-please you that this body into the-sea
mittam, quod me suscepit naufragum et egenum?' Inter
I-cast which me received shipwrecked and needy among
haec uocat fabros nauales, iubet coaptari tabulas et
these-things he-calls the-shipwrights naval he-orders to-be-fitted planks and
fieri loculum amplissimum et chartis plumbeis circumdari
to-be-made a-coffin very-ample and with-sheets leaden to-be-surrounded
foramina et rimas omnes diligenter picari. Quo perfecto
the-holes and chinks all carefully to-be-pitched with-which finished
regalibus ornamentis decoratam puellam in loculo conposuit,
with-royal ornaments adorned the-girl in the-coffin he-laid
cum fletu magno dedit osculum, et uiginti sestertios
with weeping great he-gave a-kiss and twenty sesterces
ad caput ipsius posuit et scripturam sic continentem
at the-head her-own he-placed and a-writing thus containing
'Quicumque corpus istud inuenerit et humo tradiderit,
whoever body this finds and to-the-earth commits
medios sibi teneat, medios pro funere expendat' et
half for-himself let-him-keep half for the-funeral let-him-spend and
misit in mare. Deinde iubet infantem diligenter nutriri,
he-sent-it into the-sea then he-orders the-infant carefully to-be-nursed
ut uel in malis haberet iocundum solacium uel ut
that either in misfortunes he-might-have a-pleasant comfort or that
pro filia neptem ostenderet regi.
in-place-of the-daughter a-granddaughter he-might-show to-the-king
Tertia die eiciunt undae loculum in litore Ephesiorum non 26
on-the-third day cast-out the-waves the-coffin on the-shore of-the-Ephesians not
longe a praedio medici cuiusdam nomine Chaeremonis,
far from the-estate of-a-physician certain by-name Chaeremon

qui die illa cum discipulis suis deambulans secus litus
who on-day that with pupils his walking along the-shore
uidit loculum a fluctibus expulsum iacentem in litore et ait
saw the-coffin by the-billows driven-out lying on the-shore and says
famulis suis 'tollite cum omni diligentia loculum istum et ad
to-servants his lift-up with all care coffin this and to
uillam perferte.' Et ita fecerunt. Tunc medicus leuiter aperuit
the-villa carry-it and so they-did then the-physician gently opened-it
et uidens puellam regalibus ornamentis decoratam speciosam
and seeing a-girl with-royal ornaments adorned beautiful
nimis falsaque morte occupatam, obstipuit et ait 'quas
exceedingly and-by-false death seized was-astonished and says what
putamus lacrimas hanc puellam parentibus reliquisse?' Et
do-we-think tears this girl to-her-parents to-have-left and
uidens sub capite eius pecuniam positam et codicellos scriptos
seeing under head her money placed and tablets written
ait 'uideamus quid desideret dolor.' Quos cum resignasset,
says let-us-see what desires grief which when he-had-unsealed
inuenit scriptum 'quicumque hunc loculum inueneris habentem
he-found written whoever this coffin you-find having
uiginti sestertios, peto ut dimidiam partem habeas, dimidiam
twenty sesterces I-ask that half part you-have the-half
uero funeri eroges. Hoc enim corpus multas reliquit
but on-the-funeral you-spend this for body many has-left
lacrimas. Quodsi aliud feceris quam quod dolor desiderat,
tears but-if other you-do than what grief desires
ultimum tuorum decidas nec qui corpus tuum sepulturae
last of-your-people may-you-fall nor one-who body your to-burial
commendet inuenias,' Perlectis codicellis ad famulos ait
may-commit may-you-find with-read-through tablets to the-servants he-says
'praestemus corpori, quod dolor desiderat. Iuro autem per spem
let-us-provide for-the-body what grief desires I-swear moreover by the-hope

uitae meae, amplius in hoc funere me erogaturum' et iubet
of-life my more in this funeral me going-to-spend and he-orders
instrui rogum. Et dum sollicite rogus instruitur, superuenit
to-be-built a-pyre and while carefully the-pyre is-built arrives
discipulus medici, adspectu adolescens sed ingenio senex.
a-pupil of-the-physician in-appearance a-young-man but in-mind an-old-man
Cum uidisset corpus speciosum super rogum positum, ait
when he-had-seen the-body beautiful upon the-pyre placed he-says
'magister, unde hoc nouum funus?' Chaeremon ait 'bene
master whence this new funeral Chaeremon says well
uenisti; hac enim hora te expectaui. Tolle ampullam
you-have-come at-this for hour you I-was-expecting take the-flask
unguenti et quod supremum est defunctae beneficium,
of-ointment and what the-last is to-the-dead-woman kindness
superfunde sepulturae.' Peruenit iuuenis ad corpus puellae,
pour-over for-burial came the-youth to the-body of-the-girl
detrahit a pectore uestem, fundit unguenti liquorem,
draws-off from her-breast the-garment pours of-the-ointment the-liquid
per artifices officiosae manus tractus praecordia sensit,
through of-skilled dutiful hand the-strokes the-heart he-felt
temptat tepidum corpus et obstipuit, palpat indicia uenarum,
he-tests the-warm body and was-astonished he-feels the-signs of-the-veins
aures, nares; labia labiis probat, sensit spiramentum gracile,
the-ears nostrils lips with-lips he-tests he-felt a-breath slender
luctantem uitam cum morte, et ait famulis suis 'subponite
struggling life with death and says to-servants his place-under
faculas per quattuor angulos lecti.' Quibus subpositis,
torches through four corners of-the-bed with-which placed-under
puella teporis nebula tacta, coagulatus sanguis liquefactus est.
the-girl by-warmth's mist touched the-clotted blood melted was

27 Quod ut uidit iuuenis, ait ‘Chaeremon magister, peccasti.
which when saw the-youth he-says Chaeremon master you-have-erred
Nam quam putabas esse defunctam, uiuit. Et ut facilius
for she-whom you-thought to-be dead lives and that more-easily
mihi credas, ego illi adhibitis uiribus statim spiritum
me you-may-believe I to-her with-applied strength at-once the-breath
patefaciam.’ Et his dictis pertulit puellam in cubiculum
will-open and with-these said he-carried the-girl into room
suum et posuit in lecto. Calefecit oleum, madefecit lanam,
his and laid-her on the-bed he-warmed oil soaked wool
fudit super pectus puellae. Sanguis, qui ad perfectionem
poured-it upon the-breast of-the-girl the-blood which to completion
coagulatus erat, accepto tepore liquefactus est et coepit
clotted had-been with-received warmth melted was and began
spiritus praeclusus per medullas descendere. Venis itaque
the-breath shut-off through the-marrows to-descend with-veins therefore
patefactis aperuit oculos et recipiens spiritum, quem iam
opened she-opened her-eyes and recovering the-breath which now
perdiderat, leni et balbutienti sermone ait ‘rogo, ne me
she-had-lost with-gentle and stammering speech says I-ask that me
aliter contingatis, quam contingi oportet regis filiam et
otherwise you-not-touch than to-be-touched it-befits of-a-king the-daughter and
regis uxorem.’ Iuuenis ut uidit, quod per artem fecerat
of-a-king the-wife the-youth when saw what by his-art he-had-done
quae magistrum fallebant, gaudio plenus uadit ad magistrum
which the-master had-deceived with-joy full goes to the-master
et dicit ‘magister, accipe discipuli tui apodeixin.’ Et introiuit
and says master receive of-pupil your the-demonstration and entered
cubiculum iuuenis et uidit puellam uiuam, quam putauerat
the-room the-youth and saw the-girl alive whom he-had-thought
mortuam. Et respiciens discipulum ait ‘amo curam, probo
dead and looking-at the-pupil he-says I-love your-care I-approve

prouidentiam, laudo diligentiam. Et audi, discipule: ne te
your-foresight I-praise your-diligence and hear pupil lest you
artis beneficium aestimes perdidisse, accipe pecuniam. Haec
of-your-art the-kindness think to-have-lost take money this
enim puella mercedem contulit secum.' Et iussit puellam
for girl the-fee brought with-herself and he-ordered the-girl
salubrioribus cibis et fomentis recreari. Et post paucos
with-healthier foods and poultices to-be-restored and after few
dies, ut cognouit eam regio genere ortam, adhibitis amicis
days when he-learned her of-royal stock sprung with-called friends
adoptauit eam sibi filiam. Et rogante cum lacrimis,
he-adopted her to-himself as-daughter and with-her-asking with tears
ne ab aliquo contingeretur, inter sacerdotes Dianae feminas
lest by anyone she-be-touched among the-priestesses of-Diana women
fulsit, ubi omni genere castitatis inuiolabiliter seruabatur.
she-shone where with-every kind of-chastity inviolably she-was-kept
Interea Apollonius dum nauigat cum ingenti luctu, 28
meanwhile Apollonius while he-sails with huge grief
gubernante deo applicuit Tarso, descendit ratem, petit domum
with-steering god put-in at-Tarsus he-leaves the-ship seeks the-house
Stranguillionis et Dionysiadis; quos cum salutasset, casus
of-Stranguillio and of-Dionysias whom when he-had-greeted misfortunes
suos omnes exposuit. At illi dolentes quantum in amissam
his all he-set-forth but they grieving as-much-as for the-lost
coniugem deflent iuueni, tantum in reseruatam sibi
wife they-lament for-the-youth so-much for the-kept for-him
filiam gratulantur. Apollonius intuens Stranguillionem et
daughter they-rejoice Apollonius gazing-at Stranguillio and
Dionysiadem ait 'sanctissimi hospites, quoniam post amissam
Dionysias says most-holy hosts since after the-loss-of
coniugem caram mihi seruatum regnum accipere nolo
wife dear for-me the-kept kingdom to-receive I-do-not-want

neque ad socerum reuerti, cuius in mari perdidi filiam,
nor to my-father-in-law to-return whose in the-sea I-lost the-daughter
sed potius opera mercaturus, commendo uobis filiam meam,
but rather in-the-work going-to-trade I-entrust to-you daughter my
ut cum filia uestra Philotimiade mihi nutriatur. Quam
that with daughter your Philotimias for-me she-may-be-reared whom
ut bono et simplici animo suscipiatis, patriae uestrae
that with-good and simple mind you-may-take-up from-country your
nomine cognominetis Tharsiam. Praeter eam nutricem uxoris
by-name you-name Tharsia besides her the-nurse of-wife
meae Lycoridem, quae cura sua custodiat puellam, uobis
my Lycoris who with-care her may-guard the-girl to-you
relinquo.' Haec ut dixit, tradidit infantem, dedit aurum
I-leave these-things when he-said he-handed-over the-infant gave gold
multum et argentum et uestes pretiosissimas et iurauit se
much and silver and clothes most-precious and swore himself
barbam et capillos et ungues non dempturum, nisi filiam
beard and hair and nails not going-to-cut unless daughter
suam nuptam tradidisset. Et illi stupentes, quod tam graui
his married he-had-given and they astonished that so heavy
iuramento se obligasset, cum magna fide se puellam
by-an-oath himself he-had-bound with great faith themselves the-girl
educaturos promiserunt. Tunc Apollonius commendata filia
going-to-raise promised then Apollonius with-entrusted daughter
nauem ascendit ignotus et longas petiit Aegypti regiones.
the-ship boarded unknown and long sought of-Egypt regions
29 Interea puella Tharsia facta est quinquennis, mittitur in
meanwhile the-girl Tharsia made was five-years-old is-sent to
scolam, deinde studiis liberalibus. Cum ad XIIII uenisset
school then to-studies liberal when to fourteen she-had-come
aetatem, reuersa de auditorio inuenit nutricem suam
years having-returned from the-lecture-room she-found nurse her

Lycoridem subitaneam aegritudinem incurrisse, et sedens
Lycoris a-sudden sickness to-have-fallen-into and sitting
iuxta eam super torum, casus infirmitatis exquirit. Cui
beside her on the-couch the-causes of-the-illness she-inquires to-whom
nutrix ait 'audi, domina, morientis ancillae tuae uerba
the-nurse says hear mistress of-dying handmaid your the-words
suprema et pectori commenda' et dixit 'domina Tharsia,
last and to-your-heart commit-them and she-said mistress Tharsia
quem tibi patrem, quam matrem uel quam patriam
whom for-you as-father whom as-mother or what as-country
putas?' Puella ait 'patriam Tarsum, Stranguillionem patrem,
do-you-think the-girl says as-country Tarsus Stranguillio as-father
Dionysiadem matrem.' Nutrix ingemuit et ait 'audi, domina,
Dionysias as-mother the-nurse groaned and says hear mistress
natalium tuorum originem, ut scias, quid post mortem
of-births your the-origin that you-may-know what after death
meam agere debeas. Est tibi senelo patria, Apollonius
my to-do you-ought there-is for-you (obscure) a-homeland Apollonius
pater, mater Archistratis, regis Archistratis filia, quae
a-father the-mother Archistratis of-king Archistrates the-daughter who
cum te enixa est, statim secundis sursum redeuntibus
when you brought-forth has at-once with-the-afterbirth upward returning
praeclusoque spiritu ultimum uitae finiuit diem. Quam pater
and-with-shut-off breath the-last of-life she-ended day whom father
tuus Apollonius effecto loculo cum ornamentis regalibus
your Apollonius with-made coffin with ornaments royal
et uiginti sestertiis in mare misit, ut ubicumque fuisset
and twenty sesterces into the-sea sent that wherever she-had-been
elata, haberet in supremis exequias funeris sui. Quo
carried-out she-might-have at the-last the-rites of-funeral her-own whither
itaque sit elata, ipsa sibi testis erit. Nam rex
therefore she-has been-borne she-herself to-herself witness will-be for king

Apollonius pater tuus, amissam coniugem lugens, te in
Apollonius father your the-lost wife mourning you in
cunabulis posita, tui tantum solacio recreatus, adplicuit
the-cradle placed of-you only by-the-comfort refreshed put-in
Tarso, commendauit te mecum cum magna pecunia et ueste
at-Tarsus entrusted you with-me with great money and clothing
copiosa Stranguillioni et Dionysiadi hospitibus suis, uotumque
plentiful to-Stranguillio and to-Dionysias hosts his and-a-vow
fecit barbam, capillum neque ungues dempturum, nisi te
made beard hair nor nails going-to-cut unless you
prius nuptum tradidisset, et cum suis ascendit ratem et ad
first married he-had-given and with his-men boarded ship and until
nubiles tuos annos ad uota persoluenda non remeabit. Sed
marriageable your years to the-vows to-be-fulfilled not will-return but
nec pater tuus, qui tanto tempore moras in redeundo facit
not-even father your who for-so-long a-time delays in returning makes
nec scripsit nec salutis suae nuntium misit, forsitan periit.
nor has-written nor of-safety his a-message has-sent perhaps he-has-perished
Et ne casu hospites tui, quos tu parentes appellas, aliquam
and lest by-chance hosts your whom you parents call any
tibi iniuriam faciant, perueni ad forum: ibi inuenies
to-you injury do go to the-forum there you-will-find
statuam patris tui in biga. Ascende, statuam ipsius
the-statue of-father your in a-chariot climb the-statue of-him-himself
comprehende et casus tuos omnes expone. Ciues uero
grasp-it and misfortunes your all set-forth the-citizens indeed
memores patris tui beneficiorum iniuriam tuam uindicabunt.'
mindful of-father your of-the-kindnesses the-injury your will-avenge
30 Puella ait 'cara nutrix, si prius senectae tuae naturaliter
the-girl says dear nurse if before old-age your naturally
accidisset quam haec mihi referres, ego originem natalium
it-had-happened than these-things to-me you-told I the-origin of-births

meorum nescissem!' Et dum haec dicit, nutrix in
my would-not-have-known and while these-things she-says the-nurse in
gremio puellae deposuit spiritum. Exclamauit uirgo, cucurrit
the-lap of-the-girl laid-down her-breath cried-out the-maiden ran
familia. Corpus nutricis sepelitur et iubente Tharsia in
the-household the-body of-the-nurse is-buried and with-ordering Tharsia on
litore illi monumentum fabricatum est. Et post paucos dies
the-shore for-her a-monument built was and after few days
puella rediit in studiis suis, et reuersa de auditorio
the-girl returned to studies her and having-returned from the-lecture-room
non prius cibum sumebat, nisi nutricis suae monumentum
not before food she-took unless of-nurse her the-monument
introiret et casus suos omnes exponeret et fleret.
she-entered and misfortunes her all set-forth and wept
Dum haec aguntur, quodam die feriato Dionysias cum 31
while these-things are-done on-a-certain day festal Dionysias with
filia sua et cum Tharsia per publicum transibat.
daughter her and with Tharsia through the-public-street was-passing
Videntes Tharsiae speciem et ornamentum ciues et omnes
seeing of-Tharsia the-beauty and finery the-citizens and all
honorati dicebant 'felix pater, cuius filia es; ista
the-honored-men said happy the-father whose daughter you-are this
autem quae haeret lateri tuo, turpis est et dedecus est.'
but who clings to-side your ugly is and a-disgrace is
Dionysias ut audiuit filiam suam uituperari, conuersa in
Dionysias when she-heard daughter her to-be-disparaged turned into
furorem secum cogitans ait 'pater eius ex quo profectus
fury with-herself pondering says father her from when set-out
est, habet annos quindecim, et non uenit ad recipiendam
he-has it-has years fifteen and not has-come for receiving
filiam. Credo, mortuus est aut in pelago periit. Et nutrix
the-daughter I-believe dead he-is or in the-sea has-perished and the-nurse

decessit. Aemulum nullum habeo. Tollam eam de medio
has-died a-rival none I-have I-will-remove her from the-middle
et ornamentis eius filiam meam exornabo.' Et iussit uenire
and with-ornaments her daughter my I-will-adorn and she-ordered to-come
uilicum de suburbano, cui ait 'Theophile, si cupis
the-bailiff from the-suburban-estate to-whom she-says Theophilus if you-desire
libertatem, Tharsiam tolle de medio.' Vilicus ait 'quid enim
freedom Tharsia remove from the-middle the-bailiff says what for
peccauit innocens uirgo?' Scelerata dixit 'negare non potes;
has-sinned the-innocent maiden wicked-woman she-said to-deny not you-can
fac quod iubeo. Sin alias, senties me iratam. Interfice eam
do what I-order but-if otherwise you-will-feel me angry kill her
et mitte corpus eius in mare. Et cum nuntiaueris factum,
and send body her into the-sea and when you-have-reported it-done
praemium libertatem accipies.' Vilicus licet spe libertatis
as-reward freedom you-will-receive the-bailiff though by-the-hope of-freedom
seductus tamen cum dolore discessit et pugionem acutissimum
led-astray yet with grief departed and a-dagger most-sharp
praeparauit et abiit post nutricis Tharsiae monumentum. Et
prepared and went behind of-the-nurse of-Tharsia the-monument and
puella rediens de studiis solito more tollit ampullam uini
the-girl returning from studies in-accustomed manner takes a-flask of-wine
et coronam et uenit ad monumentum casus suos exponere.
and a-garland and comes to the-monument misfortunes her to-set-forth
Vilicus impetu facto auersae puellae crines apprehendit
the-bailiff with-an-attack made of-the-turned-away girl the-hair seized
et traxit ad litus. Et dum uellet interficere eam, puella
and dragged-her to the-shore and while he-wished to-kill her the-girl
ait 'Theophile, quid peccaui, ut tua manu moriar?'
says Theophilus what have-I-done-wrong that by-your hand I-should-die
Vilicus ait 'tu nihil peccasti, sed pater tuus Apollonius,
the-bailiff says you nothing have-done-wrong but father your Apollonius

qui tecum magnam pecuniam et ornamenta dereliquit.'
who with-you great money and ornaments left
Puella cum lacrimis ait 'peto, domine, quia iam nulla spes
the-girl with tears says I-beg lord since now no hope
est uitae meae, deum mihi testari permittas.' Vilicus ait
is of-life my god for-me to-call-to-witness you-allow the-bailiff says
'testare. Et deus scit, coactum me hoc facturum scelus.'
call-to-witness and god knows forced me this going-to-do crime

IV · THARSIA AMONG THE PIRATES

As the bailiff is about to kill Tharsia at the nurse's tomb, pirates carry her off. He reports her dead, Dionysias feigns mourning, and Tarsus raises her a monument. At Mitylene the pimp outbids Athenagoras for her. She persuades every client, Athenagoras first, to spare her, then earns by her lyre and her answers. Years later Apollonius returns to Tarsus, sees her tomb, and sails in despair; a storm drives him to Mitylene, where Athenagoras boards and asks for him.

Et cum puella deum deprecaretur, subito piratae apparuerunt 32
and when the-girl god was-entreating suddenly pirates appeared
et uidentes puellam sub iugo mortis stare exclamauerunt
and seeing the-girl under the-yoke of-death stand cried-out
'crudelissime barbare, parce! tibi dicimus, qui ferrum tenes!
most-cruel barbarian spare to-you we-say who the-sword hold
Haec enim praeda nostra est, non tua uictima.' Vilicus uoce
this for booty ours is not your victim the-bailiff by-the-voice
piratae territus fugit post monumentum. Piratae applicantes
of-the-pirate terrified fled behind the-monument the-pirates putting-in
ad litus tulerunt uirginem et altum pelagus petierunt. Vilicus
to the-shore carried-off the-maiden and the-deep sea sought the-bailiff
post moram exiit et uidens puellam raptam a morte
after a-delay came-out and seeing the-girl snatched from death

egit deo gratias, quod non fecisset scelus, et reuersus
gave to-god thanks that not he-had-done the-crime and having-returned
ad sceleratam ait 'quod praecepisti, domina, factum est:
to the-wicked-woman he-says what you-commanded mistress done has-been
comple quod promisisti.' Scelerata ait 'quid narras, latro
fulfill what you-promised the-wicked-woman says what are-you-saying robber
ultime? Homicidium fecisti et libertatem petis? Repete
utmost a-murder you-have-done and freedom you-seek go-back
ad uillam et opus tuum fac, ne iratum deum et dominum
to the-villa and work your do lest angry god and master
tuum sentias.' Vilicus aporiatus ibat et leuans manus suas ad
your you-feel the-bailiff at-a-loss went and raising hands his to
Dominum dixit 'deus, tu scis, quod non feci scelus. Esto iudex.'
the-Lord said god you know that not I-did the-crime be judge
Et reuersus est ad uillam. Postera die prima luce scelerata,
and returned he-has to the-villa on-the-next day at-first light the-wicked-woman
ut admissum facinus insidiosa fraude celaret, famulos
that the-committed crime by-treacherous fraud she-might-hide servants
misit ad conuocandos amicos et patriae principes. Qui
sent for calling-together friends and of-the-country the-leading-men who
conuenientes consederunt. Tunc scelerata lugubres uestes
assembling sat-down then the-wicked-woman mourning clothes
induta, laniatis crinibus, nudo et liuido pectore adfirmans
having-put-on with-torn hair with-bare and bruised breast showing
dolorem exiit de cubiculo. Fictas fundens lacrimas ait 'amici
grief came-out from the-bedroom feigned pouring tears says friends
fideles, scitote Tharsiam Apollonii filiam hesterna die
faithful know-ye Tharsia of-Apollonius the-daughter on-yesterday's day
stomachi dolore subito in uilla suburbana esse defunctam
by-pain of-the-stomach suddenly in the-villa suburban to-have died
meque eam honestissimo funere extulisse.' Patriae
and-me her with-a-most-honorable funeral to-have-buried of-the-country

principes adfirmatione sermonis ex habitu lugubri fallacibus
the-leading-men by-the-assurance of-her-speech by her-dress mourning by-false
lacrimis seducti crediderunt. Postera die placuit uniuersis
tears led-astray believed-it on-the-next day it-pleased all
patriae principibus ob meritum Apollonii filiae eius
of-the-country leading-men on-account-of the-merit of-Apollonius for-daughter his
in litore fieri monumentum ex aere conlato non longe
on the-shore to-be-made a-monument from money collected not far
a monumento Lycoridis inscriptum in titulo 'THARSIAE
from the-monument of-Lycoris inscribed in the-title to-Tharsia
VIRGINI APOLLONII FILIAE OB BENEFICIA EIUS
maiden of-Apollonius daughter on-account-of kindnesses his
EX AERE CONLATO DONUM DEDERUNT.'
from money collected as-a-gift they-gave
Interea piratae, qui Tharsiam rapuerunt, in ciuitate Mitylena 33
meanwhile the-pirates who Tharsia had-seized in the-city Mitylene
deponunt et uenalem inter cetera mancipia proponunt.
put-her-down and for-sale among the-other slaves offer-her
Et uidens eam leno Ninus nomine cupidissimus et
and seeing her a-pimp Ninus by-name most-greedy and
locupletissimus nec uir nec femina contendere coepit ut
most-wealthy neither man nor woman to-bid began that
eam emeret. Et Athenagora princeps ciuitatis eiusdem
her he-might-buy and Athenagoras the-prince of-city the-same
intellegens nobilem et sapientem pulcherrimam puellam,
understanding noble and wise most-beautiful girl
obtulit decem sestertia. Leno ait 'ego XX dabo.' Athenagora
offered ten sestertia the-pimp says I twenty will-give Athenagoras
obtulit XXX, leno XL. Athenagora obtulit LX, leno
offered thirty the-pimp forty Athenagoras offered sixty the-pimp
LXXX. Athenagora obtulit LXXXX, leno in praesenti dat
eighty Athenagoras offered ninety the-pimp in the-present gives

C dicens ‘si quis amplius dederit, ego decem sestertia
a-hundred saying if anyone more gives I ten sestertia
superdabo.’ Athenagora ait ‘ego si cum lenone contendero,
will-give-over Athenagoras says I if with the-pimp I-contend
ut eam emam, plures uenditurus sum. Sed permittam eam
that her I-buy more-girls going-to-sell I-am but I-will-allow her
emere, et cum in lupanar constituerit, ego intrabo prior et
to-buy and when in a-brothel he-has-set-her I will-enter first and
eripiam uirginitatem eius et erit ac si eam comparauerim.’
will-snatch the-virginity her and it-will-be as if her I-had-bought
Addicitur puella lenoni, numeratur pecunia, ducitur in
is-knocked-down the-girl to-the-pimp is-counted the-money she-is-led into
domum. Ducitur in salutatorium, ubi Priapum aureum habebat
the-house she-is-led into the-reception-room where a-Priapus golden he-had
et gemmis et unionibus decoratum, et ait ad Tharsiam
both with-gems and with-pearls adorned and he-says to Tharsia
‘adora numen praesentissimum.’ Puella ait ‘domine, numquid
worship the-divinity most-present the-girl says lord surely-not
ciuis Lampsacenus es?’ Leno ait ‘quare?’ Puella ait ‘quia
a-citizen of-Lampsacus you-are the-pimp says why the-girl says because
ciues Lampsaceni Priapum colunt.’ Leno ait ‘ignoras,
the-citizens of-Lampsacus Priapus worship the-pimp says do-you-not-know
misera, quia in domum incidisti lenonis auari.’ Puella ut
wretch that into the-house you-have-fallen of-a-pimp greedy the-girl when
audiuit, toto corpore contremuit et prostrata pedibus eius
she-heard with-whole body trembled and prostrate at-the-feet his
dixit ‘miserere, domine, succurre uirginitati meae! Et rogo, ut
said pity lord help virginity my and I-ask that
ne uelis hoc corpus sub tam turpi titulo prostituere.’ Leno
not you-wish this body under so foul a-title to-prostitute the-pimp
ait ‘alleua te, misera. Nescis, quia apud tortorem et
says raise yourself wretch do-you-not-know that with a-torturer and

lenonem nec preces nec lacrimae ualent.' Et uocauit uilicum
a-pimp neither prayers nor tears avail and he-called the-overseer
puellarum et ait 'Amiante, cella, ubi Briseis stat, exornetur
of-the-girls and says Amiantus the-cell where Briseis stands let-it-be-adorned
diligenter, et titulus scribatur: Qui Tharsiam uiolare uoluerit,
carefully and a-title let-be-written whoever Tharsia to-violate shall-wish
libram auri mediam dabit. Postea singulis aureis populo
a-pound of-gold half will-give afterward for-single gold-pieces to-the-people
patebit.' Et fecit uilicus quod iusserat dominus eius.
she-will-be-open and did the-overseer what had-ordered master his
Tertia die antecedente turba et symphonia ducitur ad 34
on-the-third day with-preceding a-crowd and music she-is-led to
lupanar. Athenagora prior adfuit et uelato capite lupanar
the-brothel Athenagoras first was-there and with-veiled head the-brothel
ingreditur. Intrauit cellam et sedit in lectum puellae. Puella
enters he-entered the-cell and sat on the-bed of-the-girl the-girl
ex demonstrato ostium clausit et procidens ad pedes eius
by the-shown the-door shut and falling to the-feet his
ait 'miserere, domine! per iuuentutem tuam et per deum te
says pity lord by youth your and by god you
adiuro, ne uelis me sub hoc titulo humiliare. Contine
I-adjure that-not you-wish me under this title to-humble restrain
inpudicam libidinem tuam et casus infelicissimae uirginis
shameless lust your and the-misfortunes of-a-most-unhappy maiden
audi et natalium meorum originem.' Cui cum uniuersos
hear and of-births my the-origin to-whom when all
casus suos exposuisset, princeps confusus et pietate plenus
misfortunes her she-had-set-forth the-prince confounded and with-pity full
abstinuit et ait 'erige te. Scimus temporum uices. Homines
abstained and says raise yourself we-know of-times the-changes men
sumus. Habeo et ego ex amissa coniuge filiam bimulam,
we-are I-have also I from a-lost wife a-daughter two-years-old

de qua simili casu possum metuere.' Et dedit quadraginta
about whom by-a-like chance I-can fear and he-gave forty
aureos in manum uirginis dicens 'domina Tharsia, ecce
gold-pieces into the-hand of-the-maiden saying mistress Tharsia behold
habes amplius quam uirginitas tua uenalis proposita est. De
you-have more than virginity your for-sale offered is from
aduenientibus age precibus similiter, quousque libereris.' Puella
those-coming do with-prayers likewise until you-are-freed the-girl
profusis lacrimis ait 'ago, domine, pietati tuae gratias.
with-poured-forth tears says I-give lord to-piety your thanks
Rogo, ne cui narres, quae a me audisti.' Athenagora
I-ask that-not to-anyone you-tell what from me you-have-heard Athenagoras
ait 'si narrauero, filia mea cum ad tuam uenerit aetatem
says if I-tell-it daughter my when to your she-comes age
patiatur similem poenam.' Et cum lacrimis discessit. Occurrit
may-she-suffer a-like penalty and with tears he-departed met
illi discipulus suus et ait 'quomodo tecum?' Athenagora
him a-pupil his and says how with-you Athenagoras
ait 'non potest melius; cum magno ergo effectu usque ad
says not can-be better with great then effect even to
lacrimas.' Et secutus est eum ad uidendum eius exitum.
tears and followed he-has him for seeing his outcome
Iuuenis ut intrauit, puella solito more ostium
the-young-man when he-entered the-girl in-the-accustomed manner the-door
clausit. Cui iuuenis 'si ualeas, indica mihi, quantum
shut to-whom the-young-man if you-are-well tell me how-much
tibi dedit iuuenis, qui ad te intrauit?' Puella ait 'quater
to-you gave the-young-man who to you entered the-girl says four-times
denos aureos dedit mihi.' Iuuenis ait 'non illum puduit?
ten gold-pieces gave to-me the-young-man says not him shamed-it
homo diues est; quid grande fecerat, si libram auri tibi
the-man rich is what great-thing had-he-done if a-pound of-gold for-you

complesset? Et ut scias, me animo esse meliori, tolle
he-had-filled-up and that you-may-know me in-mind to-be better take
libram auri integram.' Athenagora foris audiebat et dicebat
a-pound of-gold whole Athenagoras outside was-listening and said
'plus dabis, plus plorabis!' Puella ut acceptis aureis
more you-will-give more you-will-weep the-girl when with-received gold-pieces
prostrauit se ad pedes eius et similiter exposuit casus
prostrated herself at the-feet his and likewise set-forth misfortunes
suos, confudit hominem et auertit libidinem. Et aporiatus
her confounded the-man and turned-away his-lust and at-a-loss
iuuenis ait 'alleua te, domina! Et nos homines sumus.
the-young-man says raise yourself mistress also we men are
Casibus subiacemus.' Puella ait 'ago, domine, pietati tuae
to-misfortunes we-are-subject the-girl says I-give lord to-piety your
gratias et peto, ne cui narres, quae a me audisti.'
thanks and I-ask that-not to-anyone you-tell what from me you-have-heard
Et exiens iuuenis inuenit Athenagoram ridentem et ait 35
and going-out the-young-man found Athenagoras laughing and says
illi 'magnus homo es! non habuisti cui lacrimas tuas
to-him a-great man you-are not have-you-had to-whom tears your
propinares!' Et adiurati, ne cui proderent, tacentes aliorum
you-might-pledge and sworn lest to-anyone they-betray-it silent of-the-others
coeperunt exitum expectare. Et insidiantibus illis per
they-began the-outcome to-await and with-lying-in-wait them through
occultum aspectum, omnes qui intrabant dantes singulos aureos
a-hidden view all who entered giving single gold-pieces
plorantes abscedebant. Facta autem huius rei fine obtulit
weeping went-away with-made but of-this matter an-end offered
puella pecuniam lenoni dicens 'ecce pretium uirginitatis
the-girl the-money to-the-pimp saying behold the-price of-virginity
meae.' Et ait ad eam leno 'quantum melius est, hilarem te
my and says to her the-pimp how-much better it-is cheerful you

esse et non lugentem! Sic ergo age ut quotidie mihi latiores
to-be and not mourning so then act that daily to-me more-ample
pecunias adferas.' Item ait ad eum altera die 'ecce pretium
monies you-bring likewise she-says to him on-another day behold the-price
uirginitatis meae, quod similiter precibus et lacrimis collegi,
of-virginity my which likewise by-prayers and tears I-gathered
et custodio uirginitatem meam.' Hoc audito iratus est leno
and I-keep virginity my with-this heard angry was the-pimp
eo quod uirginitatem suam seruaret, et uocat ad se
for-this that virginity her she-was-keeping and he-calls to himself
uilicum puellarum et ait ad eum 'sic te tam neglegentem
the-overseer of-the-girls and says to him thus you so negligent
esse uideo, ut nescias Tharsiam uirginem esse? Si enim
to-be I-see that you-do-not-know Tharsia a-virgin to-be if for
uirgo tantum adfert, quantum dabit mulier? Duc eam ad
a-virgin so-much brings how-much will-give a-woman take her to
te et tu eripe nodum uirginitatis eius.' Statim eam
yourself and you snatch-away the-knot of-virginity her at-once her
uilicus duxit in suum cubiculum et ait ad eam 'uerum mihi
the-overseer led into his bedroom and says to her the-truth to-me
dic, Tharsia, adhuc uirgo es?' Tharsia puella ait 'quamdiu
tell Tharsia still a-virgin are-you Tharsia the-girl says as-long-as
uult deus, uirgo sum.' Vilicus ait 'unde ergo his duobus
wills god a-virgin I-am the-overseer says whence then in-these two
diebus tantam pecuniam obtulisti?' Puella dixit 'lacrimis meis,
days so-much money have-you-offered the-girl said with-tears my
exponens ad omnes uniuersos casus meos; et illi dolentes
setting-forth to all universally misfortunes my and they grieving
miserentur uirginitati meae' et prostrauit se ad pedes eius
take-pity on-virginity my and she-prostrated herself at the-feet his
et ait 'miserere mei, domine, subueni captiuae regis filiae;
and says pity me lord help a-captive of-a-king daughter

ne me uelis uiolare!' Et cum ei uniuersos casus
that-not me you-wish to-violate and when to-him all misfortunes
suos exposuisset, motus misericordia ait ad eam 'nimis
her she-had-set-forth moved by-pity he-says to her very
auarus est iste leno; nescio si tu possis uirgo permanere.'
greedy is this pimp I-do-not-know if you can a-virgin remain
Puella respondit 'habeo auxilium studiorum liberalium, perfecte 36
the-girl answered I-have the-help of-studies liberal perfectly
erudita sum; similiter et lyrae pulsu modulante inlidor.
instructed I-am likewise also of-the-lyre in-striking measured I-strike
Iube crastina in frequenti loco poni scamna, et facundia
order tomorrow in a-crowded place to-be-set benches and with-the-eloquence
sermonis mei spectaculum praebebo; et casus meos
of-speech my a-show I-will-offer and misfortunes my
omnes exponam; quoscunque nodos quaestionum proposuerint
all I-will-set-forth whatever knots of-questions they-set-forth
exsoluam; deinde plectro modulabor et hac arte ampliabo
I-will-untie then with-the-plectrum I-will-play and by-this art I-will-increase
pecunias quotidie.' Quod cum fecisset uilicus, tanta populi
the-monies daily which when had-done the-overseer such of-the-people
adclamatio tantusque amor ciuitatis circa eam excrebuit,
acclaim and-such love of-the-city around her grew
ut et uiri et feminae quotidie ei multa conferrent.
that both men and women daily on-her much conferred
Athenagora autem princeps memoratam Tharsiam integrae
Athenagoras but the-prince the-said Tharsia of-whole
uirginitatis et generositatis ita custodiebat ac si unicam suam
virginity and nobility so guarded as if only his
filiam, ita ut uilico multa donaret et commendaret eam.
daughter so that to-the-overseer much he-gave and commended her

37 Et cum haec Mitylenae aguntur, uenit Apollonius post
and while these-things at-Mitylene are-done comes Apollonius after
quattuordecim annos ad ciuitatem Tarsiam ad domum
fourteen years to the-city Tarsus to the-house
Stranguillionis et Dionysiadis. Quem uidens Stranguillio de
of-Stranguillio and of-Dionysias whom seeing Stranguillio from
longe perrexit cursu rapidissimo ad uxorem suam dicens
afar went in-a-course most-rapid to wife his saying
ei 'certe dixeras Apollonium perisse naufragum.' Illa
to-her surely you-had-said Apollonius to-have-perished shipwrecked she
respondit 'dixi certe.' Stranguillio ait 'crudelis exempli
answered I-said-so surely Stranguillio says of-cruel example
pessima mulier, ecce uenit ad repetendam filiam. Quid
worst woman behold he-comes for reclaiming his-daughter what
dicturi sumus patri de filia, cuius nos fuimus
going-to-say are-we to-the-father about the-daughter of-whom we were
parentes?' Scelerata mulier hoc audito toto corpore
the-parents the-wicked woman with-this heard with-whole body
contremuit et ait 'miserere,' et dixit 'coniunx, tibi
trembled and says pity and she-said husband to-you
confiteor: dum nostram diligo, alienam perdidi filiam.
I-confess while ours I-love another's I-have-destroyed daughter
Nunc ergo ad praesens indue uestes lugubres et fictas
now then for the-present put-on clothes mourning and false
fundamus lacrimas, et dicamus eam subito dolore stomachi
let-us-pour tears and let-us-say her by-sudden pain of-the-stomach
interisse. Qui cum nos tali habitu uiderit, credet.' Dum
to-have-died who when us in-such dress he-has-seen will-believe while
haec aguntur, intrat Apollonius domum Stranguillionis,
these-things are-done enters Apollonius the-house of-Stranguillio
releuat caput, a fronte comam aperit, hispidam ab
raises his-head from his-forehead the-hair he-opens the-shaggy from

ore remouit barbam. Ut uidit eos in lugubri ueste, ait
his-mouth he-removed beard when he-saw them in mourning dress he-says
'hospites fidelissimi, si tamen in uobis hoc nomen permanet,
hosts most-faithful if yet in you this name remains
ut quid in aduentu meo largas effunditis lacrimas? ne forte
to what in the-arrival my copious do-you-pour-out tears lest perhaps
istae lacrimae non sint uestrae sed meae propriae?' Scelerata
these tears not be yours but mine own the-wicked
mulier ait cum lacrimis 'utinam quidem istum nuntium
woman says with tears would-that indeed this news
alius ad aures uestras referret, set non ego aut coniux
another to ears your should-bring but not I or husband
meus! Nam scito Tharsiam filiam tuam a nobis subitaneo
my for know Tharsia daughter your with us by-sudden
dolore stomachi fuisse defunctam.' Apollonius ut audiuit,
pain of-the-stomach to-have-been dead Apollonius when he-heard
tremebundus toto corpore expalluit diuque maestus constitit.
trembling in-whole body grew-pale and-long sad stood
Sed postquam recepit spiritum, intuens mulierem sic ait
but after he-recovered his-breath gazing-at the-woman thus he-says
'Dionysias, Tharsia filia mea ante paucos dies decessit;
Dionysias Tharsia daughter my before few days died
numquid aut pecunia aut ornamenta aut uestes perierunt?'
surely-not either the-money or ornaments or clothes have-perished
Scelerata mulier haec eo dicente secundum pactum 38
the-wicked woman these-things with-him saying according-to the-pact
ferens atque reddens omnia sic ait 'crede nobis quia, si genesis
bringing and returning all-things thus says believe us that if fate
permisisset, sicut haec omnia damus, ita et filiam tibi
had-permitted as these all-things we-give so also the-daughter to-you
reddidissemus. Et ut scias nos non mentiri, habemus
we-would-have-returned and that you-may-know us not to-lie we-have

huius rei testimonium ciuium, qui memores beneficiorum
of-this thing the-witness of-the-citizens who mindful of-kindnesses
tuorum ex aere collato filiae tuae monumentum fecerunt,
your from money collected for-daughter your a-monument have-made
quod potest tua pietas uidere.' Apollonius uero credens
which can your piety see Apollonius but believing
eam uere esse defunctam ait ad famulos suos 'tollite haec
her truly to-be dead says to servants his take-up these
omnia et ferte ad nauem; ego enim uado ad filiae meae
all-things and carry to the-ship I for go to of-daughter my
monumentum;' ad quod ubi uenit, titulum legit: D.
the-monument to which when he-came the-title he-read to-the-gods
M. CIUES TARSI THARSIAE UIRGINI APOLLONII
the-shades the-citizens of-Tarsus to-Tharsia maiden of-Apollonius
TYRII FILIAE OB BENEFICIUM EIUS PIETATIS
Tyrian daughter on-account-of kindness her of-piety
CAUSA EX AERE COLLATO FECERUNT. Perlecto
for-the-sake from money collected made-it with-read-through
titulo stupenti mente constitit. Et dum miratur se lacrimas
title with-stunned mind he-stood and while he-wonders himself tears
non posse fundere, maledixit oculos suos dicens 'o crudeles
not to-be-able to-pour he-cursed eyes his saying o cruel
oculi, titulum natae meae cernitis et lacrimas fundere non
eyes the-title of-daughter my you-see and tears to-pour not
potestis! O me miserum! Puto, filia mea uiuit.' Et haec
you-can o me wretched I-think daughter my lives and these-things
dicens rediit ad nauem atque ita suos allocutus est
saying he-returned to the-ship and thus his-men addressed he-has
dicens 'proicite me in subsannio nauis; cupio enim in undis
saying throw me into the-hold of-the-ship I-desire for in the-waves
efflare spiritum, quem in terris non licuit lumen habere.'
to-breathe-out the-breath which on land not was-allowed the-light to-have

Et proiciens se in subsannio nauis sublatis ancoris altum 39
and throwing himself into the-hold of-the-ship with-raised anchors the-deep
pelagum petiit iam ad Tyrum reuersurus. Qui dum prosperis
sea sought now to Tyre going-to-return who while with-favorable
uentis nauigat, subito mutata est pelagi fides, per diuersa
winds he-sails suddenly changed has of-the-sea the-faith through various
discrimina maris iactantur, omnibus deum rogantibus ad
perils of-the-sea they-are-tossed with-all god entreating to
Mitylenam ciuitatem aduenerunt. Ibi Neptunalia festa
Mitylene city they-came there the-Neptunalia festival-days
celebrantur. Quod cum cognouisset Apollonius, ingemuit et
are-celebrated which when had-learned Apollonius he-groaned and
ait 'ergo omnes diem festum celebrent praeter me.' Et
says then all the-day festal let-them-celebrate except me and
uocauit dispensatorem suum et ait 'sed ne lugens et auarus
he-called steward his and says but lest mourning and greedy
uidear — sufficiat enim seruis meis poena, quod me tam
I-seem let-it-suffice for slaves my as-punishment that me so
infelicem sortiti sunt dominum, — dona centum aureos
unhappy drawn they-have as-master give a-hundred gold-pieces
pueris, et emant sibi quae uolunt et diem festum
to-the-boys and let-them-buy for-themselves what they-wish and the-day festal
celebrent. Me autem ueto a quoquam appellari; quod
let-them-celebrate me but I-forbid by anyone to-be-addressed but
si quis fecerit, crura illius frangere iubebo.' Dispensator
if anyone does-it the-legs his to-break I-will-order the-steward
emit quae necessaria erant, et dum epulantur, Athenagora,
bought what necessary were and while they-feast Athenagoras
qui Tharsiam ut filiam diligebat, deambulans et nauium
who Tharsia as a-daughter loved walking-about and of-the-ships
celebritatem considerans, uidit nauem Apollonii ceteris
the-throng surveying saw the-ship of-Apollonius than-the-other

nauibus pulchriorem et ornatiorem et ait ‘amici, ecce illa
ships more-beautiful and more-adorned and says friends behold that-one
mihi maxime placet, quam uideo esse separatam.’ Nautae ut
me most pleases which I-see to-be set-apart the-sailors when
audierunt nauem suam laudari, dicunt ‘inuitemus principem;
they-heard ship their to-be-praised say let-us-invite the-prince
magnifice, si digneris, descende ad nos.’ Athenagora descendit,
magnificent-one if you-deign come-down to us Athenagoras came-down
libenti animo discubuit et posuit decem aureos in
with-willing mind reclined and placed ten gold-pieces on
mensa dicens ‘ecce, ne me gratis inuitaueritis.’ Omnes
the-table saying behold lest me free you-may-have-invited all
dixerunt ‘bene nos accipies, domine.’ Athenagora uidens
said well us you-will-receive lord Athenagoras seeing
eos unanimes discumbere ait ‘quod omnes tam libentiose
them with-one-mind recline says since all so gladly
discumbitis, nauis dominus quis est?’ Gubernator ait ‘nauis
you-recline of-the-ship the-master who is-he the-helmsman says of-the-ship
dominus in luctu moratur iacetque intus in subsannio
the-master in mourning lingers and-lies within in the-bold
nauis in tenebris; mori destinat: in mari coniugem perdidit
of-the-ship in darkness to-die he-determines in the-sea his-wife he-lost
et in terris filiam amisit.’ Athenagora ad unum de seruis
and on land his-daughter he-lost Athenagoras to one of the-slaves
nomine Ardalionem ait ‘dabo tibi duos aureos, tantum
by-name Ardalio says I-will-give you two gold-pieces only
descende et dic ei: Athenagora princeps huius ciuitatis
go-down and tell him Athenagoras the-prince of-this city
rogat te, ut procedas de tenebris ad lucem.’ Iuuenis
asks you that you-come-forth from the-darkness to the-light the-young-man
ait ‘domine, non possum pro duobus aureis quattuor crura
says lord not I-can for two gold-pieces four legs

habere. Tam utilem non inuenisti inter nos sicut me?
to-have so useful not have-you-found among us as me
Quaere alium, quia iussit ut quicumque eum appellauerit,
seek another because he-ordered that whoever him addresses
crura eius frangantur.' Athenagora ait 'hanc legem uobis
the-legs his be-broken Athenagoras says this law for-you
statuit, non mihi quem ignorat. Ego ad eum descendam.
he-has-set not for-me whom he-does-not-know I to him will-go-down
Dicite quis uocatur.' Famuli dixerunt 'Apollonius.'
tell what he-is-called the-servants said Apollonius

V · THE RIDDLES AND THE RECOGNITION

Athenagoras goes down to Apollonius in the hold and cannot rouse him, so he sends for Tharsia. She sings of her misfortunes and puts riddles of the wave, the ship, the bath, the sponge, the ball, the mirror, the wheels, and the ladder. When he pushes her and she falls, she tells her story, and he knows her for his daughter. Athenagoras asks for her hand; Apollonius vows vengeance on the pimp and threatens the city, and Athenagoras calls the citizens to save it.

Athenagora ut audiuit nomen, ait intra se 'et Tharsia 40
Athenagoras when he-heard the-name says within himself and Tharsia
patrem Apollonium uocabat.' Et demonstrantibus pueris
her-father Apollonius was-calling and with-showing-the-way the-boys
peruenit ad eum. Quem ut uidit barba capiteque squalido
he-came to him whom when he-saw with-beard and-head unkempt
in tenebris iacentem, submissa uoce ait 'Apolloni, haue.' Ille
in darkness lying with-lowered voice he-says Apollonius hail he
ut audiuit uocem eius, putans se ab aliquo seruo uocari,
when he-heard voice his thinking himself by some slave to-be-called
turbulento uultu respiciens uidit ignotum sibi hominem
with-troubled face looking-back saw unknown to-himself a-man

honesto cultu decoratum et furorem silentio texit.
in-honorable dress adorned and his-fury with-silence he-covered
Athenagora ait 'scio te mirari, quod ignotus tuo nomine te
Athenagoras says I-know you to-wonder that unknown by-your name you
salutaui. Disce quod princeps sum huius ciuitatis Athenagora
I-have-greeted learn that the-prince I-am of-this city Athenagoras
nomine. Descendi in litore ad nauiculas conspiciendas, inter
by-name I-came-down on the-shore to the-boats to-be-viewed among
quas uidi nauem tuam diligenter ornatam et laudaui, nautis
which I-saw ship your carefully adorned and I-praised-it with-sailors
uero tuis inuitantibus libenti animo discubui. Inquisiui
and your inviting with-willing mind I-reclined I-asked-for
dominum nauis. Dixerunt in luctu morari, quod et uideo.
the-master of-the-ship they-said in mourning to-linger which also I-see
Prosit ergo quod ueni. Procede de tenebris ad lucem,
let-it-profit then that I-came come-forth from the-darkness to the-light
discumbe, epulare nobiscum. Spero enim de deo, quia pro
recline feast with-us I-hope for from god that for
ingenti luctu dabit tibi ampliorem laetitiam.' Apollonius
huge grief he-will-give you a-fuller joy Apollonius
uero luctu fatigatus leuauit caput et dixit 'quisquis es,
but by-grief exhausted raised his-head and said whoever you-are
domine, uade, epulare et discumbe cum meis ac si cum
lord go feast and recline with my-men as if with
tuis. Ego autem afflictus calamitatibus grauibus non possum
your-own I but afflicted by-calamities heavy not I-can
epulari, sed nec uiuere uolo.' Athenagora confusus ascendit
feast but nor to-live do-I-wish Athenagoras confounded went-up
in nauem et discumbens dixit 'non potui persuadere domino
onto the-ship and reclining said not I-could persuade master
uestro, ut uel ad lucem rediret. Quid enim faciam ut
your that even to the-light he-should-return what for shall-I-do that

eum reuocem a proposito mortis? Bene, mihi uenit in
him I-may-recall from his-purpose of-death well to-me it-has-come into
mentem! Uade, puer, ad Ninum lenonem et dic illi, ut
mind go boy to Ninus the-pimp and tell him that
mittat ad me Tharsiam. Est enim scholastica et sermo eius
he-send to me Tharsia she-is for learned and speech her
suauis, ac decore conspicua; potest eum ipsa exhortari, ne
sweet and with-grace striking she-can him herself exhort lest
talis uir taliter moriatur.' Leno cum audisset, nolens
such a-man in-such-a-way die the-pimp when he-had-heard unwilling
dimisit eam. Et ueniente Tharsia dixit Athenagora 'domina,
released her and with-coming Tharsia said Athenagoras mistress
hic est ars studiorum tuorum necessaria. Consolans nauis
here is the-art of-studies your needed consoling of-ship
huius dominum sedentem in tenebris, coniugem lugentem et
this the-master sitting in darkness his-wife mourning and
filiam, exhorteris ad lucem exire. Haec est pars pietatis,
daughter you-should-exhort to the-light to-come-out this is a-part of-piety
causa per quam deus fit hominibus propitius. Accede
the-cause through which god becomes to-men propitious approach
ergo et suade ei exire ad lucem; forsitan per nos uult
then and persuade him to-come-out to the-light perhaps through us wishes
deus eum uiuere. Si enim hoc potueris facere, dabo tibi
god him to-live if for this you-can do I-will-give you
decem sestertia et XX aureos, et XXX dies te redimam
ten sestertia and twenty gold-pieces and for-thirty days you I-will-redeem
a lenone, ut melius possis uirginitati tuae uacare.' Puella
from the-pimp that better you-may for-virginity your be-free the-girl
audiens haec constanter accessit ad hominem et submissa
hearing these-things steadily approached to the-man and with-lowered
uoce salutauit eum dicens 'salue, quisquis es, iuuenis, salue
voice greeted him saying be-well whoever you-are young-man be-well

et laetare. Non enim aliquo polluta ad te consolandum
and rejoice not for by-any polluted to you to-be-consoled
adueni, sed innocens uirgo, quae uirginitatem meam inter
have-I-come but an-innocent maiden who virginity my amid
naufragia castitatis inuiolabiliter seruo.'
the-shipwrecks of-chastity inviolably keep
41 Et his carminibus modulata uoce cantare exorsa est:
and in-these songs with-measured voice to-sing begun she-has

'Per sordes gradior et sordis conscia non sum,
through filth I-walk and of-filth conscious not I-am
sicut rosa in spinis nescit compungi mucrone.
as a-rose among thorns knows-not to-be-pricked by-the-point
Piratae me rapuere gladio ferientes iniqui.
pirates me seized with-the-sword striking wicked
Vendita lenoni numquam uiolaui pudorem.
sold to-a-pimp never have-I-violated my-modesty
Si fletus et lacrimae aut luctus de amissis inessent,
if weeping and tears or grief for the-lost were-in-me
* * *
(lacuna)
Nulla me nobilior, pater si nosset ubi essem.
none than-me nobler my-father if he-knew where I-was
Regio sum genere, stirpe procreata priorum,
of-royal I-am stock from-the-line born of-forebears
et iubente deo iubeor quandoque laetari.
and with-ordering god I-am-bidden someday to-rejoice
Fige modum lacrimis, curas resolue doloris,
fix a-limit to-tears cares release of-grief
redde caelo faciem, animos ad sidera tolle!
give-back to-the-sky your-face your-spirits to the-stars lift

Aderit deus, creator omnium et auctor,
will-be-present god creator of-all and author
non sinet hos fletus casso labore relinqui.'
not he-will-allow these tears with-vain labor to-be-left

Ad haec Apollonius leuauit caput et uidens puellam ingemuit
to this Apollonius raised his-head and seeing the-girl groaned
et ait 'audi me miserum. Contra pietatem quamdiu luctabor?'
and says hear me wretched against piety how-long shall-I-struggle
et erigens se resedit et ait ad eam 'ago prudentiae tuae
and raising himself sat-up and says to her I-give to-prudence your
et nobilitati tuae gratias et consolationi tuae hanc uicem
and to-nobility your thanks and for-consolation your this return
rependo, ut merear. Quandoque, si mihi laetari licuerit
I-repay that I-may-merit someday if to-me to-rejoice shall-be-allowed
regni mei uiribus, releuabo et forsitan ut dicis te
of-kingdom my with-the-strength I-will-relieve-you and perhaps as you-say you
regiis ortam parentibus ac natalibus repraesentem. Nunc accipe
to-royal sprung parents and births I-may-restore now take
ducentos aureos, et ac si me in lucem perduceres, laeta
two-hundred gold-pieces and as if me into the-light you-were-leading joyful
discede. Nolo me ulterius appelles. Recenti enim luctu
depart I-do-not-want me further you-to-address by-fresh for grief
ac renouata crudelitate tabesco.' Et acceptis ducentis aureis
and renewed cruelty I-waste-away and with-received two-hundred gold-pieces
abire cupiebat. Et ait ad eam Athenagora 'quo uadis,
to-go-away she-wished and says to her Athenagoras where are-you-going
Tharsia? sine effectu laborasti? non potuimus facere
Tharsia without effect have-you-labored not could-we do
misericordiam et subuenire homini se interficienti?' Et ait
mercy and help a-man himself killing and says

Tharsia ‘omnia quae potui feci, et datis mihi ducentis
Tharsia all-things which I-could I-have-done and with-given to-me two-hundred
aureis rogauit ut discederem, asserens se renouato dolore
gold-pieces he-asked that I-depart asserting himself by-renewed grief
torqueri.’ Et ait Athenagora ‘ego tibi quadringentos aureos
to-be-tortured and says Athenagoras I to-you four-hundred gold-pieces
dabo, tantum descende et refunde ei hos ducentos quos
will-give only go-down and pour-back to-him these two-hundred which
tibi dedit, et dic ei: ego salutem tuam, non pecuniam quaero.’
to-you he-gave and tell him I safety your not money seek
Et descendens Tharsia sedit iuxta eum et ait ‘iam si in isto
and going-down Tharsia sat beside him and says now if in this
squalore permanere definisti, permitte me tecum uel in
squalor to-remain you-have-determined allow me with-you even in
istis tenebris miscere sermonem. Si enim parabolarum mearum
this darkness to-mingle conversation if for of-riddles my
nodos absolueris, uadam; sin aliud, refundam tibi pecuniam
the-knots you-untie I-will-go if otherwise I-will-pour-back to-you money
tuam et abscedam.’ Apollonius ne pecuniam repetere uideretur,
your and depart Apollonius lest the-money to-seek-back he-seem
et cupiens a prudenti puella audire sermonem ait ‘licet in
and desiring from the-prudent girl to-hear talk says although in
malis meis nulla mihi cura suppetat nisi flendi et lugendi,
misfortunes my no to-me care is-at-hand except of-weeping and of-mourning
tamen (ut careat ornamento laetitiae) dic quod interrogatura
yet that it-may-lack the-ornament of-joy say what going-to-ask
es et abscede. Peto enim ut fletibus meis spatium tribuas.’
you-are and depart I-ask for that to-weeping my space you-allow

Et ait Tharsia 42
and says Tharsia

‘Est domus, in terris clara quae uoce resultat.
there-is a-house on earth famous which with-voice resounds
Ipsa domus resonat, tacitus sed non sonat hospes.
itself the-house resounds silent but not sounds the-guest
Ambo tamen currunt, hospes simul et domus una.’
both yet run the-guest together and the-house one

Et ait ad eum: ‘si rex es, ut asseris, in patria tua
and she-says to him if a-king you-are as you-assert in homeland your
(rege enim nihil conuenit esse prudentius), solue mihi
than-a-king for nothing befits to-be wiser solve for-me
quaestionem, et uadam.’ Apollonius caput agitans ait ‘ut
the-question and I-will-go Apollonius his-head shaking says that
scias me non esse mentitum, audi solutionem. Domus,
you-may-know me not to-have lied hear the-solution the-house
quae in terris resonat, unda est; hospes huius domus
which on earth resounds the-wave is the-guest of-this house
tacitus, piscis est, qui cum domo sua currit.’ Et ait Tharsia
silent the-fish is which with house its runs and says Tharsia

‘Longa feror uelox formosae filia siluae,
long I-am-borne swift of-the-beautiful daughter forest
innumeris pariter comitum stipata cateruis.
by-countless together of-companions thronged hosts
Curro uias multas, uestigia nulla relinquo.’
I-run ways many traces none I-leave

Apollonius ait ‘o si laetum me esse liceret, ostenderem
Apollonius says o if happy me to-be it-were-allowed I-would-show
tibi quae ignoras. Tamen ne ideo tacere uidear, ut
you what you-do-not-know yet lest for-this to-be-silent I-seem that
pecuniam recipiam, respondebo quaestioni tuae. Miror enim
the-money I-may-take-back I-will-answer to-question your I-wonder for
te tam tenerae aetatis huius esse prudentiae. Nam longa arbor
you of-so tender an-age of-such to-be prudence for the-long tree
est nauis formosae filia siluae, fertur uelox uento
is the-ship of-the-beautiful daughter forest it-is-borne swift with-the-wind
pellente, stipata cateruis, uias multas currit undarum, uestigia
driving thronged with-hosts ways many it-runs of-waves traces
nulla relinquit.’ Puella inflammata prudentia solutionum ait
none it-leaves the-girl inflamed by-the-prudence of-the-solutions says

‘Per totas aedes innoxius introit ignis:
through whole houses harmless enters fire
circumdat flammis hinc inde uallata nec uror.
it-surrounds-me with-flames hither thither walled nor am-I-burned
Nuda domus, nudusque huc omnis conuenit hospes.’
bare the-house and-bare here every gathers guest

Apollonius ait ‘ego si luctum deponerem, innocentes intrarem
Apollonius says I if grief I-laid-aside harmless I-would-enter
in ignes. Intrarem enim in balneum, ubi hinc inde flammae
into fires I-would-enter for into the-bath where hither thither flames

per turbulos surgunt. Nuda domus est, quia nihil intus
through the-vents rise bare the-house is because nothing inside
nisi sedile, ubi nudus hospes sudat.' Et ait iterum Tharsia
except a-seat where bare the-guest sweats and says again Tharsia

'Ipsa grauis non sum, sed aquae mihi pondus adhaesit.
myself heavy not I-am but of-water to-me the-weight has-clung
Viscera tota tument patulis diffusa cauernis.
my-innards whole swell with-gaping spread caverns
Intus lympha latet, quae se non sponte profundit.'
inside water lies-hidden which itself not of-its-own-accord pours-forth

Apollonius ait 'spongia cum sit leuis, uisceribus tota tumet
Apollonius says the-sponge though it-be light in-its-innards whole swells
aqua grauata patulis diffusa cauernis, infra quas lympha
with-water weighed with-gaping spread caverns under which water
latet, quae se non sponte profundit.'
lies-hidden which itself not of-its-own-accord pours-forth
Et ait iterum Tharsia 43
and says again Tharsia

'Non sum compta comis, non sum nudata capillis.
not I-am dressed in-locks not I-am stripped of-hair
Intus enim mihi crines sunt, quos non uidet ullus.
inside for to-me hairs are which not sees anyone
Meque manus mittunt, manibusque remittor in auras.'
and-me hands send and-by-hands I-am-sent-back into the-air

Apollonius ait 'hanc ego in Pentapoli naufragus habui
Apollonius says this I in Pentapolis shipwrecked had
ducem, regi ut amicus efficerer. Nam sphaera est,
as-a-guide to-the-king that a-friend I-might-be-made for a-ball it-is

quae non est uincta comis et non est nudata capillis, quia
which not is bound in-locks and not is stripped of-hair because
intus plena est; haec manibus missa manibusque remittitur.'
inside full it-is this by-hands sent and-by-hands is-sent-back
Iterum ait ad eum puella
again says to him the-girl

'Nulla mihi certa est, nulla est peregrina figura.
no to-me fixed is no is foreign shape
Fulgor inest intus radianti luce coruscus,
a-gleam is-in-me within with-radiant light flashing
qui nihil ostendit, nisi quid uiderit ante.'
which nothing shows except what it-has-seen before

Respondens Apollonius ait 'nulla certa figura est speculo,
answering Apollonius says no fixed shape is to-the-mirror
quia mutatur aspectu; nulla peregrina figura, quia hoc
because it-is-changed by-the-view no foreign shape because this
ostendit, quod contra se habet.' Item ait puella ad eum
it-shows which opposite itself it-has likewise says the-girl to him

'Quattuor aequales currunt ex arte sorores
four equal run by art sisters
sic quasi certantes, cum sit labor omnibus unus.
so as-if competing though there-be labor to-all one
Cum prope sint pariter, non se pertingere possunt.'
though near they-be equally not each-other to-reach they-can

Et ait ad eam Apollonius 'quattuor similes sorores forma
and says to her Apollonius four like sisters in-form
et habitu rotae sunt quattuor, quae ex arte currunt quasi
and in-dress wheels are four which by art run as-if

certantes; et cum sint sibi prope, nulla nullam potest
competing and though they-be to-each-other near none another can
contingere.' Item ait ad eum puella
touch likewise says to him the-girl

'Nos sumus, ad caelum quae scandimus alta petentes,
we are to the-sky which we-climb high-things seeking
concordi fabrica quas unus conserit ordo.
in-a-harmonious structure which one joins row
Quicumque alta petunt, per nos comitantur ad auras.'
whoever high-things seek through us are-escorted to the-air

Et ait ad eam Apollonius 'per deum te obtestor, ne
and says to her Apollonius by god you I-adjure that-not
ulterius me ad laetandum prouoces, ne uidearis insultare
further me to rejoicing you-provoke lest you-seem to-insult
mortuis meis. Nam gradus scalae alta petentes,
dead my for the-steps of-the-ladder high-things seeking
aequales mansione manentes uno ordine conseruntur, et
equal in-position remaining in-one row are-joined and
alta quicumque petunt, per eos comitantur ad auras.'
high-things whoever seek through them are-escorted to the-air
Et his dictis ait 'ecce habes alios centum aureos, et 44
and with-these said he-says behold you-have another hundred gold-pieces and
secede a me, ut memoriam mortuorum meorum defleam.'
withdraw from me that the-memory of-dead my I-may-bewail
At uero puella dolens misit caput super Apollonium et
but indeed the-girl grieving put her-head upon Apollonius and
strictis manibus complexa est eum dicens 'ut quid te
with-clasped hands embraced she-has him saying to what yourself
tantis malis affligis? exaudi uocem meam et deprecantem
with-such misfortunes do-you-afflict hear voice my and entreating

respice uirginem. Quia tantae prudentiae uirum mori uelle
look-at the-maiden because of-such prudence a-man to-die to-wish
nefarium est. Si coniugem desideras, deus restituet; si filiam,
wicked is if wife you-long-for god will-restore if daughter
saluam et incolumem inuenies. Et praesta petenti, quod
safe and sound you-will-find and grant to-the-one-asking what
te precibus rogo.' Et refundens aureos in sinum et
you by-prayers I-ask and pouring-back the-gold-pieces into his-lap and
adprehendens lugubrem uestem eius ad lucem conabatur
seizing the-mourning garment his to the-light she-tried
trahere. At ille impellens eam conruere fecit. Quae cum
to-drag but he pushing her to-fall made-her who when
cecidisset, de naribus eius sanguis coepit egredi, et sedens
she-had-fallen from nostrils her blood began to-come-out and sitting
puella coepit flere et cum magno maerore dicere 'O
the-girl began to-weep and with great sorrow to-say o
ardua potestas caelorum, quae me pateris innocentem tantis
lofty power of-the-heavens which me you-allow innocent by-such
calamitatibus ab ipsis cunabulis fatigari! Nam statim ut
calamities from the-very cradle to-be-wearied for at-once when
nata sum in mari inter fluctus et procellas, parturiens me
born I-was on the-sea among waves and storms giving-birth-to me
mater mea secundis ad stomachum redeuntibus coagulato
mother my with-the-afterbirth to the-stomach returning with-clotted
sanguine mortua est, et sepultura ei terrae negata est. Quae
blood dead is and burial to-her of-earth denied was who
tamen ornata a patre meo regalibus ornamentis et deposita
yet adorned by father my with-royal ornaments and laid
in loculum cum uiginti sestertiis auri Neptuno est tradita.
in a-coffin with twenty sesterces of-gold to-Neptune was handed-over
Et ego in cunabulis posita Stranguillioni impio et Dionysiadi
and I in the-cradle placed to-Stranguillio impious and to-Dionysias

eius coniugi a patre meo sum tradita cum ornamentis et
his wife by father my was handed-over with ornaments and
uestibus regalibus; pro quibus usque ad necem ueni perfidia
clothes royal for which even to death I-came by-treachery
et iussa sum puniri a seruo uno infamiae nomine
and ordered was-I to-be-punished by a-slave one of-infamy by-name
Theophilo. At ille dum uoluisset me occidere, eum deprecata
Theophilus but he when he-had-wished me to-kill him entreated
sum, ut permitteret me testari dominum. Quem cum
I-have that he-allow me to-call-to-witness the-Lord whom while
deprecor, piratae superueniunt, qui me ui auferunt et ad
I-entreat pirates come-upon-us who me by-force carry-off and to
istam deferunt prouinciam. Atque lenoni impio sum uendita!'
this bring province and to-a-pimp impious I-was sold
Cumque haec et his similia puella flens diceret, in 45
and-when these-things and to-these like the-girl weeping said into
amplexum illius ruens Apollonius coepit flens prae gaudio
embrace her rushing Apollonius began weeping for joy
ei dicere 'tu es filia mea Tharsia, tu es spes mea unica,
to-her to-say you are daughter my Tharsia you are hope my only
tu es lumen oculorum meorum conscium, quam flens per
you are the-light of-eyes my conscious whom weeping through
quattuordecim annos cum matre tua lugeo. Iam laetus moriar,
fourteen years with mother your I-mourn now happy I-shall-die
quia rediuiua spes mihi est reddita.' Cucurrit et Athenagora
because revived hope to-me is restored ran also Athenagoras
ciuitatis illius princeps, et inuenit Apollonium super collum
of-city that the-prince and found Apollonius upon the-neck
Tharsiae flentem et dicentem 'haec est filia mea Tharsia
of-Tharsia weeping and saying this is daughter my Tharsia
quam lugeo, cuius causa rediuiuas lacrimas et renouatum
whom I-mourn for-whose sake renewed tears and renewed

luctum assumpseram. Nam ego sum Tyrius Apollonius, qui
grief I-had-taken-up for I am Tyrian Apollonius who
te commendaui Stranguillioni. Dic mihi: quae dicta est nutrix
you entrusted to-Stranguillio tell me who called was nurse
tua?' Et illa dixit 'Lycoris.' Apollonius adhuc uehementius
your and she said Lycoris Apollonius still more-vehemently
clamare coepit 'tu es filia mea!' Et illa dixit 'si Tharsiam
to-cry began you are daughter my and she said if Tharsia
quaeris, ego sum.' Tunc erigens se et proiectis uestibus
you-seek I am-she then raising himself and with-thrown-off clothes
lugubribus induit uestes mundissimas, et adprehensam eam
mourning he-put-on clothes most-elegant and seized her
osculabatur et flebat. Videns eos Athenagora utrosque in
he-kissed and wept seeing them Athenagoras both in
amplexu cum lacrimis inhaerentes, et ipse amarissime
embrace with tears clinging and he-himself most-bitterly
flebat et narrabat, qualiter sibi olim hoc ordine puella
wept and told how to-him once in-this order the-girl
in lupanari posita uniuersa narrasset, et quantum temporis
in the-brothel placed all-things had-told and how-much of-time
esset, quod a piratis abducta et distracta fuisset. Et
it-was that by pirates carried-off and sold she-had-been and
mittens se Athenagora ad pedes Apollonii dixit 'per deum
throwing himself Athenagoras at the-feet of-Apollonius said by god
uiuum te adiuro, qui te patrem restituit filiae, ne
living you I-adjure who you as-father has-restored to-your-daughter that-not
alii uiro Tharsiam tradas! Nam ego sum princeps huius
to-another man Tharsia you-give for I am the-prince of-this
ciuitatis et mea ope permansit uirgo.' Apollonius ait 'ego
city and by-my help she-has-remained a-virgin Apollonius says I
huic tantae bonitati et pietati possum esse contrarius? immo
to-this so-great goodness and piety can be opposed nay

opto, quia uotum feci, non depositurum me luctum, nisi
I-wish-it because a-vow I-made not going-to-lay-aside me my-grief unless
filiam meam nuptui tradidero. Hoc uero restat, ut filia
daughter my in-marriage I-shall-have-given this but remains that daughter
mea uindicetur de hoc lenone, quem sustinuit inimicum.' Et
my be-avenged on this pimp whom she-endured as-an-enemy and
dixit Apollonius 'pereat haec ciuitas!' At ubi auditum est
said Apollonius let-perish this city but when heard it-was
ab Athenagora principe, in publico in foro in curia
by Athenagoras the-prince in public in the-forum in the-senate-house
clamare coepit et dicere 'currite, ciues et nobiles, ne pereat
to-cry-out he-began and to-say run citizens and nobles lest perish
ista ciuitas! currite, ciues piissimi, subuenite ciuitati, ne
this city run citizens most-dutiful help the-city lest
pereat propter unum infamem!'
it-perish because-of one infamous-man

VI · REUNIONS AND REWARDS

Mitylene burns the pimp, Tharsia frees his girls, and Apollonius gives her to Athenagoras. Told in a dream to go to Ephesus, he tells his story in Diana's temple and the priestess, his wife, knows him. At Tarsus Stranguillio and Dionysias are stoned and Theophilus is spared. Archistrates dies happy, and the old fisherman and Hellenicus are rewarded. Apollonius rules Antioch, Tyre, and Cyrene, lives with his wife seventy-four years, and writes his own story.

At ubi dictum est, Athenagoram principem hac uoce 46
but when told it-was Athenagoras the-prince with-this voice
in foro clamasse, concursus magnus et ingens factus
in the-forum to-have-cried-out a-gathering great and huge made
est, et tanta commotio fuit populi, ut nullus omnino
was and so-great a-commotion was of-the-people that no-one at-all

domi remaneret, neque uir neque femina. Omnibus autem
at-home remained neither man nor woman with-all but
conuenientibus magna uoce dixit Athenagora ‘ciues Mitylenae
assembling with-great voice said Athenagoras citizens of-Mitylene
ciuitatis, sciatis Tyrium Apollonium regem magnum huc
city know-ye Tyrian Apollonius king great hither
uenisse, et exea classes nauium properantes cum multis
to-have-come and (obscure) fleets of-ships hastening with many
armatis euersuras istam prouinciam causa lenonis
armed-men going-to-overturn this province for-the-sake of-a-pimp
iniustissimi, qui Tharsiam ipsius emit filiam et in prostibulo
most-unjust who Tharsia his-own bought daughter and in a-brothel
posuit. Ut ergo saluetur ista ciuitas, mittatur ad uindicem
placed-her that then may-be-saved this city let-him-be-sent to the-avenger
deum infamiae, ut non omnes periclitemur.’ His auditis
god of-infamy that not all we-be-endangered with-these heard
populi ab auriculis reum comprehenderunt. Ducitur leno
the-people by the-ears the-accused seized is-led the-pimp
ad forum uinctis a tergo manibus. Fit tribunal ingens in
to the-forum with-bound from behind hands is-made a-platform huge in
foro, et induens Apollonius regalem uestem deposito omni
the-forum and putting-on Apollonius a-royal garment with-laid-aside all
squalore luctuoso quod habuit atque detonso capite diadema
squalor mournful which he-had and with-shorn head a-diadem
imposuit et cum filia sua Tharsia tribunal ascendit. Et
put-on and with daughter his Tharsia the-platform mounted and
tenens eam in complexu coram omni populo loqui lacrimis
holding her in embrace before all the-people to-speak by-tears
inpediebatur. Athenagora uix manu impetrat ad plebem ut
he-was-hindered Athenagoras scarcely by-hand obtains from the-commons that
taceant. Quibus silentibus ait Athenagora ‘ciues Mitylenae,
they-be-silent with-whom falling-silent says Athenagoras citizens of-Mitylene

quos repentina pietas in unum congregauit, uidete Tharsiam
whom sudden piety into one has-gathered see Tharsia
a patre suo hodie esse cognitam, quam leno cupidissimus
by father her today to-have-been recognized whom a-pimp most-greedy
ad nos expoliandos usque in hodiernum diem depressit; quae
for us despoiling even to this-present day has-kept-down who
uestra pietate uirgo permansit. Ut ergo plenius uestrae pietati
by-your piety a-virgin has-remained that then more-fully to-your piety
gratias referam, eius procurate uindictam.' At uero una
thanks I-may-return her procure the-revenge but indeed with-one
uoce omnes clamauerunt dicentes 'leno uiuus ardeat et bona
voice all cried saying the-pimp alive let-burn and goods
omnia eius puellae addicantur!' Atque his dictis leno igni
all his to-the-girl let-be-assigned and with-these said the-pimp to-fire
est traditus. Vilicus eius cum uniuersis puellis et facultatibus
was handed-over the-overseer his with all the-girls and possessions
Tharsiae traditur. Ait Tharsia uilico 'dono tibi uitam,
to-Tharsia is-handed-over says Tharsia to-the-overseer I-give to-you life
quia beneficio tuo uirgo permansi.' Et donauit ei decem
because by-the-kindness your a-virgin I-have-remained and she-gave to-him ten
talenta auri et libertatem. Deinde cunctis puellis coram se
talents of-gold and freedom then with-all the-girls before herself
praesentatis ait 'quicquid de corpore uestro illi contulistis
presented she-says whatever from body your to-him you-contributed
infausto, uobis habete, et quia seruistis mecum, liberae estote.'
ill-starred to-you keep-it and because you-served with-me free be
Et erigens se Tyrius Apollonius alloquitur populum 47
and raising himself Tyrian Apollonius addresses the-people
dicens 'gratias pietati uestrae refero, uenerandi et piissimi
saying thanks to-piety your I-return venerable and most-dutiful
ciues, quorum longa fides pietatem praebuit, quietem tribuit,
citizens whose long faith piety has-shown quiet has-given

salutem exhibuit, gloriam educauit. Vestrum est, quod
safety has-displayed glory has-raised yours it-is that
rediuiuis uulneribus rediuiua uita successit; uestrum est,
to-revived wounds revived life has-followed yours it-is
quod fraudulenta mors cum suo luctu deiecta est; uestrum
that deceitful death with its grief cast-down is yours
est, quod uirginitas nulla bella sustinuit; uestrum est, quod
it-is that virginity no wars has-endured yours it-is that
paternis amplexibus unica restituta est filia. Pro hoc tanto
to-a-father's embraces an-only restored is daughter for this so-great
beneficio uestro ad restituenda ciuitatis uestrae moenia aurum
kindness your for restoring of-city your the-walls gold
pondo quinquaginta dono.' Quod cum in praesenti dare
by-weight fifty I-give which when on the-spot to-give
fecisset, fuderunt ei statuam ingentem in prora nauis
he-had-caused they-cast for-him a-statue huge on the-prow of-a-ship
stantem et calcantem caput lenonis et filiam in dextro
standing and treading the-head of-the-pimp and his-daughter on the-right
brachio sedentem, et in base eius scripserunt 'TYRIO
arm sitting and on the-base its they-wrote to-Tyrian
APOLLONIO RESTAVRATORI AEDIVM NOSTRARVM
Apollonius restorer of-buildings our
ET THARSIAE SANCTISSIMAE VIRGINI FILIAE EIVS
and to-Tharsia most-holy maiden daughter his
VNIVERSVS POPVLVS MITYLENAE OB NIMIVM
the-whole people of-Mitylene for excessive
AMOREM AETERNVM DECVS MEMORIAE DEDIT.'
love eternal honor of-memory gave
Et intra paucos dies Apollonius tradidit filiam suam in
and within few days Apollonius gave daughter his in
coniugio Athenagorae cum ingenti laetitia totius ciuitatis.
marriage to-Athenagoras with huge joy of-the-whole city

Et nuptiis transactis cum eo et cum filia sua atque 48
and with-the-wedding completed with him and with daughter his and
cum suis omnibus uolens per Tarsum transeundo redire in
with his-men all wishing by Tarsus in-passing to-return to
patriam suam, uidit in somnis quendam angelico uultu sibi
homeland his he-saw in sleep a-certain-one with-angelic face to-him
dicentem 'Apolloni, ad Ephesum dirige et intra templum
saying Apollonius to Ephesus steer and within the-temple
Dianae cum filia et genero tuo et casus tuos omnes
of-Diana with daughter and son-in-law your also misfortunes your all
expone. Postea Tarso filiam tuam uindica innocentem.'
set-forth afterward at-Tarsus daughter your avenge innocent
Apollonius expergefactus indicat genero et filiae somnium,
Apollonius awakened reveals to-son-in-law and daughter the-dream
et illi dixerunt 'fac, domine, quod tibi uidetur.' Et iussit
and they said do lord what to-you seems-good and he-ordered
gubernatori Ephesum petere. Felici cursu perueniunt
the-helmsman Ephesus to-make-for with-a-happy course they-arrive-at
Ephesum, et descendens cum suis Ephesium templum petit
Ephesus and going-ashore with his-men the-Ephesian temple seeks
Dianae, ubi coniunx eius inter sacerdotes feminas principatum
of-Diana where wife his among the-priestesses women the-first-place
tenebat, et rogat sibi aperiri sacrarium, ut in conspectu
held and he-asks for-himself to-be-opened the-sanctuary that in the-sight
Dianae casus suos enarraret. Dicitur illi maiori omnium
of-Diana misfortunes his he-might-relate it-is-told to-her the-chief of-all
sacerdotum, uenisse regem nescio quem cum filia et
priestesses to-have-come a-king I-know-not who with daughter and
genero suo cum nimiis donis. Hoc audito gemmis regalibus
son-in-law his with very-many gifts with-this heard with-gems royal
caput ornauit et uestitu purpureo uenit uirginum constipata
her-head she-adorned and in-dress purple came of-maidens thronged

cateruis. Erat enim effigie decora et ob nimium castitatis
by-hosts she-was for in-appearance comely and for excessive of-chastity
amorem asserebant omnes nullam esse tam gratam Dianae.
love asserted all none to-be so dear to-Diana
Quam uidens Apollonius cum filia et genero currunt ad
whom seeing Apollonius with daughter and son-in-law run to
pedes eius. Tantus enim pulchritudinis eius emanabat splendor,
the-feet her so-great for of-beauty her flowed-out splendor
ut ipsa dea esse uideretur. Et aperto sacrario oblatisque
that herself the-goddess to-be she-seemed and with-opened sanctuary and-with-offered
muneribus Apollonius coepit dicere 'ego ab adolescentia
gifts Apollonius began to-say I from youth
mea rex, natus Tyro, Apollonius appellatus, tum, cum ad
my king born at-Tyre Apollonius called then when to
omnem scientiam peruenissem nec esset ars aliqua, quae a
all knowledge I-had-come nor was art any which by
nobilibus et regibus exerceretur, quam ego nescirem, regis
nobles and kings was-practiced which I did-not-know of-king
Antiochi quaestionem exsolui, ut filiam eius in matrimonium
Antiochus the-question I-solved that daughter his in marriage
acciperem. Sed ille ei foedissima sorte sociatus, cui
I-might-receive but he to-her by-most-foul lot joined to-whom
pater natura fuerat constitutus, per impietatem coniunx
father by-nature had been-appointed through impiety husband
effectus est et me machinabatur occidere. Quem dum fugio,
made was and me plotted to-kill whom while I-flee
naufragus a Cyrenensi rege Archistrate eo usque gratissime
shipwrecked by the-Cyrenean king Archistrates to-that point most-graciously
susceptus sum, ut filiam eius mererer accipere. Quae, cum
received I-was that daughter his I-merited to-receive whom when
desiderassem properare ad patrium regnum percipiendum,
I-had-wished to-hasten to my-father's kingdom to-be-received

hanc filiam meam, quam coram te, magna Diana, praesentare
this daughter my whom before you great Diana to-present
iussisti, posteaquam in naui peperit, emisit spiritum.
you-ordered after on the-ship she-bore-her she-breathed-out her-breath
Quam ego regio indui habitu et in loculo cum uiginti
whom I in-royal dressed attire and in a-coffin with twenty
sestertiis dimisi in mare, ut inuenta digne sepeliretur; hanc
sesterces sent into the-sea that found worthily she-might-be-buried this
uero famulam tuam filiam meam nutriendam nequissimis
but handmaid your daughter my to-be-reared to-most-worthless
hominibus commendaui et in Aegypti partibus luxi
men I-entrusted and in of-Egypt parts I-mourned
quattuordecim annis uxorem. Unde aduenienti, ut filiam
for-fourteen years my-wife whence to-me-arriving that daughter
meam repeterem, dixerunt esse defunctam. Et dum rediuiuo
my I-might-reclaim they-said her-to-be dead and while by-revived
luctu inuoluerer, mori cupienti filiam meam reddidisti.'
grief I-was-wrapped to-die to-me-wishing daughter my you-restored
Cumque haec et his similia narraret, leuauit se 49
and-when these-things and to-these like he-related raised herself
Archistratis uxor ipsius et rapuit eum in amplexum. Apollonius
Archistratis wife his-own and snatched him into embrace Apollonius
non credens esse coniugem suam, repellit a se. At illa cum
not believing her-to-be wife his pushes-her from himself but she with
lacrimis uoce magna clamauit dicens 'ego sum coniunx tua
tears with-voice great cried-out saying I am wife your
Archistratis regis Archistratis filia!' et mittens se iterum
Archistratis of-king of-Archistrates the-daughter and throwing herself again
in amplexum eius coepit dicere 'tu es Tyrius Apollonius, meus
into embrace his began to-say you are Tyrian Apollonius my
Apollonius, tu es magister meus qui me docuisti, tu es qui me
Apollonius you are master my who me taught you are who me

a patre accepisti Archistrate, tu es quem naufragum adamaui
from my-father received Archistrates you are whom shipwrecked I-loved
non causa libidinis, sed sapientiae ducta! Ubi est filia
not for-the-sake of-lust but by-wisdom led where is daughter
mea?' Et ostendit ei Tharsiam dicens 'haec est.' Et flebant
my and he-showed to-her Tharsia saying this is and they-wept
inuicem omnes. Sonat in tota Epheso, Tyrium Apollonium
in-turn all sounds through all Ephesus Tyrian Apollonius
regem uxorem suam Archistratem cognouisse, quam ipsi
the-king wife his Archistratis to-have-recognized whom they-themselves
sacerdotem habebant. Fit laetitia ingens, coronatur ciuitas,
as-priestess had there-is-made joy huge is-garlanded the-city
organa disponuntur, fit Apollonio conuiuium a ciuibus,
organs are-set-out is-made for-Apollonius a-feast by the-citizens
laetantur omnes. Ipsa uero constituit sacerdotem, quae
rejoice all she-herself but appointed as-priestess her-who
sequens ei erat et casta caraque. Et cum Ephesiorum gaudio
next to-her was and chaste and-dear and with of-the-Ephesians joy
et lacrimis cum marito, filia et genero nauem ascendit.
and tears with husband daughter and son-in-law the-ship she-boarded
50 Veniens igitur Apollonius Antiochiam regnum sibi
coming then Apollonius to-Antioch the-kingdom for-himself
reseruatum suscepit. Pergit inde Tyrum et constituit regem
kept took-up he-goes thence to-Tyre and appointed as-king
loco suo Athenagoram generum suum. Et cum eo et cum
in-place his Athenagoras son-in-law his and with him and with
filia sua et coniuge sua et exercitu regio nauigans uenit
daughter his and wife his and army royal sailing he-came
Tarsum et iussit statim comprehendi Stranguillionem et
to-Tarsus and ordered at-once to-be-seized Stranguillio and
Dionysiadem uxorem eius et sedenti sibi pro tribunali in
Dionysias wife his and sitting to-himself before the-tribunal in

foro adduci. Quibus adductis coram omnibus ciuibus dixit
the-forum to-be-brought with-whom brought before all the-citizens he-said
'ciues beatissimi Tarsiae, numquid Apollonio Tyrio exstitit
citizens most-blessed of-Tarsus surely-not to-Apollonius Tyrian has-been
aliquis ingratus uestrum?' At illi omnes una uoce dixerunt
any ungrateful of-you but they all with-one voice said
'te regem, te patriae patrem diximus; propter te et mori
you king you of-the-country father we-called for you even to-die
libenter optauimus, cuius ope periculum famis effugimus.
gladly we-wished by-whose help the-danger of-famine we-escaped
Pro hoc et statua a nobis posita in biga testatur.'
for this also the-statue by us set-up in a-chariot bears-witness
Et Apollonius ait 'commendaui filiam meam Stranguillioni
and Apollonius says I-entrusted daughter my to-Stranguillio
et Dionysiadi uxori eius: hanc mihi reddere noluerunt.'
and to-Dionysias wife his her to-me to-return they-were-unwilling
Scelerata mulier ait 'bone domine, quid? tu ipse titulum
the-wicked woman says good lord what you yourself the-title
legisti monumenti.' Apollonius exclamauit 'domina Tharsia,
have-read of-the-monument Apollonius cried-out mistress Tharsia
nata dulcis, si quid tamen apud inferos habes, relinque
daughter sweet if anything yet among the-dead you-hold leave
Tartaream domum et genitoris tui uocem exaudi.' Puella de
the-Tartarean house and of-father your the-voice hear the-girl from
post tribunal regio habitu circumdata capite uelato processit
behind the-tribunal in-royal dress clad with-head veiled came-forth
et reuelata facie malae mulieri dixit 'Dionysias, haue:
and with-uncovered face to-the-wicked woman said Dionysias hail
saluto te ego ab inferis reuocata.' Mulier scelerata ut uidit
I-greet you I from the-dead recalled the-woman wicked when she-saw
eam, toto corpore contremuit. Mirantur ciues et gaudent.
her with-whole body trembled wonder the-citizens and rejoice

Et iussit Tharsia in conspectu adduci Theophilum uilicum
and ordered Tharsia into her-sight to-be-brought Theophilus the-bailiff
Dionysiadis, cui ait 'Theophile, ut possit tibi ignosci,
of-Dionysias to-whom she-says Theophilus that it-may-be for-you to-be-forgiven
clara uoce responde. Quis me interficiendam tibi obligauit?'
with-clear voice answer who me to-be-killed to-you bound
Vilicus respondit 'Dionysias domina mea.' Tunc ciues
the-bailiff answered Dionysias mistress my then the-citizens
omnes rapuerunt Stranguillionem et Dionysiadem extra
all seized Stranguillio and Dionysias outside
ciuitatem et lapidauerunt, uolentes et Theophilum occidere;
the-city and stoned-them wishing also Theophilus to-kill
sed Tharsiae interuentu non tangitur. Et ait Tharsia 'nisi iste
but by-Tharsia's intervention not he-is-touched and says Tharsia unless he
ad testandum deum unius horae mihi spatium tribuisset,
for calling-to-witness god of-one hour to-me the-space had-granted
modo uestra pietas me non defendisset.' Quem manumissum
now your piety me not would-have-defended whom freed
abire incolumem praecepit et scelerate secum Tharsia tulit.
to-go-away unharmed she-ordered and (obscure) with-herself Tharsia took
51 Apollonius uero ad licentiam populo dedit munera.
Apollonius but for the-license to-the-people gave gifts
Restaurantur thermae, moenia, murorum turres. Moratus
are-restored the-baths the-defenses of-the-walls towers having-stayed
autem ibi sex mensibus nauigat cum suis ad Pentapolim
but there six months he-sails with his-men to Pentapolis
ciuitatem Cyrenen. Ingreditur ad regem Archistratem, gaudet
the-city Cyrene he-enters to king Archistrates rejoices
in ultima senectute sua rex Archistrates: uidit neptem
in the-last old-age his king Archistrates he-saw his-granddaughter
cum patre, filiam cum marito; regis nepotes, regis
with her-father his-daughter with her-husband of-the-king the-grandchildren of-the-king

filios ueneratur et in osculo Apollonii et filiae integro
the-children he-honors and in the-kiss of-Apollonius and of-his-daughter a-whole
anno perdurat. Post haec laetus moritur perfecta aetate in
year he-lasts after this happy he-dies at-full age in
manibus eorum, medietatem regni sui Apollonio relinquens
the-hands their half of-kingdom his to-Apollonius leaving
et medietatem filiae suae. His omnibus peractis, dum
and half to-daughter his with-these all completed while
deambulat Apollonius iuxta mare, uidit piscatorem illum, a
walks Apollonius beside the-sea he-saw fisherman that by
quo fuerat naufragus susceptus, et iussit eum comprehendi
whom he-had-been shipwrecked taken-in and ordered him to-be-seized
et ad palatium duci. Vidit piscator se a militibus duci:
and to the-palace to-be-led saw the-fisherman himself by soldiers to-be-led
occidendum se putabat. Et ingressus Apollonius coram
to-be-killed himself he-thought and entering Apollonius before
coniuge sua iussit eum adduci et ait 'domina coniunx,
wife his ordered him to-be-brought and says mistress wife
hic est paranymphus meus, qui olim mihi spem naufrago
this is groomsman my who once to-me hope shipwrecked
dedit et ut ad te peruenirem ostendit itinera.' Et intuens
gave and that to you I-might-come showed the-ways and gazing-at
eum Apollonius dixit 'benignissime uetule, ego sum Tyrius
him Apollonius said most-kind old-fellow I am Tyrian
Apollonius, cui dimidium tribunarium tuum dedisti.' Et
Apollonius to-whom half cloak your you-gave and
donauit ei ducenta sestertia auri, seruos, ancillas et uestes,
he-gave him two-hundred sestertia of-gold slaves handmaids and clothes
et fecit eum comitem suum, usque dum uixit. Hellenicus
and made him companion his up-to while he-lived Hellenicus
uero, qui ei de Antiocho nuntiauerat, Apollonio procedenti
but who to-him about Antiochus had-announced to-Apollonius coming-forth

obtulit se et ait 'domine rex, memor esto Hellenici serui
presented himself and says lord king mindful be of-Hellenicus servant
tui.' Et adprehendens manum eius Apollonius erexit eum et
your and grasping hand his Apollonius raised him and
osculari coepit; fecit diuitem, ordinauit comitem. His
to-kiss began he-made-him rich appointed-him a-companion with-these
expletis genuit de coniuge sua filium, quem in loco
accomplished he-begot from wife his a-son whom in the-place
aui eius Archistratis constituit regem. Ipse autem cum
of-grandfather his Archistrates he-appointed king he-himself but with
coniuge sua benigne uixit annis septuaginta quattuor. Tenuit
wife his kindly lived for-years seventy four he-held
regnum Antiochiae, Tyri et Cyrenensium. Quietam uitam
the-kingdom of-Antioch of-Tyre and of-the-Cyreneans a-quiet life
per omne tempus suum duxit. Casus suos suorumque
through all time his he-led misfortunes his and-of-his-own
ipse descripsit et duo uolumina fecit. Unum Dianae in
he-himself described and two volumes made one of-Diana in
templo Ephesiorum, aliud in bibliotheca sua exposuit.
the-temple of-the-Ephesians another in library his he-displayed

SENECA

Apocolocyntosis

The Pumpkinification of Claudius

Seneca will take no oath and cites the witness who saw Drusilla rise to heaven. On October 13 Mercury begs one of the Fates to end Claudius' long dying; Clotho cuts his thread and Lachesis spins Nero a golden age, while Apollo sings his praises. Claudius dies with a foul last word. In heaven he limps before Jupiter, who sends Hercules to learn his race; Fever reveals he is a Gaul of Lyons, and he tries to win over Hercules by recalling the courts he held.

Quid actum sit in caelo ante diem III idus Octobris 1
what done may-have-been in heaven before the-day third of-the-Ides of-October
anno novo, initio saeculi felicissimi, volo memoriae
in-the-year new at-the-beginning of-an-age most-happy I-wish to-memory
tradere. Nihil nec offensae nec gratiae dabitur. Haec ita
to-hand-down nothing either to-offense or to-favor will-be-given these-things so
vera. Si quis quaesiverit unde sciam, primum, si noluero,
true if anyone shall-ask whence I-know first if I-shall-not-want-to
non respondebo. Quis coacturus est? Ego scio me liberum
not I-will-answer who going-to-compel is I know myself free
factum, ex quo suum diem obiit ille, qui verum proverbium
made from when his day met that-one who true the-proverb
fecerat, aut regem aut fatuum nasci oportere. Si libuerit
had-made either a-king or a-fool to-be-born it-behooves if it-shall-please
respondere, dicam quod mihi in buccam venerit. Quis
to-answer I-will-say what to-me into my-mouth shall-have-come who
unquam ab historico iuratores exegit? Tamen si necesse
ever from a-historian sworn-witnesses demanded yet if necessary
fuerit auctorem producere, quaerito ab eo qui Drusillam
it-shall-be an-authority to-produce ask from him who Drusilla
euntem in caelum vidit: idem Claudium vidisse se dicet
going into heaven saw the-same Claudius to-have-seen himself will-say
iter facientem "non passibus aequis." Velit nolit, necesse est
a-journey making not with-steps equal willy nilly necessary is

illi omnia videre, quae in caelo aguntur: Appiae viae curator
for-him all-things to-see which in heaven are-done of-the-Appian Way the-curator
est, qua scis et divum Augustum et Tiberium Caesarem
he-is by-which you-know both the-deified Augustus and Tiberius Caesar
ad deos isse. Hunc si interrogaveris, soli narrabit:
to the-gods to-have-gone him if you-ask to-you-alone he-will-tell
coram pluribus nunquam verbum faciet. Nam ex quo in
before more never a-word will-he-make for from when in
senatu iuravit se Drusillam vidisse caelum ascendentem
the-senate he-swore himself Drusilla to-have-seen heaven ascending
et illi pro tam bono nuntio nemo credidit, quod viderit,
and him for so good news no-one believed what he-had-seen
verbis conceptis affirmavit se non indicaturum, etiam si in
in-words formal he-affirmed himself not going-to-report even if in
medio foro hominem occisum vidisset. Ab hoc ego quae tum
the-middle forum a-man killed he-had-seen from him I what then
audivi, certa clara affero, ita illum salvum et felicem habeam.
I-heard certain clear I-bring so him safe and happy may-I-have

2 Iam Phoebus breviore via contraxerat ortum
now Phoebus by-a-shorter way had-drawn-in the-rising
lucis, et obscuri crescebant tempora somni,
of-light and of-dark were-growing the-times of-sleep
iamque suum victrix augebat Cynthia regnum,
and-now her-own victorious was-increasing Cynthia realm
et deformis hiemps gratos carpebat honores
and misshapen winter the-pleasing was-plucking honors
divitis autumni, iussoque senescere Baccho
of-rich autumn and-with-ordered to-grow-old Bacchus
carpebat raras serus vindemitor uvas.
was-plucking the-scattered late the-vintager grapes

Puto magis intellegi, si dixero: mensis erat October,
I-think better to-be-understood if I-say the-month was October
dies III idus Octobris. Horam non possum certam
the-day third of-the-Ides of-October the-hour not I-can certain
tibi dicere, facilius inter philosophos quam inter horologia
to-you to-tell more-easily among philosophers than among clocks
conveniet, tamen inter sextam et septimam erat. "Nimis
it-will-agree yet between the-sixth and the-seventh it-was too
rustice" inquies: "cum omnes poetae, non contenti ortus
rustically you-will-say when all poets not content the-risings
et occasus describere, ut etiam medium diem inquietent,
and settings to-describe that even the-middle day they-disturb
tu sic transibis horam tam bonam?"
you thus will-pass-over an-hour so good

Iam medium curru Phoebus diviserat orbem
now the-middle in-his-car Phoebus had-divided the-circle
et propior nocti fessas quatiebat habenas
and nearer to-the-night the-weary was-shaking reins
obliquo flexam deducens tramite lucem:
by-a-slanting bent leading-down path the-light

Claudius animam agere coepit nec invenire exitum poterat. 3
Claudius his-soul to-gasp-out began nor to-find a-way-out could
Tum Mercurius, qui semper ingenio eius delectatus esset,
then Mercury who always in-the-wit his delighted had-been
unam e tribus Parcis seducit et ait: "Quid, femina
one of the-three Fates takes-aside and says why woman
crudelissima, hominem miserum torqueri pateris? Nec
most-cruel a-man wretched to-be-tortured do-you-allow nor
unquam tam diu cruciatus cesset? Annus sexagesimus
ever so long tormented may-he-rest the-year sixtieth

quartus est, ex quo cum anima luctatur. Quid huic et
fourth it-is from when with his-soul he-struggles why him and
rei publicae invides? Patere mathematicos aliquando
the-weal public do-you-grudge allow the-astrologers at-some-time
verum dicere, qui illum, ex quo princeps factus est,
the-truth to-tell who him from when emperor made he-was
omnibus annis, omnibus mensibus efferunt. Et tamen non
every year every month bury and yet not
est mirum si errant et horam eius nemo novit; nemo enim
it-is wonderful if they-err and the-hour his no-one knows no-one for
unquam illum natum putavit. Fac quod faciendum est:
ever him born has-thought do what to-be-done is

Dede neci, melior vacua sine regnet in aula.'"
give-him to-death a-better-man empty allow may-reign in the-hall

Sed Clotho "ego mehercules" inquit "pusillum temporis
but Clotho I by-Hercules says a-little of-time
adicere illi volebam, dum hos pauculos, qui supersunt,
to-add to-him I-wished while these few who remain
civitate donaret (constituerat enim omnes Graecos,
with-citizenship he-might-present he-had-resolved for all Greeks
Gallos, Hispanos, Britannos togatos videre) sed quoniam
Gauls Spaniards Britons in-togas to-see but since
placet aliquos peregrinos in semen relinqui et tu ita iubes
it-pleases some foreigners for seed to-be-left and you so order
fieri, fiat." Aperit tum capsulam et tres fusos profert:
to-be-done let-it-be-done she-opens then a-little-box and three spindles brings-out
unus erat Augurini, alter Babae, tertius Claudii. "Hos"
one was of-Augurinus the-second of-Baba the-third of-Claudius these
inquit "tres uno anno exiguis intervallis temporum divisos
she-says three in-one year at-small intervals of-times separated

mori iubebo, nec illum incomitatum dimittam. Non oportet
to-die I-will-order nor him unaccompanied will-I-send-off not it-is-fitting
enim eum, qui modo se tot milia hominum sequentia
for him who just-now himself so-many thousands of-men following
videbat, tot praecedentia, tot circumfusa, subito solum
saw so-many going-before so-many crowding-round suddenly alone
destitui. Contentus erit his interim convictoribus."
to-be-abandoned content he-will-be with-these meanwhile messmates

Haec ait et turpi convolvens stamina fuso 4
this she-said and on-the-ugly winding the-threads spindle
abrupit stolidae regalia tempora vitae.
broke-off of-a-stupid royal the-times life
At Lachesis redimita comas, ornata capillos,
but Lachesis bound in-her-tresses adorned in-her-hair
Pieria crinem lauro frontemque coronans,
with-Pierian her-locks laurel and-her-brow crowning
candida de niveo subtemina vellere sumit
white from snowy the-threads fleece takes
felici moderanda manu, quae ducta colorem
by-a-happy to-be-guided hand which drawn a-color
assumpsere novum. Mirantur pensa sorores:
took-on new marvel-at the-yarn the-sisters
mutatur vilis pretioso lana metallo,
is-changed the-cheap for-precious wool metal
aurea formoso descendunt saecula filo.
golden from-the-shapely descend ages thread
Nec modus est illis, felicia vellera ducunt
nor limit is to-them happy fleeces they-draw
et gaudent implere manus, sunt dulcia pensa.
and they-rejoice to-fill their-hands are sweet the-yarn

Sponte sua festinat opus nulloque labore
of-accord its-own hastens the-work and-with-no labor
mollia contorto descendunt stamina fuso.
soft from-the-twisted descend threads spindle
Vincunt Tithoni, vincunt et Nestoris annos.
they-surpass of-Tithonus they-surpass also of-Nestor the-years
Phoebus adest cantuque iuvat gaudetque futuris,
Phoebus is-there and-with-song helps and-rejoices-in things-to-come
et laetus nunc plectra movet, nunc pensa ministrat.
and glad now the-plectrum moves now the-yarn hands-out
Detinet intentas cantu fallitque laborem.
he-holds the-intent with-song and-beguiles their-labor
Dumque nimis citharam fraternaque carmina laudant,
and-while too-much his-lyre and-a-brother's songs they-praise
plus solito nevere manus, humanaque fata
more than-usual spun the-hands and-human fates
laudatum transcendit opus. "Ne demite, Parcae"
praised surpasses the-work do-not take-away Fates
Phoebus ait "vincat mortalis tempora vitae
Phoebus says let-him-surpass of-mortal the-times life
ille, mihi similis vultu similisque decore
he to-me like in-face and-like in-grace
nec cantu nec voce minor. Felicia lassis
neither in-song nor in-voice less happy to-the-weary
saecula praestabit legumque silentia rumpet.
ages he-will-give and-of-the-laws the-silence will-break

Qualis discutiens fugientia Lucifer astra
as scattering the-fleeing Lucifer stars
aut qualis surgit redeuntibus Hesperus astris,
or as rises with-returning Hesperus stars
qualis cum primum tenebris Aurora solutis
as when first with-the-shadows Dawn dissolved
induxit rubicunda diem, Sol aspicit orbem
led-in ruddy the-day the-Sun looks-on the-world
lucidus, et primos a carcere concitat axes:
shining and the-first from the-barrier rouses chariot
talis Caesar adest, talem iam Roma Neronem
such Caesar is-here such now Rome Nero
aspiciet. Flagrat nitidus fulgore remisso
will-see blazes his-bright with-glow softened
vultus, et adfuso cervix formosa capillo."
face and with-flowing neck shapely hair

haec Apollo. At Lachesis, quae et ipsa homini formosissimo
this-said Apollo but Lachesis who also herself a-man most-handsome
faveret, fecit illud plena manu, et Neroni multos annos
favored did that with-full hand and to-Nero many years
de suo donat. Claudium autem iubent omnes
from her-own gives Claudius but they-order all

χαίροντας, εὐφημοῦντας ἐκπέμπειν δόμων.
rejoicing speaking-well to-send-out from-the-house

Et ille quidem animam ebulliit, et ex eo desiit vivere videri.
and he indeed his-soul bubbled-out and from that ceased to-live to-seem
Exspiravit autem dum comoedos audit, ut scias me
he-breathed-his-last but while comedians he-hears that you-may-know me

non sine causa illos timere. Ultima vox eius haec inter
not without cause them to-fear the-last utterance his this among
homines audita est, cum maiorem sonitum emisisset illa
men heard was when a-greater sound he-had-emitted from-that
parte, qua facilius loquebatur: "vae me, puto, concacavi
part by-which more-easily he-spoke woe me I-think I-have-befouled
me." Quod an fecerit, nescio: omnia certe concacavit.
myself that whether he-did I-do-not-know everything certainly he-befouled
Quae in terris postea sint acta, supervacuum est referre.
what on earth afterward may-have-been done superfluous it-is to-relate
Scitis enim optime, nec periculum est ne excidant memoriae
you-know for very-well nor danger is that may-slip from-memory
quae gaudium publicum impresserit: nemo felicitatis suae
things-which joy public has-stamped no-one of-happiness his
obliviscitur. In caelo quae acta sint, audite: fides penes
forgets in heaven what done may-have-been hear the-credit with
auctorem erit. Nuntiatur Iovi venisse quendam bonae
the-authority will-be it-is-announced to-Jupiter to-have-come a-certain-man of-good
staturae, bene canum; nescio quid illum minari, assidue
stature well white-haired I-know-not what he to-threaten constantly
enim caput movere; pedem dextrum trahere. Quaesisse se,
for his-head to-shake his-foot right to-drag to-have-asked himself
cuius nationis esset: respondisse nescio quid perturbato sono
of-what nation he-was to-have-answered I-know-not what with-confused sound
et voce confusa; non intellegere se linguam eius, nec
and with-voice jumbled not to-understand himself the-language his nor
Graecum esse nec Romanum nec ullius gentis notae. Tum
Greek to-be nor Roman nor of-any nation known then
Iuppiter Herculem, qui totum orbem terrarum pererraverat
Jupiter Hercules who the-whole world of-lands had-wandered-through
et nosse videbatur omnes nationes, iubet ire et explorare,
and to-know seemed all nations orders to-go and to-find-out

quorum hominum esset. Tum Hercules primo aspectu sane
of-what men he-was then Hercules at-first sight truly
perturbatus est, ut qui etiam non omnia monstra timuerit.
disturbed was as one-who even not all monsters had-feared
Ut vidit novi generis faciem, insolitum incessum, vocem
when he-saw of-a-new kind the-face the-unwonted gait the-voice
nullius terrestris animalis sed qualis esse marinis beluis solet,
of-no land-dwelling animal but such-as to-be to-sea monsters is-usual
raucam et implicatam, putavit sibi tertium decimum
hoarse and tangled he-thought for-himself a-third tenth
laborem venisse. Diligentius intuenti visus est quasi homo.
labor to-have-come more-carefully to-him-looking seemed he-has like a-man
Accessit itaque et quod facillimum fuit Graeculo, ait:
he-approached therefore and what easiest was for-a-little-Greek he-says

τίς πόθεν εἶς ἀνδρῶν, πόθι τοι πόλις ἠδὲ τοκῆες;
who whence are-you of-men where your city and parents

Claudius gaudet esse illic philologos homines, sperat futurum
Claudius rejoices to-be there literary men he-hopes going-to-be
aliquem historiis suis locum. Itaque et ipse Homerico
some for-histories his a-place therefore also himself with-a-Homeric
versu Caesarem se esse significans ait:
verse Caesar himself to-be indicating he-says

Ἰλιόθεν με φέρων ἄνεμος Κικόνεσσι πέλασσεν.
from-Ilium me bearing the-wind to-the-Cicones brought

Erat autem sequens versus verior, aeque Homericus:
was but the-following verse truer equally Homeric

ἔνθα δ' ἐγὼ πόλιν ἔπραθον, ὤλεσα δ' αὐτούς.
there and I the-city sacked destroyed and them

6 Et imposuerat Herculi minime vafro, nisi fuisset illic Febris,
and he-had-imposed-on Hercules very-little crafty unless had-been there Fever
quae fano suo relicto sola cum illo venerat: ceteros
who with-her-shrine her-own left alone with him had-come other
omnes deos Romae reliquerat. "Iste" inquit "mera mendacia
all gods at-Rome she-had-left he she-says pure lies
narrat. Ego tibi dico, quae cum illo tot annis vixi: Luguduni
is-telling I to-you tell who with him so-many years lived at-Lugudunum
natus est, Marci municipem vides. Quod tibi narro,
born he-was of-Marcus a-fellow-townsman you-see what to-you I-tell
ad sextum decimum lapidem natus est a Vienna, Gallus
at the-sixth tenth milestone born he-was from Vienna a-Gaul
germanus. Itaque quod Gallum facere oportebat, Romam cepit.
genuine therefore what a-Gaul to-do ought Rome he-took
Hunc ego tibi recipio Luguduni natum, ubi Licinus multis
this-man I to-you warrant at-Lugudunum born where Licinus many
annis regnavit. Tu autem, qui plura loca calcasti quam ullus
years reigned you but who more places have-trodden than any
mulio perpetuarius, Lugudunenses scire debes, et multa milia
muleteer perpetual those-of-Lugudunum to-know ought and many miles
inter Xanthum et Rhodanum interesse." Excandescit hoc loco
between Xanthus and the-Rhone to-lie flares-up at-this point
Claudius et quanto potest murmure irascitur. Quid diceret,
Claudius and with-as-much as-he-can a-rumble he-rages what he-said
nemo intellegebat, ille autem Febrim duci iubebat, illo
no-one understood he but Fever to-be-led-off ordered with-that

gestu solutae manus et ad hoc unum satis firmae, quo
gesture of-his-loose hand and for this one-thing enough firm by-which
decollare homines solebat, iusserat illi collum praecidi.
to-behead men he-was-accustomed he-had-ordered for-her the-neck to-be-cut-off
Putares omnes illius esse libertos: adeo illum nemo 7
you-would-think all his to-be freedmen so him no-one
curabat. Tum Hercules "audi me" inquit "tu desine fatuari.
heeded then Hercules hear me he-says you stop playing-the-fool
Venisti huc, ubi mures ferrum rodunt. Citius mihi
you-have-come here where mice iron gnaw quicker to-me
verum, ne tibi alogias excutiam." Et quo terribilior
the-truth lest from-you your-nonsense I-shake-out and that more-terrible
esset, tragicus fit et ait:
he-might-be tragic he-becomes and says

"exprome propere, sede qua genitus cluas,
utter quickly the-seat where born you-are-called
hoc ne peremptus stipite ad terram accidas;
by-this lest destroyed club to the-earth you-fall
haec clava reges saepe mactavit feros.
this club kings often has-slain fierce
Quid nunc profatu vocis incerto sonas?
why now with-utterance of-voice uncertain do-you-sound
Quae patria, quae gens mobile eduxit caput?
what country what race a-shaking brought-forth head

Edissere. Equidem regna tergemini petens
declare indeed the-realms of-the-triple seeking
longinqua regis, unde ab Hesperio mari
distant king whence from the-Western sea
Inachiam ad urbem nobile advexi pecus,
the-Inachian to city noble I-brought herd
vidi duobus imminens fluviis iugum,
I-saw over-two looming rivers a-ridge
quod Phoebus ortu semper obverso videt,
which Phoebus with-his-rising always facing sees
ubi Rhodanus ingens amne praerapido fluit,
where the-Rhone huge in-stream most-rapid flows
Ararque dubitans, quo suos cursus agat,
and-the-Arar wavering where its courses it-should-drive
tacitus quietis adluit ripas vadis.
silent quiet washes banks with-shallows
Estne illa tellus spiritus altrix tui?"
is that the-land of-breath nurse your

Haec satis animose et fortiter, nihilo minus mentis suae
these-things fairly spiritedly and bravely by-nothing less of-mind his-own
non est et timet μωροῦ πληγήν. Claudius ut vidit virum
not he-is and fears of-a-fool the-blow Claudius when he-saw a-man
valentem, oblitus nugarum intellexit neminem Romae sibi
strong forgetting his-trifles understood no-one at-Rome to-himself
parem fuisse, illic non habere se idem gratiae: gallum in
equal to-have-been there not to-have himself the-same favor the-cock on
suo sterquilino plurimum posse. Itaque quantum intellegi
his dunghill most to-be-powerful therefore as-far-as to-be-understood
potuit, haec visus est dicere: "Ego te, fortissime deorum
it-could these-things seemed he-has to-say I you bravest of-gods

Hercule, speravi mihi adfuturum apud alios, et si qui a
Hercules hoped for-me going-to-stand-by among the-others and if anyone from
me notorem petisset, te fui nominaturus, qui me optime nosti.
me a-voucher had-asked you I-was going-to-name who me best know
Nam si memoria repetis, ego eram qui tibi ante templum
for if in-memory you-recall I was-the-one who for-you before temple
tuum ius dicebam totis diebus mense Iulio et Augusto.
your justice was-dispensing whole days in-the-month of-July and of-August
Tu scis, quantum illic miseriarum tulerim, cum causidicos
you know how-much there of-miseries I-bore when advocates
audirem diem et noctem, in quos si incidisses, valde
I-heard day and night upon whom if you-had-fallen very
fortis licet tibi videaris, maluisses cloacas Augeae
brave though to-yourself you-seem you-would-have-preferred the-sewers of-Augeas
purgare: multo plus ego stercoris exhausi. Sed quoniam volo”
to-clean much more I of-dung drained but since I-wish

II · THE COUNCIL OF THE GODS AND THE DESCENT

The gods debate whether Claudius may become a god. Janus moves that no man be made one; Diespiter proposes deification. Augustus recounts the relatives Claudius killed and moves that he be expelled. Mercury drags him down past his own funeral, where only the lawyers mourn and a dirge mocks his justice. Below, his victims greet him, Aeacus condemns him unheard and sets him to dice forever with a bottomless box; Caligula claims him, and Aeacus gives him to Menander as a clerk.

“Non mirum quod in curiam impetum fecisti: nihil tibi 8
not wonderful that into the-senate-house an-attack you-made nothing to-you
clausi est. Modo dic nobis, qualem deum istum fieri velis.
shut is only tell us what-kind-of god him to-be-made you-wish
Ἐπικούρειος θεὸς non potest esse: οὔτε αὐτὸς πρᾶγμα ἔχει τι
an-Epicurean god not he-can to-be neither himself trouble has any

οὔτε ἄλλοις παρέχει; Stoicus? Quomodo potest 'rotundus' esse,
nor to-others gives a-Stoic how can round to-be
ut ait Varro, 'sine capite, sine praeputio'? Est aliquid in illo
as says Varro without head without foreskin there-is something in him
Stoici dei, iam video: nec cor nec caput habet. Si mehercules
of-a-Stoic god now I-see neither heart nor head he-has if by-Hercules
a Saturno petisset hoc beneficium, cuius mensem toto
from Saturn he-had-sought this favor whose month the-whole
anno celebravit, Saturnalicius princeps, non tulisset illud,
year he-celebrated a-Saturnalian emperor not he-would-have-got it
nedum ab Iove, quem quantum quidem in illo fuit, damnavit
much-less from Jupiter whom as-far-as indeed in him it-lay he-condemned
incesti. Silanum enim generum suum occidit propterea quod
of-incest Silanus for son-in-law his he-killed on-that-account because
sororem suam, festivissimam omnium puellarum, quam omnes
sister his most-charming of-all girls whom all
Venerem vocarent, maluit Iunonem vocare. 'Quare' inquit
Venus called he-preferred Juno to-call why he-says
'quaero enim, sororem suam?' Stulte, stude: Athenis dimidium
I-ask for sister his-own fool study at-Athens half
licet, Alexandriae totum. 'Quia Romae' inquis 'mures molas
is-allowed at-Alexandria whole because at-Rome you-say mice mills
lingunt.' Hic nobis curva corriget? quid in cubiculo
lick this-man for-us crooked-things will-straighten what in bedroom
suo faciat, nescit, et iam 'caeli scrutatur plagas'? Deus
his he-does he-does-not-know and already of-heaven he-searches the-regions a-god
fieri vult: parum est quod templum in Britannia habet, quod
to-become he-wishes too-little it-is that a-temple in Britain he-has that
hunc barbari colunt et ut deum orant μωροῦ εὐιλάτου τυχεῖν;"
him barbarians worship and as a-god pray of-a-fool gracious to-meet

Tandem Iovi venit in mentem, privatis intra curiam 9
at-last to-Jupiter it-came into mind with-private within the-senate-house
morantibus senatoribus non licere sententiam dicere
lingering senators not to-be-allowed an-opinion to-speak
nec disputare. “Ego” inquit “p. c. interrogare vobis
nor to-debate I he-says conscript fathers to-question to-you
permiseram, vos mera mapalia fecistis. Volo ut servetis
had-allowed you pure huts have-made I-wish that you-keep
disciplinam curiae. Hic qualiscunque est, quid de nobis
the-discipline of-the-senate-house he whatever-kind he-is what about us
existimabit?” Illo dimisso primus interrogatur sententiam
will-he-think him with-dismissed first is-asked his-opinion
Ianus pater. Is designatus erat in kal. Iulias postmeridianus
Janus father he designated was for-the Kalends of-July afternoon
consul, homo quantumvis vafer, qui semper videt ἅμα
consul a-man ever-so crafty who always sees at-once
πρόσσω καὶ ὀπίσσω. Is multa diserte, quod in foro vivebat,
forward and backward he much eloquently because in the-forum he-lived
dixit, quae notarius persequi non potuit, et ideo non
said which the-shorthand-writer to-follow not could and therefore not
refero, ne aliis verbis ponam, quae ab illo dicta sunt. Multa
I-report-it lest in-other words I-set-down what by him said were much
dixit de magnitudine deorum: non debere hunc vulgo
he-said about the-greatness of-the-gods not ought this commonly
dari honorem. “Olim” inquit “magna res erat deum
to-be-given the-honor once he-says a-great thing it-was a-god
fieri: iam famam mimum fecistis. Itaque ne videar in
to-become now the-repute a-farce you-have-made therefore lest I-seem against
personam, non in rem dicere sententiam, censeo ne
the-person not on the-matter to-speak my-opinion I-move that-not
quis post hunc diem deus fiat ex his, qui ἀρούρης καρπὸν
anyone after this day a-god be-made of those who of-the-field the-fruit

ἔδουσιν, aut ex his, quos alit ζείδωρος ἄρουρα. Qui contra
eat or of those whom nourishes grain-giving earth who against
hoc senatus consultum deus factus, dictus pictusve erit,
this of-the-senate decree a-god made called or-painted shall-be
eum dedi Laruis et proximo munere inter novos
him to-be-delivered to-the-Larvae and at-the-next show among new
auctoratos ferulis vapulare placet." Proximus interrogatur
hired-gladiators with-rods to-be-flogged it-pleases next is-asked
sententiam Diespiter Vicae Potae filius, et ipse designatus
his-opinion Diespiter of-Vica Pota son and himself designated
consul, nummulariolus: hoc quaestu se sustinebat, vendere
consul a-little-money-changer by-this trade himself he-supported to-sell
civitatulas solebat. Ad hunc belle accessit Hercules et
citizenships he-was-accustomed to him nicely approached Hercules and
auriculam illi tetigit. Censet itaque in haec verba: "Cum
the-ear his touched he-moves therefore in these words since
divus Claudius et divum Augustum sanguine contingat nec
the-deified Claudius both the-deified Augustus in-blood touches nor
minus divam Augustam aviam suam, quam ipse deam
less the-deified Augusta grandmother his whom he-himself a-goddess
esse iussit, longeque omnes mortales sapientia antecellat,
to-be ordered and-by-far all mortals in-wisdom surpasses
sitque e re publica esse aliquem qui cum Romulo
and-it-is in the-interest of-the-state to-be someone who with Romulus
possit 'ferventia rapa vorare,' censeo uti divus Claudius ex
can boiling turnips to-gobble I-move that the-deified Claudius from
hac die deus sit, ita uti ante eum qui optimo iure factus
this day a-god be thus as before him whoever by-the-best right made
sit, eamque rem ad metamorphosis Ovidi adiciendam."
has-been and-that thing to the-Metamorphoses of-Ovid to-be-added
Variae erant sententiae, et videbatur Claudius sententiam
various were the-opinions and it-seemed Claudius the-vote

vincere. Hercules enim, qui videret ferrum suum in igne
to-be-winning Hercules for who saw iron his in the-fire
esse, modo huc modo illuc cursabat et aiebat: "Noli mihi
to-be now here now there was-running and was-saying do-not me
invidere, mea res agitur; deinde tu si quid volueris, in
begrudge my affair is-at-stake then you if anything you-want in
vicem faciam; manus manum lavat."
turn I-will-do hand hand washes
Tunc divus Augustus surrexit sententiae suae loco 10
then the-deified Augustus rose for-opinion his in-his-place
dicendae, et summa facundia disseruit: "Ego" inquit "p.
to-be-spoken and with-highest eloquence argued I he-says conscript
c. vos testes habeo, ex quo deus factus sum, nullum me
fathers you as-witnesses I-have from when a-god made I-was no I
verbum fecisse: semper meum negotium ago. Sed non possum
a-word to-have-made always my-own business I-do but not I-can
amplius dissimulare, et dolorem, quem graviorem pudor
longer to-dissemble and the-grief which heavier shame
facit, continere. In hoc terra marique pacem peperi? Ideo
makes to-restrain for this by-land and-by-sea peace I-brought-forth for-this
civilia bella compescui? Ideo legibus urbem fundavi, operibus
civil wars I-quelled for-this with-laws the-city I-founded with-works
ornavi, ut — quid dicam p. c. non invenio: omnia
I-adorned that what I-should-say conscript fathers not I-find all
infra indignationem verba sunt. Confugiendum est itaque ad
beneath my-indignation the-words are one-must-take-refuge is therefore to
Messalae Corvini, disertissimi viri, illam sententiam "pudet
of-Messalla Corvinus most-eloquent man that opinion I-am-ashamed-of
imperii." Hic, p. c., qui vobis non posse videtur muscam
the-empire he conscript fathers who to-you not to-be-able seems a-fly
excitare, tam facile homines occidebat, quam canis adsidit. Sed
to-rouse as easily men was-killing as a-dog sits-down but

quid ego de tot ac talibus viris dicam? Non vacat
why I about so-many and such men should-I-speak not there-is-leisure
deflere publicas clades intuenti domestica mala. Itaque
to-weep-for public disasters to-one-gazing-on domestic evils therefore
illa omittam, haec referam; nam etiam si soror mea Graece
those I-will-omit these I-will-report for even if sister my Greek
nescit, ego scio: ἔγγιον γόνυ κνήμης. Iste quem videtis,
does-not-know I know nearer the-knee than-the-shin he whom you-see
per tot annos sub meo nomine latens, hanc mihi gratiam
for so-many years under my name hiding this to-me thanks
rettulit, ut duas Iulias proneptes meas occideret, alteram
returned that two Julias great-granddaughters my he-should-kill one
ferro, alteram fame; unum abnepotem L. Silanum.
by-the-sword the-other by-hunger one great-great-grandson Lucius Silanus
videris Iuppiter an in causa mala, certe in tua, si aequus
you-will-see Jupiter whether in a-cause bad certainly in yours if just
futurus es. Dic mihi, dive Claudi, quare quemquam ex his,
going-to-be you-are tell me deified Claudius why anyone of these
quos quasque occidisti, antequam de causa cognosceres,
men-whom women-whom you-killed before about the-case you-had-inquired
antequam audires, damnasti? Hoc ubi fieri solet?
before you-had-heard you-condemned this where to-be-done is-it-customary
11 In caelo non fit. Ecce Iuppiter, qui tot annos regnat,
in heaven not it-is-done behold Jupiter who so-many years reigns
uni Volcano crus fregit, quem
of-one Vulcan's leg broke whom

ῥῖψε ποδὸς τεταγὼν ἀπὸ βηλοῦ θεσπεσίοιο,
he-hurled by-the-foot seizing from the-threshold divine

et iratus fuit uxori et suspendit illam: numquid occidit?
and angry was with-his-wife and hung her surely-not he-killed-her
Tu Messalinam, cuius aeque avunculus maior eram quam tuus,
you Messalina of-whom equally uncle great I-was as yours
occidisti. "Nescio" inquis. Di tibi male faciant: adeo
you-killed I-do-not-know you-say may-the-gods you ill do so-much
istuc turpius est, quod nescisti, quam quod occidisti.
this more-shameful is that you-did-not-know than that you-killed
C. Caesarem non desiit mortuum persequi. Occiderat
Gaius Caesar not he-ceased dead to-pursue had-killed
ille socerum: hic et generum. Gaius Crassi filium
he his-father-in-law this-man even his-son-in-law Gaius of-Crassus the-son
vetuit Magnum vocari: hic nomen illi reddidit, caput
forbade Magnus to-be-called this-man the-name to-him restored the-head
tulit. Occidit in una domo Crassum, Magnum, Scriboniam,
he-took he-killed in one house Crassus Magnus Scribonia
Tristionias, Assarionem, nobiles tamen, Crassum vero tam
the-Tristioniae Assario nobles yet Crassus indeed so
fatuum, ut etiam regnare posset. Hunc nunc deum facere
foolish that even to-reign he-could this-man now a-god to-make
vultis? Videte corpus eius dis iratis natum. Ad summam,
you-wish see body his with-gods angry born in sum
tria verba cito dicat, et servum me ducat. Hunc deum
three words quickly let-him-say and a-slave me let-him-lead this god
quis colet? Quis credet? Dum tales deos facitis, nemo vos
who will-worship who will-believe while such gods you-make no-one you
deos esse credet. Summa rei, p. c., si honeste me
gods to-be will-believe the-sum of-the-matter conscript fathers if honorably myself
inter vos gessi, si nulli clarius respondi, vindicate
among you I-have-conducted if to-no-one more-sharply I-answered avenge
iniurias meas. Ego pro sententia mea hoc censeo:" atque ita
the-injuries my I for opinion my this I-move and thus

ex tabella recitavit: "quando quidem divus Claudius occidit
from a-tablet he-read since indeed the-deified Claudius killed
socerum suum Appium Silanum, generos duos Magnum
father-in-law his Appius Silanus sons-in-law two Magnus
Pompeium et L. Silanum, socerum filiae suae
Pompeius and Lucius Silanus the-father-in-law of-daughter his
Crassum Frugi, hominem tam similem sibi quam ovo ovum,
Crassus Frugi a-man as like himself as an-egg an-egg
Scriboniam socrum filiae suae, uxorem suam Messalinam
Scribonia mother-in-law of-daughter his wife his Messalina
et ceteros quorum numerus iniri non potuit, placet mihi
and the-others whose number to-be-reckoned not could it-pleases me
in eum severe animadverti, nec illi rerum iudicandarum
on him severely to-be-punished nor to-him from-affairs to-be-judged
vacationem dari, eumque quam primum exportari, et
exemption to-be-given and-him as soon-as-possible to-be-carried-off and
caelo intra triginta dies excedere, Olympo intra diem
from-heaven within thirty days to-depart from-Olympus within day
tertium." Pedibus in hanc sententiam itum est. Nec mora,
third by-feet into this opinion gone it-was nor delay
Cyllenius illum collo obtorto trahit ad inferos, a caelo
the-Cyllenian him with-neck twisted drags to the-dead from heaven

"illuc unde negant redire quemquam."
thither whence they-deny to-return anyone

12 Dum descendunt per viam sacram, interrogat Mercurius, quid
while they-descend along the-way Sacred asks Mercury what
sibi velit ille concursus hominum, num Claudii funus
for-itself means that throng of-men whether of-Claudius the-funeral
esset. Et erat omnium formosissimum et impensa cura,
it-was and it-was of-all most-beautiful and with-lavish care

plane ut scires deum efferri: tubicinum, cornicinum,
plainly that you-would-know a-god to-be-carried-out of-trumpeters of-horn-blowers
omnis generis aenatorum tanta turba, tantus concentus, ut
of-every kind of-brass-players so-great a-crowd so-great a-harmony that
etiam Claudius audire posset. Omnes laeti, hilares: populus
even Claudius to-hear could all glad cheerful the-people
Romanus ambulabat tanquam liber. Agatho et pauci causidici
Roman walked as-though free Agatho and a-few advocates
plorabant, sed plane ex animo. Iurisconsulti e tenebris
were-weeping but plainly from the-heart the-jurists from the-darkness
procedebant, pallidi, graciles, vix animam habentes, tanquam
were-coming-forth pale thin scarcely breath having as-though
qui tum maxime reviviscerent. Ex his unus cum vidisset
those-who then most were-coming-back-to-life of these one when he-had-seen
capita conferentes et fortunas suas deplorantes causidicos,
their-heads putting-together and fortunes their lamenting the-advocates
accedit et ait: "dicebam vobis: non semper Saturnalia erunt."
approaches and says I-told you not always Saturnalia will-be
Claudius ut vidit funus suum, intellexit se mortuum esse.
Claudius when he-saw funeral his understood himself dead to-be
Ingenti eum μεγάλῳ χορικῷ nenia cantabatur anapaestis:
with-a-huge him great choral dirge was-sung in-anapaests

"Fundite fletus, edite planctus,
pour-out weeping utter laments
resonet tristi clamore forum:
let-resound with-sad clamor the-forum

cecidit pulchre cordatus homo,
has-fallen finely a-sensible man
quo non alius fuit in toto
than-whom not another was in the-whole
fortior orbe.
braver world
Ille citato vincere cursu
he with-quickened to-conquer course
poterat celeres, ille rebelles
could the-swift he rebellious
fundere Parthos levibusque sequi
to-rout Parthians and-with-light to-pursue
Persida telis, certaque manu
the-Persian with-darts and-with-sure hand
tendere nervum, qui praecipites
to-stretch the-bowstring who headlong
vulnere parvo figeret hostes,
with-wound small might-pierce foes
pictaque Medi terga fugacis.
and-the-painted of-the-Mede backs fleeing
Ille Britannos ultra noti
he the-Britons beyond of-the-known
litora ponti
shores sea
et caeruleos scuta Brigantas
and blue in-shields Brigantes
dare Romuleis colla catenis
to-give to-Romulean their-necks chains
iussit et ipsum nova Romanae
ordered and itself new of-the-Roman
iura securis tremere Oceanum.
the-laws axe to-tremble-at Ocean

Deflete virum, quo non alius
weep-for the-man than-whom not another
potuit citius discere causas,
could more-quickly to-learn the-cases
una tantum parte audita,
with-one only side heard
saepe ne utra. Quis nunc iudex
often not either who now as-judge
toto lites audiet anno?
the-whole the-suits will-hear year
Tibi iam cedet sede relicta,
to-you now will-yield with-his-seat left
qui dat populo iura silenti,
he-who gives to-the-people laws silent
Cretaea tenens oppida centum.
of-Crete holding the-towns hundred
Caedite maestis pectora palmis,
beat with-mournful your-breasts palms
o causidici, venale genus.
o advocates venal race
Vosque poetae lugete novi,
and-you poets mourn new
vosque in primis qui concusso
and-you in the-first who with-shaken
magna parastis lucra fritillo."
great have-gained profits dice-box

Delectabatur laudibus suis Claudius, et cupiebat diutius 13
was-delighted with-praises his Claudius and desired longer
spectare. Inicit illi manum Talthybius deorum et trahit
to-watch lays on-him a-hand Talthybius of-the-gods and drags-him

capite obvoluto, ne quis eum possit agnoscere, per campum
with-head wrapped lest anyone him can recognize through the-Field
Martium, et inter Tiberim et viam tectam descendit ad
of-Mars and between the-Tiber and the-Way Covered he-goes-down to
inferos. Antecesserat iam compendiaria Narcissus libertus
the-dead had-gone-ahead already by-a-short-cut Narcissus the-freedman
ad patronum excipiendum, et venienti nitidus, ut erat a
for his-patron to-be-welcomed and to-him-coming sleek as he-was from
balineo, occurrit et ait: "Quid di ad homines?" "celerius"
the-bath he-runs-to-meet and says what gods to men quicker
inquit Mercurius "et venire nos nuntia." Dicto citius
says Mercury and to-come us announce than-said quicker
Narcissus evolat. Omnia proclivia sunt, facile descenditur.
Narcissus flies-off all-things downhill are easily one-descends
Itaque quamvis podagricus esset, momento temporis pervenit
therefore although gouty he-was in-a-moment of-time he-arrived
ad ianuam Ditis, ubi iacebat Cerberus vel ut ait Horatius
at the-door of-Dis where lay Cerberus or as says Horace
"belua centiceps." Pusillum perturbatur — subalbam canem
the-beast hundred-headed a-little he-is-upset a-whitish dog
in deliciis habere adsueverat — ut illum vidit canem
in delight to-have he-had-been-accustomed when him he-saw a-dog
nigrum, villosum, sane non quem velis tibi in
black shaggy truly not one-whom you-would-wish to-you in
tenebris occurrere, et magna voce "Claudius" inquit "veniet."
darkness to-meet and with-great voice Claudius he-says will-come
Cum plausu procedunt cantantes: εὑρήκαμεν, συγχαίρωμεν.
with applause they-come-forth singing we-have-found let-us-rejoice-together
Hic erat C. Silius consul designatus, Iuncus praetorius, Sex.
here was Gaius Silius consul designate Iuncus ex-praetor Sextus
Traulus, M. Helvius, Trogus, Cotta, Vettius Valens, Fabius
Traulus Marcus Helvius Trogus Cotta Vettius Valens Fabius

equites R. quos Narcissus duci iusserat. Medius erat
knights Roman whom Narcissus to-be-led-off had-ordered in-the-middle was
in hac cantantium turba Mnester pantomimus, quem Claudius
in this of-singers crowd Mnester the-pantomime whom Claudius
decoris causa minorem fecerat. Ad Messalinam — cito
of-appearance for-the-sake shorter had-made to Messalina quickly
rumor percrebuit Claudium venisse — convolant: primi
the-rumor spread Claudius to-have-come fly-together first
omnium liberti Polybius, Myron, Harpocras, Amphaeus,
of-all the-freedmen Polybius Myron Harpocras Amphaeus
Pheronactus, quos Claudius omnes, necubi imparatus esset,
Pheronactus whom Claudius all lest-anywhere unprepared he-be
praemiserat. Deinde praefecti duo Iustus Catonius et Rufrius
had-sent-ahead then prefects two Justus Catonius and Rufrius
Pollio. Deinde amici Saturninus Lusius et Pedo Pompeius
Pollio then friends Saturninus Lusius and Pedo Pompeius
et Lupus et Celer Asinius consulares. Novissime fratris
and Lupus and Celer Asinius ex-consuls last of-his-brother
filia, sororis filia, generi, soceri, socrus, omnes
the-daughter of-his-sister the-daughter sons-in-law fathers-in-law mothers-in-law all
plane consanguinei. Et agmine facto Claudio occurrunt.
plainly kinsmen and with-a-column formed Claudius they-meet
Quos cum vidisset Claudius, exclamat: πάντα φίλων πλήρη
whom when he-had-seen Claudius exclaims all of-friends full
"quomodo huc venistis vos?" Tum Pedo Pompeius: "Quid
how here have-come you then Pedo Pompeius what
dicis, homo crudelissime? Quaeris, quomodo? Quis enim
are-you-saying man most-cruel you-ask how who for
nos alius huc misit quam tu, omnium amicorum interfector?
us else here sent than you of-all friends the-killer
In ius eamus, ego tibi hic sellas ostendam."
into court let-us-go I to-you here the-seats will-show

14 Ducit illum ad tribunal Aeaci: is lege Cornelia quae de
he-leads him to the-tribunal of-Aeacus he under-the-law Cornelian which on
sicariis lata est, quaerebat. Postulat, nomen eius recipiat;
murderers passed was was-holding-inquiry he-requests the-name his he-should-take-up
edit subscriptionem: occisos senatores XXXV, equites R.
he-issues the-charge killed senators thirty-five knights Roman
CCXXI, ceteros ὅσα ψάμαθός τε κόνις τε.
two-hundred-twenty-one the-rest as-many-as sand and dust and
Advocatum non invenit. Tandem procedit P. Petronius,
an-advocate not he-found at-last comes-forth Publius Petronius
vetus convictor eius, homo Claudiana lingua disertus, et
old messmate his a-man in-the-Claudian tongue eloquent and
postulat advocationem. Non datur. Accusat Pedo Pompeius
requests an-adjournment not it-is-given accuses Pedo Pompeius
magnis clamoribus. Incipit patronus velle respondere. Aeacus,
with-great shouts begins the-defender to-want to-answer Aeacus
homo iustissimus, vetat, et illum altera tantum parte audita
a-man most-just forbids and him with-one only side heard
condemnat et ait: αἴκε πάθοι τά τ' ἔρεξε, δίκη κ' ἰθεῖα
condemns and says if he-should-suffer what also he-did justice would straight
γένοιτο. Ingens silentium factum est. Stupebant omnes novitate
be-done huge silence made was were-stunned all by-the-novelty
rei attoniti, negabant hoc unquam factum. Claudio
of-the-matter thunderstruck they-said this ever done to-Claudius
magis iniquum videbatur quam novum. De genere poenae
more unfair it-seemed than new about the-kind of-punishment
diu disputatum est, quid illum pati oporteret. Erant qui
long debated it-was what him to-suffer it-behooved there-were those-who
dicerent, Sisyphum satis diu laturam fecisse, Tantalum siti
said Sisyphus enough long his-carrying to-have-done Tantalus of-thirst
periturum nisi illi succurreretur, aliquando Ixionis miseri
going-to-perish unless him should-be-helped at-some-time of-Ixion wretched

rotam sufflaminandam. Non placuit ulli ex veteribus missionem
the-wheel to-be-braked not it-pleased any of the-old-ones a-release
dari, ne vel Claudius unquam simile speraret. Placuit
to-be-given lest even Claudius ever the-like should-hope it-was-decided
novam poenam constitui debere, excogitandum illi laborem
a-new punishment to-be-established ought to-be-devised for-him a-labor
irritum et alicuius cupiditatis speciem sine effectu. Tum
vain and of-some desire the-appearance without effect then
Aeacus iubet illum alea ludere pertuso fritillo. Et iam
Aeacus orders him at-dice to-play with-a-perforated dice-box and already
coeperat fugientes semper tesseras quaerere et nihil proficere.
he-had-begun the-fleeing always dice to-seek and nothing to-gain

Nam quotiens missurus erat resonante fritillo, 15
for as-often-as going-to-throw he-was with-the-rattling dice-box
utraque subducto fugiebat tessera fundo.
each with-withdrawn fled die bottom
Cumque recollectos auderet mittere talos,
and-when the-gathered-again he-dared to-throw knucklebones
fusuro similis semper semperque petenti,
to-one-going-to-throw like always and-always seeking
decepere fidem: refugit digitosque per ipsos
they-cheated his-trust fled and-the-fingers through themselves
fallax adsiduo dilabitur alea furto.
the-deceitful with-constant slips-away die theft
Sic cum iam summi tanguntur culmina montis,
so when now of-the-highest are-touched the-summits mountain
irrita Sisyphio volvuntur pondera collo.
vain on-Sisyphean roll the-weights neck

Apparuit subito C. Caesar et petere illum in servitutem
appeared suddenly Gaius Caesar and to-claim him into slavery
coepit; producit testes, qui illum viderant ab illo flagris,
began he-produces witnesses who him had-seen by him with-whips
ferulis, colaphis vapulantem. Adiudicatur C. Caesari; Caesar
with-rods with-cuffs being-beaten he-is-adjudged to-Gaius Caesar Caesar
illum Aeaco donat. Is Menandro liberto suo tradidit,
him to-Aeacus gives he to-Menander freedman his handed-him-over
ut a cognitionibus esset.
that for the-inquiries he-might-be
